



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

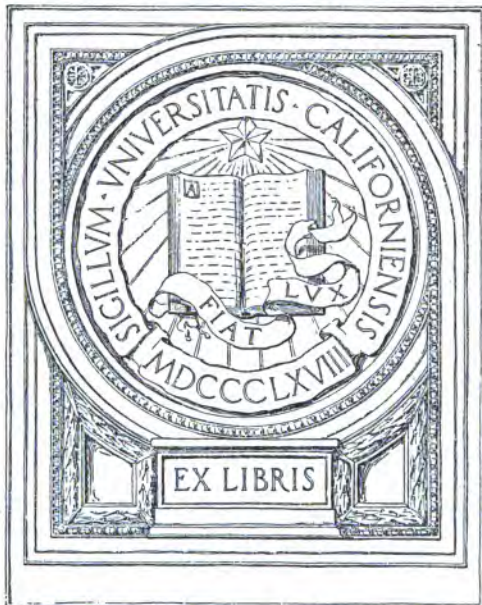
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



GIFT OF  
Provost  
Monroe E. Deutsch



Mouror E. Deutsch  
June 4, 1904.



# TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

---

## CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT,      HARVARD UNIVERSITY  
BERNADOTTE PERRIN,      YALE UNIVERSITY  
ANDREW FLEMING WEST,      PRINCETON UNIVERSITY



TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

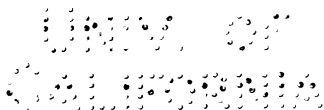
---

# A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

CLIFFORD HERSCHEL MOORE, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY  
1903



*My Pocket Book & Manual*  
760  
M821

COPYRIGHT, 1908, BY  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

TO THE  
LIBRARY OF THE  
MUSEUM OF COMPARATIVE ZOOLOGY

## PREFACE

---

THIS First Latin Book is intended to provide the necessary preparation for the reading of Nepos and Caesar. Whatever objections may be urged against the custom, the fact remains that the majority of schools begin these authors immediately, or very soon, after the first book is completed, and therefore the beginner must be prepared as fully as possible for this reading. To provide this preparation, the 850 words most frequent in Caesar's *Gallic War* and Nepos's *Lives* were selected to form the main vocabulary of this book ; then, since every art is acquired only by the frequent practice of the same or similar exercise, each word, with few exceptions, has been used eight times or more in the sentences for translation. Although this repetition and the large type chosen to relieve the pupil's eyes may at first glance make the exercises seem long to some teachers, the author holds that the principle of frequent use is of vital importance, and believes that in no other way can an adequate knowledge of the essential vocabulary be acquired. If the exercises here given be done faithfully, the pupil will find on passing to Nepos or Caesar that he is acquainted with all the common words in the senses in which they are used by these authors, and will escape the discouragement incident to the acquisition of a new vocabulary.

Some may miss lists of related words such as are given in many books. Experience, however, shows that such lists have little value compared with those made by the



pupil himself in his note-book. The making of such lists should be steadily encouraged and the lists frequently reviewed. In the vocabularies allied words are regularly given to assist the pupil's memory.

The method of presentation, so far as possible, is the natural one. Sentences are used from the beginning; the unnatural order at first, all inflections with little syntax, then syntax, has been avoided; but the simplest and most familiar constructions of the noun and verb are employed early in connection with the fundamental inflections. The demonstrative pronouns are introduced in Lesson XII; and the simple independent uses of the subjunctive are begun in Lesson XXIX, followed by those dependent constructions which naturally belong with the independent. The introduction of Indirect Discourse in connection with the Subject and Object Infinitive will, it is hoped, free the learner from one of the time-honored terrors of Latin. Throughout, inflections and syntax are gradually developed and fully illustrated. In the treatment of the latter, recourse has constantly been made to points of similarity in Latin and English, and constructions familiar to the learner from his daily speech, as, for example, appositives, predicate nouns and adjectives, subject and object infinitives, have been freely used before they receive formal treatment. As a result of this, the rule is simply the codification of the learner's knowledge rather than the presentation of a new principle. As some teachers prefer to use a grammar with the first book, references have been given under each rule to the Latin grammar of West (W.), Bennett (B.), Allen and Greenough (AG.), and Harkness (H.).

The author hopes that this book will prove interesting as well as useful. To secure this end the subject-matter of the exercises has been considered with care, and in most lessons the sentences taken together tell some

story rather than remain isolated illustrations of inflections and syntax. Passages of connected Latin, fables and stories from Greek and Roman history, are early introduced and used with increasing frequency to the end. These have been drawn and adapted from Livy, Eutropius, Florus, Viri Romae, etc. At the end Caesar's account of his first invasion of Britain is given as possessing unique interest for English-speaking pupils.

Yet while every effort has been made to give the necessary elementary knowledge in a simple and interesting manner, care has been taken not to avoid or to slur over the real difficulties of beginning Latin. The author has no sympathy with the notion, now fortunately disappearing, that a study must be made easy to escape being dull. A knowledge of Latin, like that of every other subject, can only be acquired by hard work; and the author's own experience in teaching the elements of Latin has convinced him that nothing contributes so certainly to an interest in the subject as hard study and the mastery of each principle as it is met. Real acquisition is a delight, and nothing has done so much to create a distaste for Latin or caused so many to drop the language at the end of the first year as careless work in the beginning and the useless half-knowledge resulting therefrom. Inflections and rules should be *learned*, and the exercises should be mastered. If this be done throughout the study of this book, the pupil will find a genuine interest in Nepos and Caesar.

Finally, no attempt has here been made to supplant the intelligent teacher. The printed word can never be so potent as the living voice, and each topic can be advantageously illustrated by the instructor.

The author wishes to thank Prof. A. F. West for permission to make free use of the excellent statements employed in his Latin Grammar in the TWENTIETH CENTURY SERIES; to express his obligation for invaluable aid

of every kind to Dr. J. W. H. Walden, of Cambridge; to Dr. J. W. Hewitt, Master in Worcester Academy, and to Mr. Peterssen of the Harvard Graduate School for their kind assistance in proof-reading; and especially to Prof. Charles H. Forbes, of Phillips Academy, Andover, for his help at many points where his large experience has been of great service.

All suggestions and corrections will be gratefully received.

C. H. M.

CAMBRIDGE, MASS., *August 15, 1903.*

# CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGES
	INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1-6
I.	FIRST DECLENSION.—Nominative and Accusative Singular and Plural. Subject. Object . . . . .	7-9
II.	FIRST DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Possessive Genitive. Dative of the Indirect Object . . . . .	9-12
III.	FIRST DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Predicate Nominative. Dative of Possessor . . . . .	12-14
IV.	SECOND DECLENSION.—Appositives. Ablative of Place. . . . .	14-17
V.	SECOND DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Agreement of Adjectives. Predicate of Adjectives . . . . .	17-20
VI.	SECOND DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Ablative of Accompaniment . . . . .	21-23
VII.	THE VERB <i>sum</i> . Present system in the Indicative and Infinitive. Agreement of Verbs. Adjectives in -er . . . . .	24-26
VIII.	FIRST CONJUGATION.—Active Voice: Present System in the Indicative and Infinitive . . . . .	27-29
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Retort Truthful</i> . . . . .	29-30
IX.	FIRST CONJUGATION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Passive Voice: Present System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ablative of Agent . . . . .	30-32
X.	THE VERB <i>sum</i> . Perfect System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ablative of Means or Instrument . . . . .	33-35
XI.	FIRST CONJUGATION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Perfect System of <i>amō</i> in the Indicative and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Ablative of Cause . . . . .	36-39
XII.	THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>hic</i> AND <i>ille</i> . . . . .	39-42
XIII.	THE RELATIVE <i>quī</i> . Agreement of the Relative Pronoun . . . . .	43-45
XIV.	THE DEMONSTRATIVE <i>is</i> : THE INTERROGATIVE <i>quis</i> . . . . .	46-49

LESSON	PAGES
XV. THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems . . .	49-53
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Early Kings of Rome</i> . . .	52
XVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems ( <i>continued</i> ). —Ablative of Manner . . . . .	53-56
XVII. THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems. Objective Genitive . . .	56-60
XVIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Stems in -i . . .	60-64
XIX. THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Mixed Stems . . . . .	64-67
XX. THE THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Rules for Gender. Accusative and Ablative of Time . . .	67-70
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of the Republic</i> . . . . .	70-71
XXI. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . .	71-74
XXII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—Declension of Comparatives. Ablative of Comparison . . .	74-77
XXIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ( <i>continued</i> ).—Adjectives in -er and -ilis. Ablative of Degree of Difference. . . . .	78-80
XXIV. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ( <i>continued</i> ).—Irregular Comparison. Ablative of Separation . . .	81-84
XXV. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . .	84-87
READING EXERCISE: <i>Wars with the Gauls</i> . . .	87-88
XXVI. FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS . . . . .	89-92
XXVII. SECOND CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire and the Present Infinitive of <i>habēō</i> , active and passive . . . . .	92-94
XXVIII. THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY . . .	95-97
XXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Present System of the Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> , <i>amō</i> , and <i>habēō</i> . Volitive Subjunctive. Optative Subjunctive . . . . .	97-101
XXX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Purpose and Result Clauses . . . . .	101-104
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Persian Wars</i> . . . . .	105
XXXI. THIRD CONJUGATION. Present System of <i>regō</i> in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	106-109
XXXII. THIRD CONJUGATION ( <i>continued</i> ).—Perfect System of <i>regō</i> in the Indicative, Active and Passive . . .	109-111

LESSON	PAGES
XXXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō).—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of <b>capīō</b> , Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Result. . . . .	111-115
XXXIV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of <b>audiō</b> , Active and Passive . . . . .	115-117
XXXV. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—Relative Clauses of Purpose and of Characteristic . . . . .	117-121
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Marathon</i> . . . . .	121-122
XXXVI. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.—Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing . . . . .	122-124
XXXVII. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Semi-Deponent Verbs. Ablative with Deponents . . . . .	125-127
XXXVIII. THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	128-130
XXXIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	131-134
XL. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	134-137
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis</i> . . . . .	137-139
XLI. THE INFINITIVE.—Subject and Object Infinitives. Indirect Discourse . . . . .	139-143
XLII. INDIRECT DISCOURSE ( <i>continued</i> ).—Indirect Questions. Conditions in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	143-146
READING EXERCISE: <i>Roman History from 60 B. C.</i> . . . . .	147-148
XLIII. THE COMPOUNDS OF <b>sum</b> .—Dative with Compounds . . . . .	148-150
XLIV. <b>Volō, nōlō, mālō</b> . . . . .	150-152
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of Civil War</i> . . . . .	153-154
XLV. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS . . . . .	154-156
XLVI. <b>Eō</b> and <b>fiō</b> . . . . .	157-158
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Civil Wars (continued)</i> . . . . .	159-160
XLVII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—Clauses introduced by <b>antequam</b> and <b>priusquam</b> ; by <b>dum</b> . . . . .	160-164



LESSON	PAGES
XLVIII. CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY <b>cum</b> . . . . .	164-167
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Assassination of Caesar</i> . . . . .	167-168
XLIX. CAUSE AND CONCESSION . . . . .	169-171
L. PARTICIPLES.—Ablative Absolute . . . . .	172-175
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Destruction of the Conspirators</i> . . . . .	176-177
LI. THE VERB <b>ferō</b> . . . . .	177-179
LII. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES . . . . .	179-181
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Actium and the End of the Civil Wars</i> . . . . .	181-183
LIII. REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE . . . . .	188-187
LIV. REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE . . . . .	187-191
READING EXERCISE: <i>Octavian's Triumph and Rule</i> . . . . .	191-193
LV. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	193-195
LVI. GERUND AND SUPINE . . . . .	196-199
LVII. NUMERALS . . . . .	199-200
CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN . . . . .	201-215
APPENDIX.—Declensions and Conjugations . . . . .	217-258
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	259-285
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	286-298

# FIRST LATIN BOOK

## INTRODUCTION

### THE LATIN LANGUAGE

- 1 THE Latin language is so named because it was first spoken by the ancient Latin tribe which inhabited the neighborhood of Rome. It gradually spread until it became the principal language of the Roman Empire, which once covered the whole western civilized world. It lasted as the common spoken language well into the Middle Ages, and as the universal language of scholars until about the middle of the eighteenth century. Some books are still written in Latin, and some scholars speak it. It is also used in our time as the language of the Roman Catholic Church.
- 2 Latin is the parent of those modern languages which are known as Romance languages—such as French, Italian, and Spanish. About one-half of all our English words are borrowed from foreign languages, and four-fifths of these borrowed words come either directly or indirectly from Latin.

### Alphabet

- 3 The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no j or w.

- 4 **U** as the vowel form of **V** was not invented until the Middle Ages, but for convenience both forms are generally used. **K** is found only in *Kalendae, Calends, the first of the month*, and a very few other words. **Q** is always followed by **u** as in English. **Y** and **Z** were introduced about 50 B. C. to represent the sounds of the corresponding Greek letters, and are found only in foreign words.
- 5 The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui**.
- 6 The consonants are all other letters. They are divided into

Mutes (stopped sounds) **p, b, t, d, c, k, q, g**.  
 Liquids . . . **l, m, n, r**.  
 Sibilant . . . **s**.  
 Double consonants . **x = cs or gs, z = ds**.

### Pronunciation

7

#### VOWELS

The mark - over a vowel means that it is *long*, and ˘ that it is *short*.

ā as the last <i>a</i> of <i>aha</i> '.	ǣ as the first <i>a</i> of <i>aha</i> !
ē as in <i>why</i> .	ē as in <i>whet</i> .
ī as in <i>pique</i> .	ī as in <i>pick</i> .
ō as in <i>omen</i> .	ō as in <i>omit</i> .
ū as <i>oo</i> in <i>pool</i> .	ū as in <i>put</i> .
ȳ ȳ like the German <i>ü</i> or the French <i>u</i> .	

8

#### DIPHTHONGS

ae as <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .	eu as <i>eu</i> in <i>feud</i> .
oe as <i>oi</i> in <i>oil</i> .	ei as <i>ei</i> in <i>feint</i> .
au as <i>ow</i> in <i>owl</i> .	ui as <i>we</i> .

- 9 The sounds of **ei**, **ui**, **eu**, will be more accurately reproduced if the English words are somewhat drawled, so that the component vowels may be heard more distinctly, e. g., *fee-int*.

10

## CONSONANTS

Consonants are sounded as in English, except that

**c** and **g** are always hard, as in *cat*, *get*.

**i** consonant is always like *y* in *yet*.

**s** is always sharp, as in *sun*, *sea*.

**t** is always sounded as in *time*.

**v** is always like *w* in *wine*.

**x** is like *ks*.

**z** is like *dz* in *adze*.

**bs** is like *ps*.

**bt** is like *pt*.

**ch** is like *k*.

Doubled consonants, like **ll**, **nn**, **tt**, must be sounded separately: *ll-le*, *án-nus*, *mít-tō*. Compare the English *book-case*, *rat-trap*.

## Syllables

- 11 A Latin word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs: *au-rum*, *gold*; *a-mā-vit*, *he loved*; *for-ti-tū-dō*, *bravery*.

- 12 In dividing words into syllables:

(a) A single consonant is attached to the following vowel: *lō-gā-tus*, *ambassador*.

(b) When two or more consonants stand together, as many are usually attached to the following vowel as can begin a word: *for-tis*, *brave*; *prō-vín-ci-a*, *province*; *cō-gnō-scō*, *I recognize*.

(c) But compound words are divided into their component parts: *ád-sum*, *I am present*.

### Quantity of Vowels

- 13 Vowels are either *long* (marked -) or *short* (marked ˘).

In this book all long vowels are marked ; all vowels not marked may be regarded as short.

- 14 A vowel is regularly short before a vowel or *h*: *mēus*, *mine*; *nīhil*, *nothing*.

(a) A few exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek: *Aenēas*.

- 15 It will be useful to remember that, with a few exceptions which will be marked, a vowel before *nt* or *nd* is short.

- 16 Diphthongs, vowels formed from diphthongs, and vowels due to contraction are long: *cāūsa*, *reason*; *īnīquus* (*in* + *āquus*), *unfair*; *cōgō* (*cō* + *āgō*), *compel*.

Also a vowel before *i* consonant, *nf*, *ns*, and often before *gn*, is long: *ēius*, *of him, his*; *īnfāns*, *child*; *mēnsa*, *table*; *rēgnum*, *kingdom*.

### Quantity of Syllables

- 17 A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is also long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by a double consonant: *ex*, *from*; *mors*, *death*.

It is important to remember that it is the *syllable*, not the vowel, which is long by position. Thus the last *syllable* of *āmant* is long by position, owing to the time required to pronounce the consonants *nt*, but the vowel *a* is short.

## Accent

- 18 The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult, the *antepenult*.
- 19 Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *pá-ter*, *má-ter*.
- 20 Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long: *Rō-mā-nus*. Otherwise they are accented on the antepenult: *tá-bu-la*, *table*; *ma-ri-ti-mus*, *maritime*.
- 21 A few monosyllables, called enclitics because they are closely joined to the preceding words, always throw an accent upon the syllable before them, even if that syllable be short. The most common enclitics are *-ne*, a sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*: *audítne*, *does he hear?* *rosáque*, *and a rose*.

## 22

## Exercise for Pronunciation

In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Mercēde  
 In the throat of a wolf a bone had stuck. For pay  
 igitur condūcit gruem, quī illud extrahat. Hōc  
 therefore he hired a crane who it was to take out. This  
 grūs longitūdine colli facile effēcit. Cum  
 the crane because of the length of his neck easily did. When,  
 autem mercēdem postulāret, subridēns lupus et  
 however, his pay he asked for, smiling the wolf and  
 dentibus infrendēns, "Num tibi," inquit, "parva mercēs  
 his teeth gnashing, "Does it to you," said he, "small pay  
 vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupī faucibus  
 seem that your head unharmed from a wolf's throat  
 extrāxisti?"  
 you have got out?"

- 23 The Latin language has the same parts of speech as the English, and the same grammatical terms—*case, number, mood, tense, voice, declension*, etc.—are for the most part used in both English and Latin grammar.

### Cases

- 24 The cases in Latin are the *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative*. These are partially distinguished by different forms, as will be explained later. There are also a few nouns which have a *locative* case, but this case had been nearly lost before the Romans developed a literature. The meanings of the cases will be shown in the following lessons.

### Gender

- 25 There are three genders in Latin, as in English; but the gender of a Latin noun is more often determined by its ending than by its meaning. Special rules for gender will be given for each class of nouns; but the following general rules are useful:

(a) *Masculine* are names of males, also names of rivers, winds, and months: **pater**, *father*; **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*; **Eurus**, *east wind*; **Martius**, *March*.

(b) *Feminine* are names of females, also names of countries, islands, towns, and trees: **māter**, *mother*; **Tullia**, *Tullia*; **Eurōpa**, *Europe*; **Sicilia**, *Sicily*; **quercus**, *oak*.

## LESSON I

### FIRST OR -ā DECLENSION

26

#### Stem in ā<sup>1</sup>

THE Gender is *Feminine*, except of nouns which denote males (25 a).

#### NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL

27

#### EXAMPLES

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	<i>fābula, story.</i> <i>rosa, rose.</i>	<i>fābulae, stories.</i> <i>rosae, roses.</i>
ACCUSATIVE	<i>fābulam, story.</i> <i>rosam, rose.</i>	<i>fābulās, stories.</i> <i>rosās, roses.</i>

(a) Notice how the Latin plural is distinguished from the singular, and that, while in English the nominative and accusative (i. e. objective) have the same form, in Latin the endings differ.

Form the accusative singular, the nominative and accusative plural of *puella, girl*; *via, road*; *parva, small*; *māgna, large*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Stem is the body of the word to which the endings are attached. The term is used here for convenience, but the changes of stems in forming the cases are too complicated for the beginner to attempt to understand.



## 28

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

ancilla, f. *maid-servant.*fābula, f. *story, tale.*Iūlia, f. *Julia.*puella, f. *girl.*rosa, f. *rose.*Tullia, f. *Tullia.*via, f. *road.*

## PARTICLES

-ne, a sign of a question  
(21).et, *and.*

## ADJECTIVES

bona, f. *good.*lāta, f. *wide, broad.*longa, f. *long.*māgna, f. *large.*parva, f. *small, little.*

## VERBS

est, (*he, she, it*) *is.*sunt, (*they*) *are.*amat, (*he, she, it*) *loves,*  
*likes.*amant, (*they*) *love, like.*

## 29

## EXAMPLES

1. Puella est parva.

*The girl is small.*

2. Viae sunt longae.

*The roads are long.*

3. Iūlia amat parvam puellam.

*Julia loves the little girl.*

4. Amantne puellae rosās?

*Do the girls like roses?*

(a) Notice that in Latin there is no article: we may translate *puella*, *girl*, *a girl*, *the girl*, as the situation requires. The fourth example above might have been translated, *Do girls like the roses?*

(b) Notice also that the adjectives agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, as in English.

30 **Rule.**—The Subject of a finite<sup>1</sup> verb is in the Nominative.

31 **Rule.**—The Direct Object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative.

W. 289, 308; B. 166, 172; AG. 173, 237; H. 387, 404.

32 1. Fābula est longa. 2. Lāta est via. 3. Longa via est lāta. 4. Iūlia est puella. 5. Parva puella est Tullia.

<sup>1</sup> That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

6. Iūlia amat magnās rosās. 7. Amatne Iūlia longās fābulās? 8. Parvae puellae fābulās amant. 9. Iūlia est ancilla. 10. Estne<sup>1</sup> bona ancilla? 11. Tullia et Iūlia sunt bonae ancillae. 12. Ancillae parvam puellam amant.

- 33 1. The road is long. 2. The wide road is long. 3. Girls like roses. 4. Does Julia like roses? 5. Julia likes large roses. 6. Are Julia and Tullia little girls? 7. They are maid-servants. 8. Is the story good? 9. It is good and long.

## LESSON II

## FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

34

## PARADIGM

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc. <sup>2</sup>	rosa, <i>a rose.</i>	rosae, <i>roses.</i>
GEN.	rosae, <i>of a rose.</i>	rosarum, <i>of roses.</i>
DAT.	rosae, <i>to a rose.</i>	rosis, <i>to roses.</i>
ACCU.	rosam, <i>a rose.</i>	rosās, <i>roses.</i>
ABL.	rosā, <i>with<sup>3</sup> a rose.</i>	rosis, <i>with roses.</i>

(a) The terminations, printed above in full-faced type, represent the case-endings combined with the stem; but in some forms no case-ending appears.

(b) Notice what cases are alike in the paradigm. Make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the number of the subject is shown by the verb-ending.

<sup>2</sup> The vocative is the case of address; in most nouns it is the same as the nominative.

<sup>3</sup> This translation of the ablative is only one of a number possible; the various meanings will be given later.

## POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

35

## EXAMPLES

1. *Rosa puellae est alba.*      *The girl's rose is white.*
2. *Ancilla Tulliae est bona.*      *Tullia's maid is good.*

(a) Notice that the genitives *puellae* and *Tulliae* tell the persons who possess the rose and the maid-servant. Such a genitive is called a *Possessive Genitive*.

36

**Rule.**—The Genitive is used to denote the Possessor.

W. 353; B. 198; AG. 214, a. 1; H. 440, 1.

## DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

37

## EXAMPLES

1. *Iūlia rosam ancillae dat.*      *Julia gives the maid a rose.*
2. *Tullia fābulam puellis narrat.*      *Tullia tells the girls a story.*

(a) Notice that the datives *ancillae* and *puellis* tell the persons to whom something is given or told. Such a dative, denoting the person toward whom the action of the verb is directed, is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*. It may often be translated by the English Objective case with *to* or *for*.

38

**Rule.**—The Indirect Object of a verb is in the Dative case.

W. 326; B. 187; AG. 224; H. 424.

39

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

*cūra*, f. *care*.  
*epistula*, f. *letter*.  
*filia*,<sup>1</sup> f. *daughter*.  
*patria*, f. *fatherland*.  
*rēgina*, f. *queen*.  
*silva*, f. *wood, forest*.

## ADJECTIVES

*cāra*, f. *dear, beloved*.  
*mala*, f. *bad, wicked*.  
*multa*, f. *much, many*.  
*nova*, f. *new*.  
*pulchra*, f. *beautiful, pretty*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dative and ablative plural *filīā-bus*.

sed, conj. *but*.nōn, adv. *not*.

## VERBS

dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives*.narrant, (*they*) *tell*.dant, (*they*) *give*.habet, (*he, she, it*) *has*.narrat, (*he, she, it*) *tells*.habent, (*they*) *have*.

- 40 1. Tullia est rēgīnae filia. 2. Rēgīna novam fābulam filiae narrat. 3. Rēgīna habet pulchrās filiās. 4. Rēgīnae filiābus (dat.) pulchram fābulam narrat. 5. Parvae puellae (nom.) rosās multās rēgīnae dant. 6. Rēgīna amat patriam. 7. Patria rēgīnae (dat.) cāra est. 8. Rēgīna est bona et patriam amat. 9. Rēgīna filiae epistulam dat. 10. Suntne viae patriae longae? 11. Sunt longae sed nōn lātae. 12. Silva pulchra est lāta. 13. Rēgīnae bonae multam cūram habent. 14. Mala ancilla est māgna cūra.

- 41 Notice how the order of the preceding sentences differs from that in English. Latin being an inflected language, that is, having different forms to express the relation of words, admits of greater freedom in the arrangement of a sentence than ours. For example, if some one should say in English, *The queen the girl loves*, we should not know whether *queen* was subject or object; but in the Latin *Rēgīna puellam amat*, the case-endings make the construction clear. Study the following sentences:

1. **Rēgīna parvam puellam amat.** *The QUEEN (in contrast to the king, or any one else) loves the little girl.*

2. **Parvam puellam amat rēgīna.** *It is the LITTLE GIRL (not some one else) the queen loves.*

3. **Amatne rēgīna parvam puellam?** *Does the queen LOVE the little girl?*

The following general principles should be remembered:

(a) In a Latin sentence the subject, as the most important part, is ordinarily placed first; then the object

follows, as the next most important part; the indirect object, if any, follows; and the verb comes at the end, except such unimportant forms as *est*, *sunt*, and other parts of the Latin verb 'to be,' which may generally be placed in any convenient part of the sentence.

(b) Adjectives usually precede their nouns.

(c) If a word is to be made emphatic, it is ordinarily put first in the sentence.

- 42 With these principles in mind translate the following sentences, and see the varying meaning you can give by changing the position of the Latin words. Remember the Latin order is significant; it is never a matter of chance.

1. Tullia's letter is long. 2. The maid gives the letter to the queen. 3. The queen's daughter is not beautiful, but (she is)<sup>1</sup> dear. 4. The maid is telling Julia a new story. 5. Julia is a little girl, but she loves long stories. 6. Large forests are beautiful. 7. A good<sup>2</sup> queen loves her country, but a bad<sup>2</sup> queen does not.

### LESSON III

#### FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

##### PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

43

##### EXAMPLES

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Alexandra est rēgina.</i>                      | <i>Alexandra is the queen.</i>                |
| 2. <i>Tullia et Iūlia sunt par-<br/>vae puellae.</i> | <i>Tullia and Julia are little<br/>girls.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the nominatives *rēgina*, *puellae*, are in the predicates, and mean the same

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> Express emphasis by the order.

as the subjects **Alexandra** and **Tullia et Iūlia**. Such nouns as **rēgina** and **puella** are called *Predicate Nouns*.

(b) Notice that nouns were used in this way in sentences 4, 5, 9, 10, and 11 of Lesson I, and sentences 1 and 14 of Lesson II.

- 44** *Rule.*—A Predicate noun agrees with its subject in case.  
W. 290; B. 168; AG. 185; H. 393.

### DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

## 45                      EXAMPLES

1. **Bona ancilla est Iūliae** (dative). *Julia has a good maid.*
2. **Rosae sunt puellis** (dative). *The girls have roses.*

(a) Notice that the datives **Iūliae** and **puellis** are used in the predicate with **est** and **sunt** to tell the persons to whom **ancilla** and **rosae** belong, and that the meaning is the same as **Iūlia bonam ancillam habet, Puellae rosas habent**. Such a dative is called the *Dative of Possessor*. The thing possessed is the subject of the verb.

- 46** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with *est*, and other forms of the Latin verb meaning “to be,” to denote the Possessor.  
W. 340; B. 190; AG. 231; H. 430.

## 47 VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

āra, f. altar.	Graecia, f. Greece.
Britannia, f. Britain, Eng- land.	Ītalia, f. Italy.
dea, <sup>1</sup> f. goddess.	nauta, m. sailor.
fāma, f. fame, reputation.	poēta, m. poet.
	vīta, f. life.

## ADJECTIVES

clāra, f. *renowned, famous.*      mea, f. *my.*  
grāta, f. *pleasing, acceptable.*      tua, f. *your (singular).*

<sup>1</sup> **Dea** forms the dative and ablative plural like **filia** (39).

## VERBS

laudat, (*he, etc.*) *praises.*habitat, (*he, etc.*) *lives, dwells.*laudant, (*they*) *praise.*habitant, (*they*) *live, dwell.*

## ADVERBS

ibi, *there.*ubi, *where* (relative and interrogative).

- 48 1. Graecia est mea patria, Italia est patria Tulliae.  
 2. Deae habent multās ārās. 3. Deābus sunt multae ārae.  
 4. Ubi<sup>1</sup> sunt ārae deārum? 5. Laudatne poēta deam?  
 6. Poēta, māgna est tua fāma. 7. Longa vīta nōn est nautae.  
 8. Vīta rēgīnae est longa. 9. Rēgīna multās filiās habet.  
 10. Rēgīnae (dat.) sunt multae filiae. 11. Fāma est poētae grāta.  
 12. Clāra est poētae fāma. 13. Italia est patria nautae, sed ibi nōn habitat.

- 49 1. The poet loves great fame. 2. Altars are acceptable to the goddesses. 3. England is the sailor's native land and he lives there. 4. Poets love and praise their native land. 5. The queen has a beautiful daughter.<sup>2</sup> 6. Do the broad forests belong to the queen? 7. My daughter, your letter is not long.

## LESSON IV

## SECOND OR -o DECLENSION

## Stem in o

- 50 THE Gender of nouns of the Second Declension ending in -us in the nominative is usually *Masculine*.

<sup>1</sup> As ubi is itself an interrogative particle, -ne is not needed.

<sup>2</sup> In how many ways can this be translated?

51

## PARADIGM

**Servus, slave.****servo-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	<b>servus, serve</b>	<b>servī</b>
GEN.	<b>servī</b>	<b>servōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>servō</b>	<b>servīs</b>
ACCU.	<b>servum</b>	<b>servōs</b>
ABL.	<b>servō</b>	<b>servīs</b>

(a) The vocative singular of such nouns ends in **-e**. In all other nouns and in all plurals it is the same as the nominative.

(b) Notice what cases have the same terminations; make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

(c) All the feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have corresponding masculine forms in **-us** declined like **servus**: **bonus, cārus, clārus, longus, māgnus, parvus**, etc.

(d) Decline together, **bonus amicus, lātus campus**.

## APPOSITIVES

52

## EXAMPLES

1. **Dea Vesta āram habet.** *The goddess, Vesta, has an altar.*
2. **Iūliae puellae rosam dat ancilla.** *The maid gives a rose to the girl Julia.*

(a) Notice that **Vesta** is in the same case as **dea**, and explains what goddess is meant; that **Iūliae** bears the same relation to **puellae**. Such a noun explaining another noun referring to the same person or thing is called an *Appositive*, as in English.

53

**Rule.**—An Appositive agrees with its subject in case.  
W. 291; B. 169, 2; AG. 184; H. 393.

Decline together **dea Vesta, Marcus dominus**.



## ABLATIVE OF PLACE

54

## EXAMPLES

1. **Amicus est in hortō.** *A friend is in the garden.*  
 2. **Dea āram in campō habet.** *The goddess has an altar in the plain.*

(a) Notice that **in hortō**, **in campō** answer the question *Where?* Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of the Place Where*.

55 **Rule.**—The Place Where is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition.

W. 401; B. 228; AG. 258, c; H. 483.

56

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

<b>agricola</b> , -ae, m. <i>farmer</i> .	<b>servus</b> , -i, m. <i>slave</i> .
<b>amicus</b> , -i, m. <i>friend</i> .	<b>terra</b> , -ae, f. <i>land; earth, ground</i> .
<b>campus</b> , -i, m. <i>plain, field</i> .	<b>Vesta</b> , -ae, f. <i>Vesta (a goddess)</i> .
<b>dominus</b> , -i, m. <i>master, owner</i> .	<b>vilicus</b> , i, m. <i>steward, superintendent of an estate</i> .
<b>hortus</b> , -i, m. <i>garden</i> .	<b>villa</b> , -ae, f. <i>country house, farm</i> .
<b>Marcus</b> , -i, m. <i>Marcus</i> .	
<b>ōceanus</b> , -i, m. <i>ocean</i> .	
<b>Quintus</b> , -i, m. <i>Quintus</i> .	

## VERBS

<b>cūrat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>cares for, takes care of</i> .	<b>errant</b> , (they) <i>wander, stray about</i> .
<b>cūrant</b> , (they) <i>care for, take care of</i> .	<b>labōrat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>works</i> .
<b>errat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>wanders, strays about</i> .	<b>labōrant</b> , (they) <i>work</i> .
	<b>nāvigat</b> , (he, etc.) <i>sails</i> .
	<b>nāvigant</b> , (they) <i>sail</i> .

**in**, preposition with abl., *in*.    **itaque**, conj., *therefore*.

57 1. **Āra deae Vestae est in silvā.** 2. **Deae grāta est rosa.** 3. **Itaque Marcus multās rosās deae dat.** 4. **Marcus est agricola et amicus Quīnti.** 5. **Quīntō sunt lāti campī**

et magnus hortus. 6. Habet villam et multos servos. 7. Servi laborant in campis domini. 8. Quintus in terra non habitat, sed oceanum navigat. 9. Marcus est Quinti vilicus. 10. Itaque Marcus hortum et villam mei amici Quinti curat. 11. Amice Quinte, Marcus est bonus vilicus. 12. Iulia et Tullia, filiae domini, ibi errant, ubi sunt multae et pulchrae rosae.

- 58 1. The steward's reputation is good. 2. Marcus, the owner of the country house, has a new steward.<sup>1</sup> 3. Where are the new slaves working? 4. They are working in your garden, but the maids are working in my country house. 5. The ocean is dear to the sailor, but the farmer praises the land. 6. Julia, where are your beautiful roses? 7. My roses are on (in) the altar of the goddess. 8. Poets praise the famous forests of Italy, where the goddess has many altars.<sup>1</sup>

## LESSON V

## SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

## NEUTER NOUNS

- 59 THE Gender of all nouns of the Second Declension ending in -um is *Neuter*.

60

## PARADIGM

**Dōnum, gift.****dono-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	dōnī	dōnōrum
DAT.	dōnō	dōnīs
ACCU.	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	dōnō	dōnīs

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate the sentence in two ways.

(a) Notice that the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative have the same form. This is true of all neuters.

#### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

- 61 The masculine and feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have neuter forms in -um: bonum, cārum, clārum, longum, māgnum, parvum, etc. These are declined like dōnum.

The full declension of these adjectives is shown thus :

62

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	bonus, bone	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACCU.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonis	bonis	bonis
ACCU.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonis	bonis	bonis

#### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.—PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

63

#### EXAMPLES

1. Amicus est bonus.
2. Puella est pulchra.
3. Dōnum est grātum.
4. Amici sunt boni.
5. Puellae sunt pulchrae.
6. Dōna sunt grāta.
7. Rēgina māgnam cūram habet.
8. Poēta pulchrōs hortōs laudat.

(a) Notice that in these sentences and in those of all the preceding lessons the adjectives have the same *Gen-*

*der*, *Number*, and *Case* as the nouns they modify; also that in the first six sentences the adjectives are in the predicate. Compare these with predicate nouns (43).

- 64 **Rule.**—An Adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

W. 293; B. 234; AG. 186; H. 394.

- 65 In the sentences used thus far the adjectives have the same terminations as the nouns they modify; but this is not always so—e. g., we must say, *bonus agricola*, *boni agricolae*, etc., since *agricola* is masculine.

Decline *clārus poēta*.

- 66

# VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

<i>argentum</i> , -i, n. <i>silver, money</i> .	<i>Horātius</i> , <sup>1</sup> -i, m. <i>Horace</i> .
<i>dōnum</i> , -i, n. <i>gift</i> .	<i>lupus</i> , -i, m. <i>wolf</i> .
<i>filius</i> , <sup>1</sup> -i, m. <i>son</i> .	<i>Mūsa</i> , -ae, f. <i>Muse</i> .
<i>gladius</i> , <sup>1</sup> -i m. <i>sword</i> .	<i>periculum</i> , -i, n. <i>danger</i> .
<i>grātia</i> , -ae, f. <i>gratitude</i> , <i>favor (grātus, -a, -um)</i> .	<i>populus</i> , -i, m. <i>people</i> .
	<i>scūtum</i> , -i, n. <i>shield</i> .
<i>Rōmānus</i> , -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	<i>quoque</i> , adv., <i>also, too</i> .

## VERBS

<i>erat</i> , ( <i>he</i> , etc.) <i>was</i> .	<i>errābat</i> , <sup>2</sup> ( <i>he</i> , etc.) <i>was wan-</i>
<i>erant</i> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>were</i> .	<i>dering, wandered</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The Genitive singular of all nouns in -ius ends in single -ī; the accent is always on the penult: *fīlī*, *Horātī*.

The Vocative singular of *filius* and all proper names in -ius also ends in -ī: *fīlī*, *Horātī*.

<sup>2</sup> Notice how the form of this tense is related to the present *errat*. *Errābat* is called the Imperfect tense and is equivalent to the English Progressive Preterite or to the simple Preterite. Form the Imperfects of *fugat*, *laudat*, *narrat*, and *servat*. The imperfect of *dat* is *dābat*, *dābant*.

<b>errābat</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>were wandering, wandered.</i>	<b>habitābat</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>was living, lived, dwelt.</i>
<b>fugat</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>puts to flight.</i>	<b>habitābant</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>were living, lived, dwelt.</i>
<b>fugant</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>put to flight.</i>	
<b>habēbat</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>was having, had.</i>	<b>servat</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>saves, protects.</i>
<b>habēbant</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>were having, had.</i>	<b>servant</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>save, protect.</i>

**67** 1. Horātius erat clārus poēta. 2. In Italiā habitābat et populō Rōmānō cārus erat. 3. Fīlius vilicī erat et villam parvam, dōnum amīcī, habēbat. 4. Ibi habitābat et villam amābat. 5. Nōn multum argentum sed multōs amīcōs habēbat. 6. Horātius parvus fīlius vilicī in silvā errābat. 7. Ibi lupus quoque errābat. 8. Gladius et scūtum nōn erant Horātiō. 9. Itaque māgnō in<sup>1</sup> periculō erat Horātius, sed Mūsae poētam servābant. 10. Horātius lupum fugābat et Mūsīs grātiam habēbat.

**68** 1. Where did the famous poet Horace live? 2. Italy was the native land of the poet Horace. 3. The poet's life was not long, but it was dear to the Muses. 4. The Muses saved Horace's life; therefore he felt grateful<sup>2</sup> to the goddesses and gave (them)<sup>3</sup> many gifts. 5. Horace put a wolf to flight in the forest. 6. Horace's friend gave (him)<sup>3</sup> a beautiful country house. 7. Horace did not have great gardens and many slaves. 8. But the gifts of his friend were acceptable to the poet.

---

<sup>1</sup> A monosyllabic preposition frequently stands between an adjective and its noun.

<sup>2</sup> Compare sentence 10 above.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

# LESSON VI

## SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

### Nouns in -er and -ir

69

#### PARADIGMS

**Puer, boy.****puer-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	puer	pueri
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs
ACCU.	puerum	puerōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs

**Ager, field.****agro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	ager	agrī
GEN.	agrī	agrōrum
DAT.	agrō	agrīs
ACCU.	agrum	agrōs
ABL.	agrō	agrīs

**Vir, man.****viro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACCU.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

(a) Notice that with the exception of the nominative and vocative singular these nouns are declined like **ser-vus**; also that the only difference between the declension

of *puer* and *āger* is that *puer* keeps the *e* of the nominative throughout, while *āger* drops it. Most nouns in -*er* of the Second Declension are declined like *āger*.

### ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

70

#### EXAMPLES

1. *Poēta cum filiō errat.*      *The poet is walking with (his) son.*
2. *Quintus cum vilicō habitābat.*      *Quintus lived with (his) steward.*
3. *Rēgina cum filiabus in hortō erat.*      *The queen was in the garden with (her) daughters.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablative with *cum* is used to denote the person who accompanies the subject. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

- 71 *Rule.*—Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *cum*.

W. 392; B. 222; AG. 248 a; H. 473, 1.

72

### VOCABULARY

#### NOUNS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>ager, agri, m. field.</i>                                | <i>magister, magistri, m. school-master, teacher.</i> |
| <i>bellum, -i, n. war.</i>                                  |   |
| <i>Britanni, -ōrum, m. Britons, inhabitants of Britain.</i> | <i>oppidum, -i, n. town.</i>                          |
|   | <i>praemium,<sup>2</sup> -i, n. reward.</i>           |
| <i>liber, libri, m. book.</i>                               | <i>Rōma, -ae, f. Rome.</i>                            |
| <i>liberi,<sup>1</sup> -ōrum, m. children (free-born).</i>  | <i>vir, viri, m. man.</i>                             |

#### ADJECTIVES

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>antiquus, -a, -um, ancient, old.</i> | <i>validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy.</i> |
|---|--|

<sup>1</sup> Not used in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> The genitive singular of neuter nouns in -*ium* ends in single -*i*; *praemium, praemi* (66, 1).

## VERBS

<b>erit</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>will be.</i>	<b>dabunt</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>will give.</i>
<b>erunt</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>will be.</i>	<b>habēbit</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>will have.</i>
<b>amābit</b> , <sup>1</sup> ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>will love.</i>	<b>habēbunt</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>will have.</i>
<b>amābunt</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>will love.</i>	<b>servābit</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>will save.</i>
<b>dabit</b> , ( <i>he, etc.</i> ) <i>will give.</i>	<b>servābunt</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>will save.</i>
<b>cum</b> , prep. with abl. <i>with.</i>	<b>semper</b> , <i>always.</i>

- 73** 1. Vilicus cum servis est in agris. 2. Servi Marci agricolae in hortō labōrant. 3. Bonis servis dominus praemium dabit. 4. In Britannia sunt antiquae viae Romanae. 5. Multi liberi sunt Marcō agricolae, pulchra filia et validi filii. 6. Liberi poetae habebunt bonum magistrum. 7. Iulia, poetae filia, librōs magistrī cūrat. 8. Pueri cum amicis in lātā silvā semper errant. 9. Erunt validi viri, gladium et scūtum habebunt et bella amābunt. 10. Nauta cum liberis oceanum nāvigat. 11. Magnō in periculō erunt liberi, sed nauta liberōs servābit.

- 74** 1. Marcus's sons live in the town with their teacher. 2. The children will not have much money, but they will have many good books. 3. The teacher wanders in the ancient woods and fields with the children. 4. He tells the boys and girls many good stories. 5. The teacher will give the boys books, not money, as a reward. 6. The children will love the books of the poet Horace, the gift of (their)<sup>2</sup> teacher. 7. The books of the poet Horace will always be famous. 8. A great reputation will be the reward of a good poet.

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice how these Futures are related to the present and imperfect (66) forms of the same verbs. Form Futures, singular and plural, of *fugat*, *laudat*, *narrat*, and write sentences containing these forms.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.



## LESSON VII

## THE VERB SUM, to be

- 75 LEARN the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive of **sum** (485).

(a) Notice that the endings of the verb learned indicate the *person* and *number*, as the endings of nouns indicate the *case* and *number*. Thus far only the third person has been employed: **est, erat, erit** in the singular; **sunt, erant, erunt** in the plural. The subjects of the first and second persons are expressed only for emphasis.

- 76 **Rule.**—A finite verb agrees with its subject in **Number** and **Person**.

W. 296; B. 254, 1; AG. 204; H. 388.

- 77 1. Sum, eram, erō. 2. Es, erās, eris. 3. Estis, erātis, eritis. 4. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 5. Erat, esse, erit. 6. Estis, eritis, erunt.

- 78 1. You (sing.) are, you (sing.) were. 2. You (plu.) will be, you were. 3. I was, you shall be, they are. 4. They are, they were, they shall be.

## 79 Adjectives in -er

## PARADIGMS

**Niger, nigra, nigrum, black.**

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACCU.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

	PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACCU.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

**Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.**

	SINGULAR		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserae	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserae	miserō
ACCU.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō

	PLURAL		
NOM., Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACCU.	miserōs	miserās	misera
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(a) Notice that these adjectives in *-er* have the same peculiarities of declension as nouns in *-er*; the feminine nominative shows whether the adjective follows *ager* or *puer*.

80

## VOCABULARY

<i>aeger, -gra, -grum, feeble,</i>	<i>niger, -gra, -grum, black.</i>
<i>sick.</i>	<i>pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beau-</i>
<i>cēteri, -ae, -a,<sup>1</sup> the rest of.</i>	<i>tiful.</i>
<i>liber, -era, -erum, free.</i>	<i>sacer, -era, -erum, sacred.</i>
<i>miser, -era, -erum, wretched,</i>	<i>tener, -era, -erum, delicate,</i>
<i>unhappy.</i>	<i>soft, tender.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Usually plural; the masculine and neuter are frequently used as substantives.



## LESSON VIII

FIRST OR *a* CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE; PRESENT SYSTEM

- 83 THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Participle. When these are known all other forms can easily be determined. Thus the Principal Parts of *amō* are:

*amō*, I love. *amāre*, to love. *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.  
*amātus*, having been loved.

- 84 Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive active of *amō* (479).

(a) Notice that all these forms, with the apparent exception of the first person singular of the present indicative, are formed from the stem *amā-*, which may be obtained by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive. This form *amā-* is called the Present Stem, and the tenses formed from it belong to the Present System.<sup>1</sup>

- 85 The Personal Endings express Person, Number, and Voice. They are given for the active voice in the following table:

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-m, -ō	-mus
SECOND.	-s	-tis
THIRD.	-t	-nt

---

<sup>1</sup> The present and imperfect subjunctive, the present and future imperative, and the present participle, which also belong to the Present System, will be taken up later.

86 The Imperfect is formed by adding to the stem *amā-*, *-bā-*, sometimes called the Tense Sign of the imperfect, to which are added the personal endings. The Tense Sign of the Future for all verbs of the First and Second Conjugation is *-bī-*, which appears as *-bō* in the 1st pers. sing. and *-bu-* in the 3d pers. plural.

87 Inflect like *amō* the following:

<i>fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugā-</i>	<i>servō, servāre, servāvī, ser-</i>
<i>tus, to put to flight.</i>	<i>vātus, to save.</i>
<i>laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, lau-</i>	<i>vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocā-</i>
<i>dātus, to praise.</i>	<i>tus, to call.</i>

88 1. *Laudō, laudābās, laudābit.* 2. *Servābitis, servābā-*  
*mus, servat.* 3. *Fugāmus, fugābāmus, fugābimus.* 4. *Vo-*  
*cat, vocāre, vocābat.* 5. *Fugābis, laudābō, servābātis.*  
 6. *Fugant, fugābant, fugābunt.*

89 1. He is calling, they will save. 2. I am praising, I  
 was praising, I shall praise. 3. You are putting to flight,  
 you were putting to flight, you will put to flight. 4. He  
 calls, they called, you will call. 5. To save, you will save,  
 you saved.

90 1. *Rōma erat antiquum oppidum in Italiā.* 2. *Ibi*  
*populus Rōmānus habitābat.* 3. *Validi viri erant Rōmāni*  
*et cum ceteris populis Italiæ bella agēbant.*<sup>1</sup> 4. *Populō*  
*Rōmānō erant lātī agrī.* 5. *Multi equi in tenerā herbā*  
*agrōrum errābant.* 6. *Rōmāni Rōmam, pulchrum oppi-*  
*dum, semper amābunt et laudābunt.* 7. *Rōmulus erat*  
*clārus Rōmānus.* 8. *Magister, liberis pulchram fābulam*  
*dē<sup>2</sup> (about) Rōmulō narrās.* 9. *Fābulās narrāre mihi (to*

<sup>1</sup> Carried on.

<sup>2</sup> A common preposition with the ablative.

*me*) grātum est: fābulam dē Rōmulō narrābō. 10. Lupa<sup>1</sup> (*she-wolf*) Rōmulum puerum cūrābat et vitam miserī puerī servābat. 11. Rōmulus cum lupā in silvā habitābat. 12. Puerī, amātisne fābulam dē Rōmulō?

- 91 1. Master,<sup>2</sup> you will call your slaves. 2. I call my slaves; you call yours. 3. Slaves, you will work in the fields diligently<sup>3</sup> with your master. 4. You shall have a fine reward; you shall be free men. 5. He will set free the good slaves. 6. They did work diligently<sup>3</sup> and their master set them free. 7. To a good farmer the earth will give many rewards. 8. He chased away the wolf and saved the children. 9. To save the poet was pleasing to the Muses.

## 92

## READING EXERCISE

*The Retort Truthful*

Nāsica<sup>4</sup> ad poētam Ennium vēnit (*came*) et quaesivit (*asked for*) poētam. Ancilla dixit (*said*), “Ennius nōn domī (*at home*) est;” sed Nāsica sēnsit (*perceived that*) ancillam<sup>5</sup> dominī iūssū (*at the order*) dixisse (*had spoken*) et poētam<sup>5</sup> intus (*within*) esse (*was*). Paucīs (*few*) post diēbus<sup>6</sup> (*days*) ad Nāsicam vēnit Ennius et eum (*him*) quaesivit; sed exclāmat (*cried out*) Nāsica sē<sup>5</sup> (*he*) domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, “Quid? (*what?*) egō (*I*) nōn cōgnōscō (*recognize*) vōcem (*voice*) tuam?” Hīc (*at this*) Nāsica: Homō (*man*) es impudēns.<sup>7</sup> Egō cum (*when*) tē (*you*) quaererem,<sup>8</sup> ancillae<sup>9</sup> tuae crēdidī (*I believed*) tē<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Compare *lupus*, 66.<sup>2</sup> Not *magister*.<sup>3</sup> *diligenter*.<sup>4</sup> A distinguished Roman lawyer.<sup>5</sup> Subject of the following infinitive.<sup>6</sup> Abl. of time.<sup>7</sup> Guess at the meaning. What English word is derived from it?<sup>8</sup> First person singular, imp. subj. act. Compare *quaesivit*, the perf. indic. of the same verb. Translate as if indicative.<sup>9</sup> Dative with the following verb.

domi nōn esse; tū (*you*) mihī<sup>1</sup> (*me*) nōn crēdis<sup>2</sup> ipsī<sup>3</sup> (*myself*) ?

---

## LESSON IX

### FIRST OR ā CONJUGATION (Continued)

#### PASSIVE VOICE

- 93** THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb in the Passive Voice are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, and Perfect Participle. Thus the Principal Parts of *amō* in the passive are :

*amor*, *I am loved.*    *amāri*, *to be loved.*    *amātus*, *having been loved.*

- 94** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive passive of *amō* (479).

(a) Notice that all the forms learned are based on the present stem *amā-*, and that the imperfect and future indicative passive are formed with the same tense signs, *-bā-*, *-bi-* (*be*), as the corresponding tenses in the active.

- 95** The Personal Endings of the indicative passive are :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-r	-mur
SECOND.	-ris, -re	-mini
THIRD.	-tur	-ntur

- 96** Form the principal parts in the passive and inflect *fugō*, *laudō*, *servō*, *vocō*.
- 

<sup>1</sup> Dative with the following verb.

<sup>2</sup> Present tense. What person and number ?

<sup>3</sup> Agreeing with *mihī*.

- 97 1. Amāre, amārī. 2. Amābam, amābar; vocābō, vocābor. 3. Laudātur, laudābātur, laudābitur. 4. Laudāminī, laudābiminī, laudābāminī. 5. Fugant, fugābuntur, fugāris. 6. Vocābis, vocāberis, vocābāre. 7. Amāre, laudārī, fugāre.

- 98 1. We are calling, you saved (plu.). 2. We shall be saved, they will save. 3. I did call, he is saving, he will save. 4. You will be saved, you are being saved. 5. To call, to be saved, to put to flight. 6. They were praising, they were being praised, they were praised. 7. We are being saved, you shall be saved.

## ABLATIVE OF AGENT

99

## EXAMPLES

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. Quintus amicum servat.     | <i>Quintus saves his friend.</i>            |
| 2. Amicus ā Quintō servātur.  | <i>The friend is saved by Quintus.</i>      |
| 3. Dominus servum liberat.    | <i>The master sets free the slave.</i>      |
| 4. Servus ā dominō liberātur. | <i>The slave is set free by his master.</i> |

(a) Notice that when a statement is changed from the active form to the passive, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, and that the subject of the active verb is shifted from the nominative to the ablative with the preposition *ā* (or *ab*<sup>1</sup>). Such an ablative with *ā* or *ab* tells who the doer or agent of the action is, and is called *Ablative of Agent*.

- 100 **Rule.**—The Agent with Passive verbs is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

W. 379; B. 216; AG. 246; H. 468.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ā* or *ab* may be used before consonants, *ab* before vowels.



## 101

## VOCABULARY

<i>incola</i> , -ae, m. <i>inhabitant</i> .	<i>oppidānus</i> , -a, -um, <i>belonging to a town (oppidum)</i> ; (frequently used as a substantive) <i>an inhabitant of a town</i> .
<i>lupa</i> , -ae, f. <i>she-wolf (lupus)</i> .	
<i>mūrus</i> , -i, m. <i>wall (of a city)</i> .	
<i>praesidium</i> , -i, n. <i>defense, protection</i> .	
<i>aedificō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to build</i> .	<i>cūrō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to care for</i> .
<i>appellō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to call, name</i> .	<i>pūgnō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to fight</i> .
<i>ā</i> , ab, prep. with abl., <i>by</i> .	<i>dē</i> , prep. with abl., <i>about, concerning</i> .

- 102    1. Rōmulus Rōmam aedificābat. 2. Rōma ā Rōmulō, virō validō, aedificābātur. 3. Oppidum pulchrum ā Rōmulō Rōma appellābātur. 4. Rōma ab incolīs semper amābitur. 5. Clāra fābula dē Rōmulō liberīs ā magistrō narrābitur. 6. Vitam Rōmulī lupa servābat et puerum cūrābat. 7. Incolae oppidī oppidānī<sup>1</sup> appellantur. 8. Incolae antiquī Rōmae liberī virī erant et Rōmānī appellābantur. 9. Mūrus, praesidium oppidī, ab Rōmānīs aedificābātur. 10. In multis bellis cum cēterīs incolīs Italiae antiquī Rōmānī pūgnābant.

- 103    1. The poet Horace was saved by the Muses. 2. Romulus was saved and cared for by a she-wolf. 3. Ancient Rome was a strong town, and was built by Romulus. 4. Romulus was loved by the Roman people. 5. An altar sacred to Romulus was built by the Romans in the city. 6. The famous wall of Britain was not built by the ancient Britons, but by the Romans. 7. The horses are sick and are being cared for by their master. 8. To be cared for by their master is pleasant to the horses. 9. Tender grass is being given the handsome horses by the slaves.

---

<sup>1</sup> Predicate nominative.

## LESSON X

## PERFECT SYSTEM OF SUM

**104** LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of **sum** (485).

**105** These tenses belong to the perfect system of **sum**, which is formed on the stem **fu-**, obtained by dropping **-i** of the first person singular of the perfect indicative.

(a) Notice that the perfect system of this verb is formed on a different stem from the present system.

(b) Notice also that the personal endings of the pluperfect and future perfect are the same as those of the present system. The perfect indicative has certain endings peculiar to itself.

**106** The Personal Endings of the Perfect Indicative Active are shown in the following table:

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-i	-imus
SECOND.	-isti	-istis
THIRD.	-it	-ērunt, -ēre

**107** 1. Fuistī, fuerās, fueris. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.  
3. Fuisse, fuēre, fuimus. 4. Fui, fuerō, fuerātis. 5. Fuis-  
tis, fuerātis, fueritis.

**108** 1. I have been, I shall have been. 2. I had been, they  
had been, they will have been. 3. He had been, he will  
have been, to have been. 4. We shall have been, we have  
been, we had been.

## ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

109

## EXAMPLES

1. **Viri gladiis armantur.**      *The men are being armed with swords.*
2. **Nautae oceanum ventō nāvigant.**      *Sailors sail the sea by means of the wind.*
3. **Lupum armis fugābānt servi.**      *The slaves put the wolf to flight with weapons.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **gladiis**, **ventō**, **armis** denote the *Means* or *Instrument* by which the action of the verb is performed; also that the Means or Instrument of the action goes along with, accompanies, the actor in the action, so that such an ablative, which is called the *Ablative of Means* or *Instrument*, is in reality similar to the Ablative of Accompaniment (71), used without the preposition. It is generally translated *with* or *by*.

- 110      **Rule.**—The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument.

W. 386; B. 218; AG. 248, c; H. 476.

111

## VOCABULARY

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <b>arma, -ōrum, n. plu. arms,</b>    | <b>hasta, -ae, f. spear.</b>                |
| <b>weapons.</b>                      | <b>inimicus, -i, m. enemy (amicus, 56).</b> |
| <b>causa, -ae, f. cause, reason.</b> | <b>proelium, -i, n. battle.</b>             |
| <b>deus,<sup>1</sup> -i, m. god.</b> | <b>templum, -i, n. temple.</b>              |
| <b>Gallus, m. a Gaul.</b>            | <b>victōria, -ae, f. victory.</b>           |
| <b>Gallia, f. Gaul.</b>              |   |
| <b>dubius, -a, -um, doubtful.</b>    | <b>proximus, -a, -um, next, nearest.</b>    |

---

<sup>1</sup> Vocative **deus**.

**oppūgnō, -āre,**<sup>1</sup> *to storm, attack.*      **ōlim,** *once, once on a time, formerly.*  
**diū,** *long, for a long time.*      **sine,** *prep. with abl., without.*  
**fortiter,** *bravely.*

**112**    1. Terra proxima Italiae (dat.) Gallia appellābatur.  
 2. Antīquī incolae Galliae Rōmānōs nōn amābant. 3. Inimicī populi Rōmānī semper fuerant. 4. Incolae Galliae Gallī ōlim appellābantur. 5. Multae causae bellī cum Rōmānīs fuerant Gallīs. 6. Gallīs ōlim erant multa pulchra oppida. 7. Multa oppida Gallōrum ā Rōmānīs oppūgnābantur. 8. Oppidānī armīs diū et fortiter pūgnābant. 9. Sed Gallī validōs mūrōs nōn habēbant; itaque oppidānī miserī sine praesidiō fuērunt. 10. Gladiīs et hastīs pūgnābant et in templīs deōs vocābant, nam (for) victōria diū fuerat dubia.

**113**    1. The Romans stormed a town of the Gauls without reason. 2. Did the Gauls have a good reason for war<sup>2</sup> with the Romans? 3. The Gauls and the Romans had been enemies for a long time. 4. The Romans did not have the protection of a wall, but they were strong men. 5. The battle had been for a long time doubtful. 6. The inhabitants called upon the gods in the temples. 7. But the gods gave the victory to their enemies. 8. The Romans put the townsmen to flight with their spears.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the following vocabularies only the present infinitive of verbs whose principal parts are like **amō** will be given.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 112, 5.

## LESSON XI

## PERFECT SYSTEM OF AMŌ

- 114 LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō** (479).

(a) Notice that the perfect system in the active is formed from the perfect stem **amāv-**, which may be obtained by dropping the ending **-i** of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. Observe also the additions to this stem, by means of which the pluperfect and future perfect tenses are formed. With what forms of **sum** may they be compared?

(b) Notice that the perfect passive system is compounded of the perfect passive participle **amātus**, *having been loved*, and the proper tenses of **sum**—the present to form the perfect **amātus sum**, the imperfect to form the pluperfect **amātus eram**, and the future to form the future perfect **amātus erō**.

- 115 The participle is declined like the adjective **bonus**, and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case exactly like a predicate adjective (63). For example:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
MASC.	puer est amātus <sup>1</sup>	pueri sunt amātī
FEM.	puella est amāta	puellae sunt amātae
NEUT.	dōnum est amātum	dōna sunt amāta

- 116 1. Amāvī, amātus sum, amātī sumus. 2. Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit. 3. Amāta es, amāta erās, amāta eris.

---

<sup>1</sup> This apparently reversed order is common; the predicate nature of the participle here clearly appears.

4. Amāvistis, amātī estis, amātī eritis. 5. Amāverō, amātus erō, amātus eram. 6. Amāta est, amātae erant, amāta erit. 7. Amātum erat, amāta sunt, amāta erunt. 8. Amāvisti, amāverās, amāveris. 9. Amāvisse, amātus esse. 10. Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint.

- 117 1. We loved, we had loved, we shall have loved.  
2. We had been loved, you shall have loved, we shall have been loved. 3. You had loved, you had been loved, he has been loved. 4. They have loved, they were loved, they had been loved. 5. To have been loved, to have loved.

#### ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

118

#### EXAMPLES

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Pueri fabulā delectantur.               | <i>The boys are delighted with the story.</i>                         |
| 2. Quintus victoriā est laudatus.          | <i>Quintus was praised because of his victory.</i>                    |
| 3. Dominus servos industriā laudavit.      | <i>The master praised the slaves on account of their industry.</i>    |
| 4. Agricola filiorum causā laborabit.      | <i>The farmer will work for the sake of his sons.</i>                 |
| 5. Puer a magistrō diligentiam laudabitur. | <i>The boy will be praised by the schoolmaster for his diligence.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *fabulā*, *victoriā*, *industriā*, etc., answer the question *Why?*—that is, that they express the *Cause* of the action of the verb. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Cause*, and may be translated by a variety of English phrases, as in the examples above.

- 119 **Rule.**—The Ablative is used to denote Cause.  
W. 384; B. 219; AG. 245; H. 475.

## 120

## VOCABULARY

<b>amicitia</b> , -ae, f. <i>friendship, alliance, friendly relations</i> ( <b>amicus</b> , 54).	<b>diligentia</b> , -ae, f. <i>carefulness, industry.</i>
<b>animus</b> , -ī, m. <i>mind, courage, soul.</i>	<b>finitimī</b> , <sup>1</sup> m. plu. <i>neighbors.</i>
<b>cōpia</b> , -ae, f. <i>plenty, abundance.</i>	<b>frumentum</b> , -ī, n. <i>grain.</i>
<b>cōpiae</b> , -ārum, f. plu. <i>forces, troops.</i>	<b>inopia</b> , -ae, f. <i>want, lack, scarcity.</i>
<b>expūgnō</b> , -āre, <i>to take by storm, capture</i> ( <b>oppūgnō</b> , 111).	<b>odium</b> , -ī, n. <i>hatred.</i>
<b>incitō</b> , -āre, <i>to arouse, stir up.</i>	<b>portō</b> , -āre, <i>to carry, bring.</i>
	<b>superō</b> , -āre, <i>to defeat, overcome.</i>
	<b>vāstō</b> , -āre, <i>lay waste.</i>

- 121 1. Galli odiō Rōmānōrum<sup>2</sup> incitātī sunt. 2. Māgnus fuit animus Gallōrum; diū et fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 3. Sed cōpiae oppidānōrum inopiā frūmentī superātae sunt. 4. In oppidō erat cōpia armōrum, nōn frūmentī. 5. Inopiā frūmentī auxilium oppidānīs dabant finitimī. 6. Amicī populi Rōmānī appellātī sunt; causā amicitiae frumentum portānt. 7. Rōmānī oppidānōs armīs superāvērunt, et sacra templa deōrum vāstāvērunt. 8. Inopiā frūmentī, nōn cōpiis Rōmānōrum superātī fuerimus. 9. Sed finitimī auxilium miseris oppidānīs odiō nōn dabunt. 10. Oppidum ab Rōmānīs amicōrum causā expūgnātum est; incolae oppidi fugātī et agrī vastātī sunt.<sup>3</sup> 11. Oppidum inimicōrum expūgnāvisse fuit Rōmānīs grātum. 12. Victōriā deōs laudābant Rōmānī et in templa arma portābant.

<sup>1</sup> Also used as an adjective—**finitimus**, -a, -um, *neighboring, bordering on.*

<sup>2</sup> The Latin language here uses the genitive case to represent the English objective case with the preposition *for*.

<sup>3</sup> Notice that **sunt** does double duty for both **fugātī** and **vastātī**.

- 122 1. A wall has been built by the inhabitants of the town. 2. The inhabitants of the town built a strong wall on account of (their) many wars. 3. The neighbors had been stirred up by their hatred for the townsmen.<sup>1</sup> 4. The townsmen had been attacked by their neighbors, and because of (their) hatred their fields had been laid waste. 5. The forces in the town fought long and bravely with swords and spears, but the victory was doubtful. 6. The enemies of the Gauls were defeated and pacified by lack of supplies. 7. The Gauls' spirit is great; they will fight long and bravely. 8. A strong wall will be a great protection to the Gauls. 9. The friends of the Romans brought a supply of grain with great diligence; the Romans praised them for their friendship.

## LESSON XII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HĪC* AND *ILLE*

123

*Hīc, this.*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	<b>hīc</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>
GEN.	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>
DAT.	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>
ACC.	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>
ABL.	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>

## PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
GEN.	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
ACC.	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
ABL.	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

<sup>1</sup> Compare 121, 1.



**Ille, that.**

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	<b>ille</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illud</b>
GEN.	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>
DAT.	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>
ACCU.	<b>illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illud</b>
ABL.	<b>illō</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illō</b>

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<b>illi</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illa</b>
GEN.	<b>illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>
ACCU.	<b>illōs</b>	<b>illās</b>	<b>illa</b>
ABL.	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>

(a) Notice that in the plural these pronouns follow closely the regular first and second declensions; but in the singular they differ widely.

- 124** Both **hic** and **ille** may be used alone as pronouns, or as pronominal adjectives in agreement with nouns.

(a) **Hic** points out something which is near the speaker in time, place, or thought, etc. It is therefore sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: **hic puer**, *this boy* (near me); **hi libri**, *these books* (by my side, or which I have just mentioned, etc.).

(b) **Ille** points out something which is remote in time, place, thought, etc., from the speaker. It is therefore sometimes known as the demonstrative of the third person: **ille vir**, *that man* (yonder, near him); **illi libri**, *those books* (over there, mentioned some time ago, etc.).

(c) When **ille** and **hic** are contrasted in the same sentence they frequently mean *the former*, *the latter*:

*ille bonus, hic malus est, The former is a good man, the latter bad.*

(*d*) *Ille* is sometimes used in the sense of *the well-known, the famous*. It then follows its noun.

## 125

## EXAMPLES

1. *Hic ager est meus, ille tuus.* *This field is mine, that yours.*
2. *Quintus et Marcus sunt Rōmāni; ille magister, hic est discipulus.* *Quintus and Marcus are Romans; the former is the teacher, the latter the pupil.*
3. *Horātius, poēta ille, Rōmānis fuit cārus.* *Horace, the well-known poet, was dear to the Romans.*

## 126

## VOCABULARY

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Belgae, -ārum, m. plu. the Belgians.</i>                   | <i>intrō, -āre, to enter, go in.</i>                           |
| <i>coniūrō, -āre, to swear together, plot.</i>                | <i>Nervii, -ōrum, m. plu. the Nervians (a Belgian people).</i> |
| <i>contrā, prep. with accu., against.</i>                     | <i>numerus, -i, m. number.</i>                                 |
| <i>Haedui, -ōrum, m. plu. the Haeduans (a Gallic people).</i> | <i>nunc, adv. now.</i>   |
| <i>inter, prep. with accu., among, between.</i>               | <i>nūntiō, -āre, to send news, report.</i>                     |
| <i>intereā, adv. meanwhile.</i>                               | <i>pācō, -āre, to pacify, subdue.</i>                          |
|   | <i>parō, -āre, to get ready, prepare.</i>                      |

- 127 1. *Caesar<sup>1</sup> māgnis cum cōpiis agrōs Nerviorum intrāvit.* 2. *Hī cum cēteris Belgis contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant.* 3. *Multae causae belli erant illis cum*

---

<sup>1</sup> The declension of this noun will be given later.

Rōmānīs. 4. Belgae fāmā bellī et odiō Rōmānōrum incitātī erant. 5. Haec Nervii ab amicis Haeduōrum erant nūntiāta: 6. "Rōmānus ille multa oppida expūgnāvit, oppidānōs miserōs fugāvit, agrōs lātōs vastāvit. 7. Haeduī ab illō multīs proeliis pācātī,<sup>1</sup> nunc in amicitīā Rōmānōrum sunt." 8. Nōn amicī sed servī Rōmānōrum erant. 9. Intereā Rōmānō illī ab inimicis Nerviorū haec erant nūntiāta: 10. "Māgnus numerus Nerviorū cum cēteris Belgis in armis est. 11. Cōpia frūmentī ab his parāta et auxilium ā finitimis est<sup>2</sup> datum."

- 128** 1. The Haeduans and the Nervians used to live<sup>3</sup> in Gaul. 2. The former were in friendship with the Romans,<sup>4</sup> but the latter had not yet been subdued. 3. A great number of these on account of their hatred of the Romans conspired with the rest of the Belgians. 4. And because of the scarcity of grain, aid was given them by their neighbors. 5. These, for the sake of their friendship, brought them (i. e., the former) an abundance of grain and of weapons. 6. This was reported to the Romans by their enemies. 7. And Caesar attacked their nearest town. 8. The inhabitants fought long and bravely, but that famous Roman defeated them and laid waste their fields.

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice that this is the perf. pass. participle agreeing with *Haeduī*, not a part of the indicative mood.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 121, 10, and notice how sentence 7 above differs from this.

<sup>3</sup> What tense?

<sup>4</sup> Genitive case.

## LESSON XIII

## THE RELATIVE QUI

## PARADIGM

129

Qui, *who, which, what.*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	qui	quae	quod
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	qui	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

130

## EXAMPLES

1. Puer qui laudātur est bonus. *The boy who is praised is good.*
2. Horātius quem Rōmānī amābant clārus poēta erat. *Horace, whom the Romans loved, was a famous poet.*
3. Hōc est dōnum quod Quintō datum est. *This is the gift which was given to Quintus.*
4. Haec sunt dōna quae Marcus laudābat. *These are the gifts which Marcus praised.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the relatives qui, quem, quod, quae, agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but that the cases are determined by the

construction of the relative sentences. Thus in sentences 1 and 3 *quī* and *quod* are the subjects of the relative sentences, and so happen to be in the same case as their antecedents; but in sentences 2 and 4 *quem* and *quae* are accusatives, objects of the verbs in the relative sentences. Their antecedents, however, are both nominative.

- 131 **Rule.**—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

W. 299; B. 250; AG. 198; H. 396.

## 132

## VOCABULARY

<b>ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fui, to be distant from</b> (with <b>ab</b> and the abl.)	<b>hic, adv. here, at this point or place</b> (compare the pronoun <b>hic</b> ).
<b>ad, prep. with accu. to, toward.</b>	<b>iam,<sup>1</sup> adv. now, already, at last.</b>
<b>castra, -ōrum, n. plu. a fortified camp.</b>	<b>idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.</b>
<b>cōnsilium, -ī, n. plan, design.</b>	<b>invo, -āre, iūvi, iūtus, to help.</b>
<b>convocō, -āre, call together, assemble.</b>	<b>locus,<sup>2</sup> -ī, m. place.</b>
<b>dēcertō, -āre, to contend, fight.</b>	<b>longē, adv. far, much (longus, -a, -um).</b>
<b>exspectō, -āre, to look out for, wait for, expect.</b>	<b>nātūra, -ae, f. nature.</b>
	<b>parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared.</b>
	<b>praeda, -ae, f. booty.</b>
	<b>properō, -āre, to hurry, hasten.</b>

- 133 1. Numerus Nerviōrum quī in armis parātī erant, ab Rēmīs nūntiātus est. 2. Hī, quōrum agrōs Caesar iam

<sup>1</sup> **Iam** means *now at last, already*, while **nunc, 126**, means *now at the present time*.

<sup>2</sup> The plural is neuter, **loca, -ōrum**; **locī, -ōrum** is used only to mean, *topics*.

intrāverat, proximī Galliae (dat.) erant. 3. Parātī erant Rōmānōs frumentō et māgnīs cōpiis iuvāre. 4. Cēterī Belgae, quī amīcī Nerviorū erant, Rōmānōs exspectābant. 5. Rōmānī illō locō,<sup>1</sup> quī nātūrā proeliō (dat.) erat idōneus, ā Belgīs expectātī erant. 6. Hōc locō, quī ab castrīs Rōmānōrū nōn longē aberat, contrā populum Rōmānum armīs dēcertābunt Nervii. 7. Ubi (when) Rōmānō illī cōnsilium Nerviorū nūntiātum est, ad locum properāvit. 8. Intereā Nervii cum animīs ad proelium parātīs illum ibi expectābant. 9. Hīc inter Rōmānōs et Belgōs diū et fortiter pūgnātum est.<sup>2</sup> 10. Illī victōriae et praedae causā, hī prō<sup>3</sup> liberīs et patriā pūgnāverunt.

- 134** 1. Caesar called together those<sup>4</sup> Belgians who had not conspired together. 2. These who were ready to contend in battle were the Remi. 3. The Haeduan, whose towns had been captured by the Romans, aided them with grain. 4. The Romans hurried to a place which was naturally suited for a camp. 5. They prepared supplies and assembled their allies at (ad) this place. 6. The camp was not far away from the place where the Nervii had already been waiting for them a long time. 7. They fought for the sake of their country, which they loved. 8. But the Romans had entered Gaul for the sake of booty.

---

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of place.

<sup>2</sup> This form of the verb has no personal subject, but supplies its subject (cf. *pūgna*, *battle*, *fighting*) in itself. Translate, *There was a battle*, or in a similar way. Such a verb is called an Impersonal Verb.

<sup>3</sup> A common preposition with the abl., *for the sake of*.

<sup>4</sup> Use the proper case of *ille*.

## LESSON XIV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS  
THE INTERROGATIVE QUIS

## PARADIGMS

135

**Is, that.**

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	<b>is</b>	<b>ea</b>	<b>id</b>
GEN.	<b>ēius</b>	<b>ēius</b>	<b>ēius</b>
DAT.	<b>eī</b>	<b>eī</b>	<b>eī</b>
ACCU.	<b>eum</b>	<b>eam</b>	<b>id</b>
ABL.	<b>eō</b>	<b>eā</b>	<b>eō</b>

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<b>eī, iī</b>	<b>eae</b>	<b>ea</b>
GEN.	<b>eōrum</b>	<b>eārum</b>	<b>eōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>
ACCU.	<b>eōs</b>	<b>eās</b>	<b>ea</b>
ABL.	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>

(a) Notice the similarity in the declension of **is**, **hic**, and **ille**.

(b) **Is, that**, is in meaning like **ille**, but less definite; it often means simply *he, she, it*, and is very common as an antecedent of **quis**: **is qui oppidum expugnāvit**, *he who stormed the town*; **ea quae portāvit** *that which he brought*.

136

*Quis, who?*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE AND FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	<b>quis</b>	<b>quid</b>
GEN.	<b>cūius</b>	<b>cūius</b>
DAT.	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>
ACCU.	<b>quem</b>	<b>quid</b>
ABL.	<b>quō</b>	<b>quō</b>

## PLURAL

Like *quī* relative.

(a) *Quis* is the substantive form of the interrogative —i. e., the form used without a noun : *quis vocat?* *Who calls?*

(b) The adjective form is *quī*, *what? what kind of?* *Qui puer vocat?* *What boy calls?* *Quod dōnum portāvit?* *What gift did he bring?* This *quī* is declined exactly like *quī* relative.<sup>1</sup>

137

## EXAMPLES

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Magister diligentiam eius laudāvit.                         | <i>The teacher praised his industry.</i>                                    |
| 2. Is, qui cum diligentia laborāvit, laudatus est.             | <i>The one who worked industriously was praised.</i>                        |
| 3. Quis discipulum laudāvit?                                   | <i>Who praised the pupil?</i>   |
| 4. Qui magister diligentiam discipuli laudāvit?                | <i>What teacher praised the pupil's industry?</i>                           |
| 5. Quod dōnum dabit magister ei, qui cum diligentia laborāvit? | <i>What gift will the teacher give to the one who worked industriously?</i> |

<sup>1</sup> It should be said that the distinction between substantive *quis* and adjective *quī* was not always observed by Roman writers. Thus we find *quis vir vocat?* as well as *quī vir vocat?* Yet it will be well in translating the English exercises of this book to observe the distinction made above.



## 138

## VOCABULARY

<b>comparō, -āre, to get ready, get together.</b>	<b>mora, -ae, f. delay.</b>
<b>concilium, -i, n. conference, a meeting of state or of war.</b>	<b>nam, conj. for.</b>
<b>in, prep. with accu., into. (Compare in with abl., 56.)</b>	<b>noster, -tra, -trum, our (compare meus).</b>
<b>lĕgātus, -i, m. envoy, ambassador.</b>	<b>postulō, -āre, to demand, ask for.</b>
	<b>reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, the rest. (Compare cēteri, 80.)</b>
	<b>socius, -i, m. ally.</b>

- 139** 1. Quī Gallī contrā amīcōs nostrōs coniūrāvērunt? 2. Illī erant Nervī et cēteri Belgae. 3. Sociī populī Rōmānī erant Haeduī, finitimī Nervīorum, quī ab Rōmānīs pācātī erant. 4. Iī nunc cōpiam frūmentī ab illīs postulābant. 5. Quā dē causā erant<sup>1</sup> Nervī contrā Rōmānōs incitātī? 6. Odiō populī Rōmānī quī ōlim Haeduōs pācāvērunt. 7. Iam ab eīs erat concilium Belgārū convocātum. 8. Quod cōsilium eō in conciliō ab Haeduīs est datum? 9. Hōc cōsilium datum est: reliquōs Belgās incitāre, sine morā cōpiam frūmentī comparāre, cōpiās in oppidum proximum convocāre. 10. Ibi Rōmānōs expectāre et cum eīs prō patriā dēcertāre erat cōsilium. 11. Ā quibus erant haec Rōmānō illī nuntiāta? Ab lĕgātīs Rēmōrum, quī nostrī amīcī diū fuerant. 12. Nam cum reliquīs Belgīs nōn coniūrāverant et auxilium Rōmānīs dare parātī erant.

- 140** 1. For what reason did the Remi not conspire with the rest of the Belgae? 2. The rest of the Belgae were already in arms, but these were our allies. 3. They were prepared to give aid with supplies of grain. 4. What was the

<sup>1</sup> The forms of **sum** are frequently thus separated in position from the perfect participles to which they belong grammatically.

plan of the Nervii? 5. Their plan was to call together an assembly of the Belgians, and on account of lack of supplies to demand aid from their neighbors. 6. These brought the grain which had been asked for, but the Remi conspired with the Romans against the rest of the Gauls. 7. And so their fields were devastated by the Nervii and their allies. 8. In the meantime, Caesar had subdued the Haeduanus and had taken by storm a great number of their towns. 9. Who were these and whose allies had they been?

## LESSON XV

## THE THIRD DECLENSION

## 141 THE stem ends in a consonant or -i.

All consonant stems may be found by dropping the ending -is of the genitive singular: **prīncip-is**, **rēg-is**.

Consonant stems are divided into two classes, Mute and Liquid Stems, according to the nature of the final consonant. Mute Stems end in b or p, c or g, d or t (6).

## 142

## MUTE STEMS

## PARADIGMS

**Princeps**, m. *chief*.

**prīncip-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	<b>prīnceps</b>	<b>prīncipēs</b>
GEN.	<b>prīncipis</b>	<b>prīncipum</b>
DAT.	<b>prīncipī</b>	<b>prīncipibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>prīncipem</b>	<b>prīncipēs</b>
ABL.	<b>prīncipe</b>	<b>prīncipibus</b>

**Rēx**, m. *king*.      **Mīles**, m. *soldier*.  
**rēg-**                      **milit-**

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	<b>rēx</b>	<b>mīles</b>
GEN.	<b>rēgis</b>	<b>mīlitis</b>
DAT.	<b>rēgi</b>	<b>mīliti</b>
ACCU.	<b>rēgem</b>	<b>mīlitem</b>
ABL.	<b>rēge</b>	<b>mīlite</b>

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<b>rēgēs</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>
GEN.	<b>rēgum</b>	<b>mīlitum</b>
DAT.	<b>rēgibus</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>rēgēs</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>
ABL.	<b>rēgibus</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>

(a) Notice that the nominatives singular of these nouns ends in **-s**. Stems in **b** or **p** retain their final consonants unchanged before this ending: **urbs**, **princeps**; when stems end in **c** or **g**, the final consonant combines with **-s** to form **x**: (**dūc-s**) **dūx**, (**rēg-s**) **rēx**; but stems ending in **d** or **t** drop their final consonants before **-s** of the nominative: (**custōd-s**) **custōs**, (**milit-s**) **mīles**.

(b) Notice also that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative: **mīlit-**, **mīles**, etc.

These few changes can easily be learned by observation.

- 143      Make a list of the terminations and commit it to memory.

Decline together: **hic princeps**; **rēx ille**; **is miles**.

144

## VOCABULARY

**administrō**, **-āre**, *to manage*.      **comes**, **comitis**, m. and f.  
**ante**, prep. with accu. *before*.      *companion, attendant*.

<b>coniūnx</b> , <b>coniugia</b> , <i>f. consort,</i>	<b>lūx</b> , <b>lūcia</b> , <i>f. light.</i>
<i>wife.</i>	<b>miles</b> , <b>militis</b> , <i>m. soldier.</i>
<b>custōs</b> , <b>custōdis</b> , <i>m. guard,</i>	<b>pāx</b> , <b>pācis</b> , <i>f. peace.</i>
<i>keeper.</i>	<b>princeps</b> , <b>principis</b> , <i>m. leader,</i>
<b>dux</b> , <b>ducis</b> , <i>m. leader.</i>	<i>chief.</i>
<b>grex</b> , <b>gregis</b> , <i>m. flock, herd.</i>	<b>rēx</b> , <b>rēgis</b> , <i>m. king.</i>
<b>iūdex</b> , <b>iūdicis</b> , <i>m. judge.</i>	<b>vulnerō</b> , <b>-āre</b> , <i>to wound.</i>

**145** (a) 1. Hī quī coniūrābant et bellum administrābant erant principēs Galliae. 2. Concilium eōrum, quī agrōs populī Rōmānī intrābant, ā rēge convocātum est. 3. Ab eō locō, quī nātūrā castris idōneus erat, milites Rōmānī nōn longē aberant. 4. Nam oppidum quod erat in viā iam expūgnāverant et ad sociōs properābant. 5. Hīc, inter castra Gallōrum et oppidum nostrum, errābant multi gregēs. 6. Quōrum custōdēs, miserī servī rēgis, ā militibus fugāti erant. 7. Ante lūcem incolae oppidī coniugēs et liberōs in silvās portāverant, arma comparāverant, ducem expectābant.

(b) 8. Eō locō inter milites rēgis et Caesaris diū et fortiter pūgnātum est<sup>1</sup> et multi vulnerāti sunt. 9. Gallī, quī ōlim cum Rōmānīs pūgnāverant, iam pācis causā eōs iuvāre parāti erant. 10. Sed Rōmānī inopiā frūmentī agrōs eōrum vastāre et sociōs nostrōs iuvāre parābant. 11. In cēteris oppidis māgna cōpia frūmentī erat; hōc Caesarī (dat.) ab lēgātīs Rēmōrum et comitibus rēgis nūntiātum est. 12. Inter custōdēs gregum et comitēs meōs erit iūdex Caesar.

**146** 1. Owing to lack of supplies Caesar prepared to lay waste the lands of the Gauls. 2. The Gauls, whose wives and children were in the forests, fought for (prō) their lives<sup>2</sup> with swords and spears. 3. In the fields there were many flocks, of which the king's children were the guards.

<sup>1</sup> Compare 133, 9.

<sup>2</sup> Use the singular.

4. The leader's plan was to help the allies of the Roman people and to pacify the other Gauls. 5. Before daylight he called the principal men of Gaul, together with<sup>1</sup> the king, into the camp. 6. Here Caesar announced his plan in regard to peace. 7. "I will be judge between the Remi and the other peoples of Gaul, and for the sake of peace I will give you many gifts." 8. The Gauls were ready to assist the Romans with grain, which had been in their towns for a long time.

## 147

## READING EXERCISE

Dē antiquis rēgibus Rōmānī haec narrant : primus qui in Italiā rēgnāvit<sup>2</sup> erat Sāturnus. Hic nōn longē ab Iāniculō<sup>3</sup> arcem (*citadel*) condidit (*founded*) quam Sāturniam appellāvit. Agricultūram<sup>4</sup> quoque Itālōs primus docuit (*taught*). Postēā (*afterwards*) Lātīnus in illīs locīs rēgnāvit. Sub (*under*) hōc rēge Trōia in Asiā ab Graecīs expūgnāta est. Itaque Aenēas, clārus Trōiānus, Anchīsae<sup>5</sup> et deae filius, cum multīs sociīs ex patriā aufūgit<sup>6</sup> (*fled*) et in Italiā pervēnit (*came*). Ibi rēx Lātīnus ei filiam Lāvīniam dedit. Aenēas oppidum condidit, quod Lāvīnium appellavit. Tertiū rēx erat Ascanius, Aenēae filius, qui rēgnū<sup>7</sup> (*throne*) in aliū (*another*) locum trānstulit (*transferred*), et in monte (*mountain*) Albānō novum oppidum condidit, quod Albam Longam appellāvit. Hōc locō multī rēgnāvērunt, dum (*until*) Rōmulus, quī Rheae Silviae et dei filius erat, in monte Palātiō Rōmam condidit.

<sup>1</sup> Together with, translate by one word.

<sup>2</sup> rēgnō, -āre, is a verb formed from the same base as rēx (rēg-). What must the verb mean?

<sup>3</sup> The high ridge across the Tiber from Rome.

<sup>4</sup> Guess the meaning.

<sup>5</sup> Gen. sing. of the Greek name Anchīsēs.

<sup>6</sup> Perf. indic. of aufugiō; compare fugiō, -āre.

<sup>7</sup> What other words have the same stem?

## LESSON XVI

## THE THIRD DECLENSION

MUTE STEMS (*Continued*)

148

## PARADIGMS

**Vōx**, f. *voice*.    **Obses**, m. and f. *hostage*.    **Virtūs**, f. *manliness*,  
**vōc-**                    **obsid-**                    **virtūt-**    [*courage*].

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	vōx	obses	virtūs
GEN.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis
DAT.	vōcī	obsidī	virtūtī
ACCU.	vōcem	obsidem	virtūtem
ABL.	vōce	obside	virtute

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs
GEN.	vōcum	obsidum	virtūtum
DAT.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus
ACCU.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs
ABL.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus

**Caput**, n. *head*.  
**capit-**

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	caput	capita
GEN.	capitis	capitum
DAT.	capiti	capitibus
ACCU.	caput	capita
ABL.	capite	capitibus

(a) Notice the manner in which the nominatives of **vōx**, **obses**, and **virtūs** are formed, and compare them with the similar nouns in the preceding lesson.

(b) Notice that the nominative of **caput** is the simple stem with the second vowel changed from **i** to **ū**. Compare the declension of this noun with that of **neuters** of the Second Declension (60).

### ABLATIVE OF MANNER

149

#### EXAMPLES

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>Rēx cum audāciā pūgnāvit.</b>       | <i>The king fought with boldness.</i>       |
| 2. <b>Rēx māgnā cum audāciā pūgnāvit.</b> | <i>The king fought with great boldness.</i> |
| 3. <b>Rēx māgnā audāciā pūgnāvit.</b>     | <i>The king fought with great boldness.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives answer the question, *How?* That is, they tell the manner in which the king fought. Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Manner*.<sup>1</sup>

- 150 **Rule.**—The manner of an action is expressed by the Ablative, usually with *cum*; but if the Ablative is modified by an adjective, *cum* need not be used.

W. 390; B. 220; AG. 248; H. 473, 3.

151

#### VOCABULARY

<b>audācia</b> , -ae, f. <i>boldness</i> ,	<b>Germani</b> , -ōrum, m. <i>Germans</i> .
<b>caput</b> , <b>capitis</b> , n. <i>head</i> .	<b>laus</b> , <b>laudis</b> , f. <i>praise, glory</i> .
<b>celeriter</b> , adv. <i>quickly</i> .	<b>māgnoperē</b> , adv. <i>greatly</i> .

---

<sup>1</sup> The same idea is frequently expressed in Latin as in English by an adverb: **rēx audācter** (*boldly*) **pūgnāvit** = **rēx cum audāciā pūgnāvit**.

<b>obses, obsidis, m. and f. hostage.</b>	<b>sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, m. priest.</b>
<b>occupō, -āre, to seize.</b>	<b>vester, -tra, -trum, your.</b>
<b>per, prep. with accu. through, by means of.</b>	<b>(Compare noster, 138.)</b>
<b>prō, prep. with abl. for, for the sake of.</b>	<b>virtūs, virtūtis, f. manliness, courage.</b>
	<b>vōx, vōcis, f. voice, word.</b>

**152** 1. Dē audāciā eōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant iam erat nūntiātum.<sup>1</sup> 2. Sed Caesar obsidēs, quōrum māgnus numerus erat, celeriter convocāvit et per sacerdōtem haec nūntiāvit. 3. “Māgnā virtūte, obsidēs, pūgnāvērunt Gallī et vestrī sociī, et māgna per Galliam est laus eōrum. 4. Itaque eōs māgnoperē laudō; semper amici et sociī populi Rōmānī appellābuntur. 5. Nam ei fortiter prō patriā et liberis dēcertāvērunt. 6. Sed nunc arma et auxilia ā comitibus rēgis contrā Rōmānōs parantur; castra nostra cum audāciā oppūgnābunt. 7. Sed parātus sum eōs in amicitīā habere,<sup>2</sup> dōna dare, bellum cum Germānīs administrāre.” 8. Haec sacerdōs māgnā vōce nūntiāvit et obsidēs, quī principēs Galliae erant, ā Caesare cum cūrā servābantur. 9. Intereā Belgae, quī ōlim pācātī erant, frūmentī cōpiam per lēgātōs dare properāvērunt. 10. Haec Caesarī erant grāta; itaque multa oppida Germānōrum celeriter occupāvit et cōpias eōrum fugāvit.

**153** 1. In the camp were many hostages, who had been protected (servō) by the Romans with great care. 2. They were the chief men of Gaul who once had fought with great bravery against Caesar and the Romans. 3. Before daybreak Caesar called a priest, who made the following announcement<sup>3</sup> to the hostages in a loud voice. 4. “You (vōs), together with the Britons, once (ōlim)

<sup>1</sup> Compare 133, 9.

<sup>2</sup> Present infin. of *habere*, to have, to hold.

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *announced these things*.



conspired against the friends of the Roman people and prepared to lay waste their territory and to seize their towns. 5. Your glory among the Gauls was great, but you have been defeated by Caesar and your towns seized. 6. Now you have helped the Roman soldiers with a supply of grain; therefore he praises you (*vōs*) and will give your kings many rewards. 7. He is ready to help your allies, the Britons, a great number of whom were formerly in the friendship of the Roman people, and to be at peace with them." 8. Without delay Caesar's ambassadors carried this news<sup>1</sup> throughout Gaul and Britain; a great number of the Gauls and Britons were thus quickly pacified.

## LESSON XVII

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

## 154 Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

THE stems end in -l or -r, -n, and -s.

## 155 PARADIGMS

**Cōsul**, m. *consul*. **Victor**, m. *victor*. **Homō**, m. and f. *man*.  
**cōsul-** **victōr-** **homin-**

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cōsul	vīctor	homō
GEN.	cōsulis	vīctoris	hominis
DAT.	cōsuli	vīctori	hominī
ACCU.	cōsulem	vīctōrem	hominem
ABL.	cōsule	vīctōre	homine

<sup>1</sup> Haec.

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōnsulum	victōrum	hominum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus
ACCU.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus

<b>Nōmen</b> , n. <i>name</i> .	<b>Honor</b> , m. <i>honor</i> .	<b>Corpus</b> , n. <i>body</i> .
<b>nōmin-</b>	<b>honōs-</b>	<b>corpos-</b>

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
ACCU.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
GEN.	nōminum	honōrum	corporum
DAT.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus
ACCU.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
ABL.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus

(a) Notice that liquid stems like **cōnsul-** and **victōr-** form the nominative singular without the case-ending.

(b) Notice also that nasal stems like **homin-** not only have no case-ending in the nominative singular, but drop the final **-n**; the nominative generally ends in **-ō**. This is true of almost all masculine and feminine nouns of this class. Neuter stems like **nōmin-** have the nominative like the stem, changing the final vowel from **i** to **e**.

(c) In the case of spirant stems like **honōs-** and **corpos-**, the **s** is always changed to **r** between two vowels, so that the stem seems to end in the liquid **r**. The nominative has no case-ending, but the nominatives of a few

common nouns of this class<sup>1</sup> have the *r* of the apparent stem; in neuters the last vowel, *e* or *o*, of the stem is regularly modified to *u* before *s*.

## OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

156

## EXAMPLES

1. **Amor patriae est magnus.** *Love of country is great.*
2. **Timōre militum in oppidum properant.** *Because of their fear of the soldiers they are hurrying into the town.*
3. **Avidi laudis erant Galli.** *The Gauls were eager for praise.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the genitives **patriae**, **militum**, **laudis**, are the objects of the feelings expressed in the nouns **amor**, **timōre**, and the adjective **avidī**. Such a genitive is called an *Objective Genitive*. Compare the genitive of Possessor (35).

- 157 **Rule.**—The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives to denote the Object of the action or feeling implied in the word it modifies.

W. 351; B. 200. 204; AG. 217. 218; H. 440, 2. 450.

158

## VOCABULARY

<b>adpropinquō, -āre, to approach.</b>	<b>cōnsul, cōnsulis, m. consul.</b>
<b>amor, amōris, m. love.</b>	<b>corpus, corporis, n. body.</b>
<b>apud, prep. with the accus. with, among.</b>	<b>homō, hominis, m. and f. human being, man.</b>
<b>arbor, arboris, f. tree.</b>	<b>honor, honōris, m. honor.</b>
<b>avidus, -a, -um, eager.</b>	<b>iter, itineris, n. journey, march, route.</b>
<b>clāmor, clāmōris, m. shout, noise (of shouting).</b>	<b>labor, labōris, m. work, labor.</b>
	<b>neque . . . neque, neither, nor.</b>

<sup>1</sup> E. g., **arbor**, *f. tree*; **clāmor**, *m. shout*; **color**, *m. color*; **dolor**, *m. pain*.

nōmen, nōminis, n. *name*.      Vertiscus, -ī, m. *Vertiscus* (a  
occultō, -āre, to *hide*.      chieftain of the Remi).  
pecus, pecoris, n. *flock*,<sup>1</sup> *herd*      victor, victōris, m. *victor*  
    (grex, 144).      (victōria, 111).  
timor, timōris, m. *fear*.

- 159    1. Māgnus erat Rōmānis militibus amor laudis.  
2. Itaque ante lūcem sine morā māgnō militum clāmōre  
et labōre ad mūrū Caesar cōsul properāvit. 3. Iter  
erat per agrōs sociōrum, ubi arborēs erant multae et  
māgnae. 4. Intereā Belgae, qui timōre Rōmānōrum  
gregēs et pecora in silvis occultāverant, dēcertāre parā-  
bant. 5. Belgae māgna corpora et longōs gladiōs habē-  
bant; semper avidī laudis fuerant. 6. Sed apud Rēmōs  
erat vir filiae rēgis, Vertiscus nōmine.<sup>2</sup> 7. Itaque ille vir,  
princeps et dūx, amicus erat multōrum Belgārū et  
māgnō in honōre erat apud cōsulem Rōmānum. 8. Eā  
dē causā Caesar eum et comitēs eius celeriter vocāvit et  
haec eis dē pāce per sacerdotem nuntiāvit. 9. "Belgae  
sunt caput hūius bellī, sed neque odiō illōrum neque  
praedae causā ad oppidum properāmus. 10. Belgae Ger-  
mānos frūmentō et militibus contrā Rōmānōs iuvant; ab  
eis agrī sociōrum nostrōrum vastantur. 11. Nunc prae-  
mium hūius bellī est Rōmānis laus māgna, illis vīta;  
victōres erimus."

- 160    1. The road to the town lay<sup>3</sup> through the country of  
the Haeduan. 2. In the fields were many men and many  
herds with keepers. 3. The inhabitants were already  
approaching the town with their wives and children  
because of their fear of the Roman consul. 4. In the  
meantime Caesar hastened by forced<sup>4</sup> marches from the

---

<sup>1</sup> Pecus and grex are frequently used without distinction, but  
pecus is used particularly of small cattle, a flock of sheep, etc.

<sup>2</sup> By name.

<sup>3</sup> Was.

<sup>4</sup> Use the right case of māgnus.

camp to the town, which he attacked before dawn. 5. In the German's camp was a famous man, Ariovistus by name,<sup>1</sup> who had many friends among the allies of the Romans. 6. The Belgians had been victors, for they were helped by these men with grain and horses. 7. The Germans had brought a large number of trees, and with great labor had got ready a wall before the town. 8. They fought with great courage and from love of country.

## LESSON XVIII

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

## Stems in -ī

161

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE STEMS

## PARADIGMS

**Civis**, m. *citizen*.  
civi-

**Hostis**, m. and f.  
*enemy*.  
hosti-

**Nūbēs**, f. *cloud*.  
nūbi-

## SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	civīs	hostis	nūbēs
GEN.	civīs	hostis	nūbis
DAT.	civī	hosti	nūbi
ACCU.	civem	hostem	nūbem
ABL.	civī, -e	hoste	nūbe

## PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	civēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	civium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	civibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	civīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs
ABL.	civibus	hostibus	nūbibus

<sup>1</sup> Compare 159, 6.

(a) Notice that the singular of **hostis** and **nūbēs** differs from that of mute stems only in the nominative; but that the plural differs in the genitive and accusative.

(b) Not many nouns of frequent occurrence belong to this class; the most common of those declined like **civis** are **finis**, m. *end*, and **ignis**, m. *fire*; in the latter the ablative **igni** is rare; **igne** is the common form.

(c) A few nouns have the accu. sing. ending in **-im**, abl. sing in **-i**; these will be noted in the vocabularies.

## 162

## NEUTER STEMS

**Mare**, n. *sea*.**mari-****Animal**, n. *creature*.**animāli-**

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>
GEN.	<b>maris</b>	<b>animālis</b>
DAT.	<b>mari</b>	<b>animāli</b>
ACCU.	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>
ABL.	<b>mari</b>	<b>animāli</b>

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>
GEN.	_____ <sup>1</sup>	<b>animālium</b>
DAT.	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>
ABL.	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>

(a) Notice that neuter nouns of this class have only **-i** in the ablative singular, and always **-ia** in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural.

---

<sup>1</sup> The genitive plural of **mare** is found but once, and then has the form **marum**.

163 To the class of -ī stems belong :

(1) Nouns of the third declension ending in *is* or *-ēs*, mostly feminine, or in *-e*, neuter, not increasing in the genitive.<sup>1</sup>

(2) Neuters ending in *-al* and *-ar*.

164

# VOCABULARY

<i>animal, animālis, n. living creature.</i>	<i>hostis, hostis, m. and f. enemy.</i>
<i>caedēs, caedis, f. slaughter.</i>	<i>ignis, ignis, m. fire.</i>
<i>cīvis, cīvis, m. and f. citizen.</i>	<i>impetrō, -āre, to obtain (one's request).</i>
<i>clādēs, clādis, f. loss, disaster.</i>	<i>mare, maris, n. sea.</i>
<i>collis, collis, m. hill.</i>	<i>moenia, moenium, n. plu. walls, ramparts (of a town).</i>
<i>conlocō, -āre, to place, to station.</i>	<i>nūbēs, nūbis, f. cloud.</i>
<i>ē, ex,<sup>2</sup> prep. with the abl. out of, from.</i>	<i>post, prep. with the accu. after, behind.</i>
<i>et . . . et, both . . . and.</i>	<i>-que, and.<sup>3</sup></i>
<i>finis, finis, m. end; plu. boundaries, territory.</i>	<i>rogō, -āre, to ask for.<sup>4</sup></i>
<i>frāter, frātris, m. brother.</i>	<i>turris, turris,<sup>5</sup> f. tower.</i>

165 1. *Prīncipēs eius cōnsilī et dūcēs hostium erant Germanī.* 2. *Inter Nerviōs is quī sacerdos iūdexque appellā-*

<sup>1</sup> That is, having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative singular.

<sup>2</sup> *Ē* is used before consonants only; *ex* before both vowels and consonants. Compare *ā, ab*.

<sup>3</sup> Always attached to the second of a pair of words: *terrā marique, on land and sea.* Compare *-ne*.

<sup>4</sup> The thing asked for and the person from whom it is asked are both in the accusative: *cōnsulem auxilium rogant, they ask the consul for aid.*

<sup>5</sup> Accu. sing. ends occasionally in *im*; 161, c.

bātur, māgnā vōce haec nūntiāvit. 3. "Hostēs iam et pecora et gregēs timōre militum nostrōrum in silvis occultant." 4. Cōnsilium est rēgis, cūius frāter in amicitīā nostrā ōlim erat, civīs contrā nostrōs<sup>1</sup> incitāre et oppidum oppūgnāre. 5. Māgnus est eis numerus equōrum, quibus celeriter et cum audāciā in nostrōs finis properāvērunt; iam moenibus adpropinquant. 6. Sed in nostris collibus parātī sunt ignēs, ante moenia sunt custōdēs; oppidum expūgnāre nōn poterunt,<sup>2</sup> sed māgna erit clādēs eōrum. 7. In vestris collibus, Germānī, sunt nova animālia, quōrum fāma apud Rōmānōs māgna est. 8. Turrēs, quae in colle post oppidum erant, iam nūbibus occultābantur. Itaque cōnsul moenibus oppidī sine clāde adpropinquābat. 9. Ante lūcem pūgnātum est māgnā virtūte ā Rōmānīs sociisque inter mare et castra. Hī ex oppidō in silvās māgnā caede fugātī sunt. 10. Itaque cōnsulem Rōmānum auxilium et rogābunt et impetrābunt socii nostrī.

- 166 1. The cause of the war was hatred for both the king and his companions. 2. The king's brother was a leader and a chief among the Belgians, and had been greatly praised for his bravery and patriotism;<sup>3</sup> he asked the Romans for help.<sup>4</sup> 3. The enemy had prepared fires on the hills, and in company with the Germans were already hastening by forced marches into their territory. 4. The Nervii fought from the walls, but the enemy built towers on the hill which was behind the town. 5. The slaughter was not great, for the enemy fought with small spears, and the Nervii had swords.

<sup>1</sup> Used substantively, *our men, our soldiers*.

<sup>2</sup> The future indicative of *possum, can, be able*. What person and number is it?

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *love of country*.

<sup>4</sup> Compare 165, 10.



6. Quickly and fearlessly<sup>1</sup> the rest of the enemy approached over<sup>2</sup> the hills, which were already hidden by the clouds. 7. The Nervii were neighbors of those who had conspired together, and after the battle they entered their lands for plunder.

## LESSON XIX

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

167

## MIXED STEMS

## PARADIGMS

**Arx**, f. *citadel*.  
arc(i)-

**Urbs**, f. *city*.  
urb(i)-

**Cliens**, m. *client*.  
client(i)-

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	arx	urbs	cliens
GEN.	arcis	urbis	clientis
DAT.	arci	urbi	clienti
ACCU.	arcem	urbem	clientem
ABL.	arce	urbe	cliente

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
GEN.	arcium	urbium	clientium
DAT.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
ACCU.	arcēs, -is	urbēs, -is	clientēs, -is
ABL.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

<sup>1</sup> Translate, *without fear*.<sup>2</sup> Use *per*.

(a) Notice that these nouns are declined like consonant stems in the singular, but show the peculiarities of *i* stems in the plural. No sharp distinction can be made between nouns of this class and nouns like *hostis* and *nubēs* which are classed under *i* stems.

168 To the class of Mixed Stems belong:

(1) Most monosyllables in *-s* and *-x* preceded by a consonant, as *arx*, *urbs*, etc.

(2) Most nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*, as *cliēns*, *cohors*, etc.

169

# VOCABULARY

*arx*, *arcis*, *f. citadel.*

*civitas*, *civitātis*,<sup>1</sup> *f. state, citizenship (civis, 164).*

*cliēns*, *clientis*, *m. client.*

*cohors*, *cohortis*, *f. cohort (a military body of 300–360 men).*

*eques*, *equitis*, *m. horseman (equus, 80).*

*etiam*, *adv. even.*

*flūmen*, *flūminis*, *n. river.*

*fuga*, *fugae*, *f. flight (fugō).*

*gēns*, *gentis*, *f. clan, family, tribe.*

*legiō*, *legiōnis*, *f. legion (a military body made up of ten cohortēs).*

*mōns*, *montis*, *m. mountain.*

*mors*, *mortis*, *f. death.*

*nāvis*,<sup>2</sup> *nāvis*, *f. ship (nāvīgō, 56; nauta, 47).*

*pōns*, *pontis*, *m. bridge.*

*quiēs*, *quiētis*, *f. quiet, peace.*

*ripa*, *ripae*, *f. bank (of a stream).*

*urbs*, *urbis*, *f. city.*

170 1. Inter hostis erant multī qui clientēs populī Rōmānī ōlim fuerant. 2. Hī ex fugā in castra nostra errāverant, ubi eōs victor cōsul, Quīntus nōmine,<sup>3</sup> cum cūrā servābat

<sup>1</sup> Feminine nouns in *-ās*, *-ātis*, sometimes have the genitive plural in *-ium*, accusative plural in *-ēs*, *-is*, like mixed stems; but for the present they are treated as consonant stems.

<sup>2</sup> Usually declined like *civis*, rarely like *turris*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 159, 6.

et obsidum locō<sup>1</sup> habēbat. 3. Eques rēgī eōrum, qui nōn longē ab eā urbe in colle aberat, cōnsilium hostium nūntiāvit. 4. Intereā cōnsul clientēs Rōmānōrum in nāvibus celeriter ad rīpam flūminis portāvit; ibi erat locus castris idōneus. 5. Māgnum numerum armōrum hūius bellī causā gentēs Germānōrum comparāverant et iam in finis Gallōrum properābant. 6. Post arcem, quae in colle erat, hostēs māgnō labōre pontem parāverant; et ibi et in arce proelium exspectābant. 7. Māgna erit etiam in morte laus eōrum quī prō patriā cum audāciā dēcertāverunt. 8. Inter mare et montem in quō ignēs hostium erant, māgnā cum caede Gallōrum pūgnātum est. 9. Post rēgis mortem reliquī hostēs fugantur; haec cōnsulī nūntiantur. Māgnō amōre praedae legiōnes Rōmānae ad rīpam properant. 10. Iam neque quiēs neque pāx in Galliā erat, sed ab oceanō marique ad flūmen Germānōrum bellum et arma.

- 171 1. The states of Gaul were aroused to war by their hatred of the Roman citizens. These with their<sup>2</sup> clients were in the Gauls' cities and towns. 2. Therefore the consul, whose name was Quintus,<sup>3</sup> together with his<sup>2</sup> brother, hastened by forced marches into Gaul. 3. He did not have many horsemen, but he got ready towers in a suitable place on a hill. 4. Many ships had been built by the allies of the Roman people, and these were not far away. 5. The enemy had many fires on the hills and mountains, and they awaited the battle and death with great courage. 6. The slaughter was great, both of the

---

<sup>1</sup> locō, abl. *in place of* = *as*.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> This may be translated as in 170, 2; we may also say *cui* (dat. of possessor) *nōmen erat Quīntō* or *cui nōmen erat Quīntus*. The predicate dative *Quīntō*, agreeing with *cui*, is more common than the predicate nominative *Quīntus*, agreeing with *nōmen*.

Romans and of those who were fighting bravely for their<sup>1</sup> country. 7. The Gauls were conquered, but the Romans, though victorious,<sup>2</sup> did not lay waste their lands.

## LESSON XX

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

## RULES FOR GENDER

**172** THE following rules will help to fix the gender of a majority of the nouns of the Third Declension, but it is important and easy to learn the gender of each noun when it is first met.

(1) Masculine are nouns in *-ō*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, *-ēs* (gen. *-itis*, *-idis*): *ōrdō*, *order*, *rank*, *victor*, *mōs*, *custom*, *agger*, *mound*, *eques*, etc.

(2) Feminine are nouns in *-ās*, *-ēs* (gen. *-is*), *-is*; *-x* and *-s* (after a consonant); *-dō*, and collective and abstract nouns in *-iō*: *civitās*, *nūbēs*, *nāvis*, *arx*, *urbs*, *multitūdō*, *legiō*.

(3) Neuter are nouns in *-e*, *-l*, *-n*, *-t*; *-us*: *mare*, *animal*, *nōmen*, *caput*, *corpus*.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME

**173**

## EXAMPLES

1. *Tōtam aetātem labōrat.*     *He works the entire summer.*
2. *Septem noctēs continuās*     *He attacked the town for*  
*oppidum oppugnābat.*     *seven nights in succession.*

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>2</sup> Though victorious, simply *victōrēs*.

(a) Notice that in these sentences the accusatives *tōtam aestātem*, *septem noctēs continuās* answer the question *How long?* That is, they express the time during which the action of the verb continues. Such an accusative is called an *Accusative of Duration of Time*.

- 174 **Rule.**—Duration of Time is expressed by the Accusative.  
W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256; H. 417.

### ABLATIVE OF TIME

175

#### EXAMPLES

1. *Hieme noctēs sunt longae.* *In winter the nights are long.*
2. *Primā lūce hostēs oppidum oppugnābunt.* *At daybreak the enemy will attack the town.*
3. *Septem proximis annis Gallōs pācāvit.* *Within the last seven years he has subdued the Gauls.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *hieme*, *primā lūce*, *septem proximis annis*, answer the questions *When?* *Within what time?* Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Time At Which or Within Which*.

- 176 **Rule.**—The Time At Which or Within Which an action takes place is expressed by the Ablative.  
W. 406. 407; B. 230. 231; AG. 256; H. 486. 487.

177

#### VOCABULARY

<i>aestās, -ātis</i> , <sup>1</sup> f. <i>summer</i> .	<i>hiems, -mis</i> , f. <i>winter</i> .
<i>annus, -i</i> , m. <i>year</i> .	<i>hōra, -ae</i> , f. <i>hour</i> .
<i>cōfirmō, -āre</i> , to make firm, establish.	<i>nox, noctis</i> , f. <i>night</i> .
<i>continuus, -a, -um</i> , consecutive, in succession.	<i>primus, -a, -um</i> , first.
<i>hiemō, -āre</i> , to spend the winter.	<i>proximus, -a, -um</i> , nearest, last.
	<i>septem</i> , indeclinable, <sup>2</sup> seven.
	<i>septimus, -a, -um</i> , seventh.

<sup>1</sup> Hereafter the entire form of the genitive will not be given, but only so much as is necessary to show the declension.

<sup>2</sup> That is, having the same form for all genders and cases.

*tertius*, -a, -um, *third*.  
*tôtus*,<sup>1</sup> -a, -um, *whole, entire*.

*trāns*, prep. with accu.  
*across*.

*vigilia*, -ae, f. *watch*.

- 178 1. Tertiā vigiliā cōsulis frāter, cui nōmen erat Marcō,<sup>2</sup> equitēs et legiōnēs in colle proximō conlocāvit ubi hostis exspectābat. 2. Hī nocte per finis Nerviorum celeriter properāvērunt et primā lūce nōn longē ab castris Rōmānōrum aberant. 3. Coniugēs et liberī Gallōrum his proximīs noctibus in oppidīs et urbibus conlocāti<sup>3</sup> erant. 4. Septem hōrās continuās ab Rōmānīs et ab Gallīs magnā cum caede pūgnābātur. 5. Hostēs superātī sunt et obsidēs dabant; sed ab reliquīs Gallīs semper māgnoperē laudābantur. 6. Pāx cōfirmāta est septimā aestāte inter eōs Gallōs quī in armīs erant et Rōmānōs; iam multōs annōs per Galliam quīēs fuerat. 7. Haec victōria Rōmānōrum cēteris Gallīs et Germānīs ab eīs gentibus, quae finitimae erant, magnō clāmōre nūntiāta erat. 8. Post multōs annōs gentēs Germāniae bellum contrā victōrēs Rōmānōs parābant; septem noctēs continuās ignēs in montibus collibusque vidēbantur.<sup>4</sup> 9. Sed tōtam proximam hiemem cōsul Rōmānus cum septem cohortibus apud Gallōs hiemāverat. 10. Iam frāter cōsulis cum legiōnibus tertiā et septimā<sup>5</sup> magnīs itineribus ex Italiā ad cōsulem in Galliam properābat.

- 179 1. The third summer Caesar hastened into the territory of the Belgians and stationed his cohorts on the

<sup>1</sup> The genitive singular of all genders is *tōtius*, dative singular *tōtī*; otherwise *tôtus* is declined like *bonus*. Compare the declension of *hic*, *ille*, etc. <sup>2</sup> Compare 171, 2, foot-note.

<sup>3</sup> When a predicate adjective or participle agrees with two or more nouns of different genders, it is Masculine when the nouns denote persons, and Neuter when the nouns denote things.

<sup>4</sup> *Were seen*. From *videō*, *to see*; the principal parts and the conjugation will be given later.

<sup>5</sup> Agreeing with *legiōnibus*. Why is the noun plural when the adjectives are singular?

mountains and hills. 2. He strengthened the courage<sup>1</sup> of the soldiers by his<sup>2</sup> words.<sup>3</sup> 3. Many men, clients of the Romans, hurried to him from the neighboring tribes and states and brought arms and hostages. 4. The leading men of the enemy were called together on that night; they were without a plan for the war. 5. Among them were many who once had been greatly praised by the Romans for their courage. 6. During the night the king of the Belgians with his attendants brought a large quantity of arms into camp. 7. The Romans and the Belgians fought in the plain between the hills for seven hours; the Belgians<sup>4</sup> were driven<sup>5</sup> into their camp.

*The Beginning of the Republic*

Post rēgēs cōsulēs duo<sup>6</sup> prō rēge ūnō<sup>7</sup> creātī sunt,<sup>8</sup> quibus annuum<sup>9</sup> imperium<sup>10</sup> cīvītātis datum est. Primō annō cōsulēs fuērunt Lūcius Iunius Brūtus, quī rēgem Tarquiniū expulerat,<sup>11</sup> et Tarquinius Collātinus. Sed nōmen Tarquiniōrum populō Rōmānō nōn erat grātum; itaque cum coniuge, liberis, servisque omnia<sup>12</sup> bona<sup>13</sup> ex urbe ad finitimōs portāvit, et in ēius locum Valerius Publicola cōsul est creātus. Sed iam ille Tarquinius, quī rēx fuerat, bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābat. In primō proeliō Brūtus cōsul occidit,<sup>14</sup> quem Rōmānae mātērōnae<sup>15</sup> per totum annum luxērunt.<sup>16</sup> Posterō<sup>17</sup> annō Tarquinius

<sup>1</sup> animus.<sup>2</sup> Omit.<sup>3</sup> verbum, -ī.<sup>4</sup> Translate by a pronoun.<sup>5</sup> Put to flight.<sup>6</sup> Two.<sup>7</sup> One.<sup>8</sup> creō, -āre, to elect.<sup>9</sup> An adjective; compare annus.<sup>10</sup> Rule.<sup>11</sup> Had driven out.<sup>12</sup> All.<sup>13</sup> Neut. plur. used substantively, goods.<sup>14</sup> Fell.<sup>15</sup> What English word is derived from this?<sup>16</sup> Mourned.<sup>17</sup> The next.

cum Rōmānīs iterum<sup>1</sup> armīs dēcertāvit et Porsenna, rēx Etruscōrum, eī auxilium dedit. In hōc bellō Horātius sōlus<sup>2</sup> pontem servāvit, dum<sup>3</sup> is ab Rōmānīs ruptus esset.<sup>4</sup> Dēnique Porsenna pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit<sup>5</sup>; Tarquinius post nōn multōs annōs in villā mortuus est.<sup>6</sup>

## LESSON XXI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD  
DECLENSION

181

## PARADIGMS

**Audāx**, *bold.***audāci-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audācēs</b>	<b>audācia</b>
GEN.		<b>audācis</b>		<b>audācium</b>
DAT.		<b>audāci</b>		<b>audācibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>audācem</b>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audācis, -ēs</b>	<b>audācia</b>
ABL.		<b>audāci</b>		<b>audācibus</b>

**Fortis**, *brave.***forti-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	<b>fortis</b>	<b>forte</b>	<b>fortēs</b>	<b>fortia</b>
GEN.		<b>fortis</b>		<b>fortium</b>
DAT.		<b>forti</b>		<b>fortibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>fortem</b>	<b>forte</b>	<b>fortis, -ēs</b>	<b>fortia</b>
ABL.		<b>forti</b>		<b>fortibus</b>

<sup>1</sup> *Again.*<sup>4</sup> Plup. subj. pass., *had been broken down.*<sup>2</sup> *Alone.*<sup>5</sup> *Made.*<sup>3</sup> *Until,*<sup>6</sup> *Died,*



**Ācer**, *sharp, eager, spirited.*

**ācri-**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācia
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACCU.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācia, -ēs	ācia, -ēs	ācia
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(a) Notice that these adjectives are all declined like *i* stems.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Adjectives declined like **audāx**, which has but one form for all genders in the nominative singular, are called *Adjectives of One Termination*; those declined like **fortis**, **forte**, *Adjectives of Two Terminations*; and those declined like **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *Adjectives of Three Terminations*.

## 182

## VOCABULARY

<b>ācer</b> , <b>ācris</b> , <b>ācre</b> , <i>sharp, eager, spirited.</i>	<b>equester</b> , <b>equestris</b> , <b>equestre</b> , <i>belonging to the cavalry,</i>
<b>armō</b> , <b>-āre</b> , <i>to arm</i> ( <b>arma</b> , 111).	<b>equestrian</b> ( <b>equus</b> , 80, <b>equus</b> , 169).
<b>audāx</b> , <b>-ācia</b> , <i>bold</i> ( <b>audācia</b> , 151).	<b>fortis</b> , <b>forte</b> , <i>strong, brave.</i>
<b>brevis</b> , <b>breve</b> , <i>short.</i>	<b>ita</b> , <i>adv. so, thus, in this manner.</i>
<b>dimicō</b> , <b>-āre</b> , <i>to fight, contend</i> (compare <b>pūgnō</b> , 101).	<b>iuventūs</b> , <b>-tūtis</b> , <i>f. the period of youth, youth, young men.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Adjectives of one termination sometimes have the abl. sing. ending in *-e* instead of *-ī*, but this is not common in prose of the classical period.

Compare the declension of these adjectives with that of the nouns in 161 and 162.

omnis, omne, *all, whole.*  
 pars, -tis, *f. part.*  
 quartus, -a, -um, *fourth.*  
 studium, -i, *n. zeal, desire.*

tempus, -oris, *n. time.*  
 velox, -ocia, *swift.*  
 vulnus, -eris, *n. wound (vulnerō, 144).*

183 1. Omnēs Belgae, quī in tertiā parte Galliae habitābant, cum finitimis gentibus et civitatibus brevī tempore coniūrābant. 2. Eō tempore hiemābat Caesar cum quartā legiōne in eā parte Galliae quae Italiae proxima est; dē Belgārum cōsiliō ei per epistulās nūntiātum est. 3. Caesar, ubi (*when*) brevī tempore cōpiam frūmenti comparāvit, finibus Belgārum adpropinquāvit. 4. Cum omnibus equitibus et novis cohortibus iuventūtis, quās ex urbibus Italiae vocāverat, contrā hostis properābat; in itinere cōpiās Gallōrum equestri proeliō fugāvit. 5. Rēmī, quī ex Belgīs proximī Gallis sunt, nōn longē aberant cum primis civitātis clientibusque eōrum; auxilium contrā inimicōs rogāverunt. 6. Apud Belgās erat māgna inopia omnium; neque arma neque equōs neque cōpiam frūmenti habēbant. 7. Sed Germāni, quī audācēs fortēsque erant, iam multōs continuōs annōs cum Rōmānis dimicāverant. 8. Ante proelium quod exspectābat Caesar, animōs militum ita cōfirmāvit: "Vestra erit laus victōriae; sed hostibus vulnera et mors." 9. Velōcēs ācrēsque erant Belgae quī longīs hastis armāti erant; māgnō cum studiō bellī tōtam noctem dimicābant.

184 1. At that time Caesar's lieutenant was in Gaul, and hostages were given him by all the tribes. 2. In the next winter the bold Gauls for many reasons prepared for<sup>1</sup> a new war against the Romans. 3. When<sup>2</sup> all the

<sup>1</sup> Prepare for, parō, -āre.

<sup>2</sup> Use ubi and the perfect indicative; compare sentence 3 above. Ubi means both *where* and *when*; it will be used in both senses in the following lessons.

arms had been brought from the town, Caesar hurried with the eager cavalry and the brave cohorts into the lands of the neighboring tribe. 4. These men were brave and bold, but owing to their fear of the Roman soldiers they were ready to fight neither at that time nor in that place. 5. Their cavalry forces were not great, but they had placed all their young men on a hill which was not far distant. 6. The Romans' horses, of which there was a great number in camp, were swift and spirited.

## LESSON XXII

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**185** ADJECTIVES are compared in three Degrees, as in English—the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding *-ior* *m.* and *f.*, *-ius* *n.*, and the Superlative by adding *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um* to the stem of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>altus</b> ( <i>alto-</i> )	<b>alt-ior</b>	<b>alt-issimus</b>
<b>fortis</b> ( <i>forti-</i> )	<b>fort-ior</b>	<b>fort-issimus</b> <sup>1</sup>
<b>audāx</b> ( <i>audāc-</i> )	<b>audāc-ior</b>	<b>audāc-issimus</b>

### DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

**186** Comparatives are declined as follows:

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the final vowel of the stem of the Positive, if it have any, as in *alto-*, *forti-*, is dropped before the endings *-ior*, *-issimus*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.	fortiōris		fortiōrum	
DAT.	fortiōrī		fortiōribus	
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs <sup>1</sup>	fortiōra
ABL.	fortiōre <sup>1</sup>		fortiōribus	

(a) Compare this declension of the Comparative with that of the Positive of adjectives of the Third Declension, 181, and notice the points of difference carefully.

187 Superlatives are all declined like **bonus**, 62.

188 Compare: **cārus**, **clārus**, **brevis**, **tristis**, **velōx**.

#### ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

189

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Marcus est clārior quam frāter.** *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
2. **Marcus est frātre clārior.** *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
3. **Quid est bonō cīvī cārius quam patria?** *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*
4. **Quid est bonō cīvī patriā cārius?** *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the person or thing with which the subject of each sentence is compared is either in the same case as the subject and connected by the conjunction **quam**, *than*, or is expressed by the simple Ablative. Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Comparison*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The endings **-ī** in the Ablative Singular and **-īs** in the Accusative Plural occur, but are rare.

(b) This Ablative can be used only when the first of the things compared is in the nominative or accusative; when the first of the two things compared is in any other case *quam* must be used: e. g., *cārior Horātiō quam servō est ille locus*. *That place is dearer to Horace than to his slave.*

- 190 *Rule.*—The Ablative of Comparison is used after the nominative or accusative of Comparatives.

W. 380, 381; B. 217; AG. 247; H. 471.

## 191

## VOCABULARY

<i>altus</i> , -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i>	<i>māter</i> , -tris, f. <i>mother.</i>
<i>atrōx</i> , -cis, <i>savage, frightful.</i>	<i>mulier</i> , -eris, f. <i>woman.</i>
<i>certus</i> , -a, -um, <i>certain, sure.</i>	<i>pater</i> , -tris, m. <i>father.</i>
<i>dūrus</i> , -a, -um, <i>hard, difficult.</i>	<i>pēs</i> , <i>pedis</i> , m. <i>foot.</i>
<i>egēns</i> , -ntis, <i>lacking, needy.</i>	<i>quam</i> , conj. <i>than.</i>
<i>gravis</i> , -e, <i>heavy, severe.</i>	<i>timidus</i> , -a, -um, <i>timid (timor,</i>
<i>imperō</i> , -āre, <i>to order.</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>158).</i>
	<i>tristis</i> , -e, <i>sad.</i>
	<i>tūtus</i> , -a, -um, <i>safe.</i>

- 192 1. *Belgae sunt fortiōrēs et audaciōrēs quam eī Galli quī Rōmānīs finitimī sunt.* 2. *Nam cum Germānīs, quī nōn longē absunt, saepe dūrissimō tempore annī dimicant.* 3. *Multis dē causis eā aestāte gravius et atrōcius bellum in hāc parte Galliae exspectābātur.* 4. *Mōns ubi Caesar iuventūtem et equestris cōpiās conlocāvit, altior erat eō colle quem hostēs occupāverant.* 5. *Puerōs omnīs et mulierēs timidiōrēs in altis silvīs occultāverant hostēs, ubi tūtiōrēs erant quam in arce.* 6. *Belgis erat in animō<sup>2</sup> timidōs cōfirmāre, egentis iuvāre, omnīs contrā*

<sup>1</sup> With the dat. of person and the accu. of thing, *to order to furnish*: *eīs obsidēs imperāvit*. *He ordered them to furnish hostages.*

<sup>2</sup> *esse in animō* with the dative of possessor, *to have in mind, plan, intend.*

Rōmānōs incitāre, patriam liberāre. 7. Multī obsidēs in castris Caesaris et in Italiā erant, inter quōs erant frātrēs, filiī, filiaeque principum cīvitātis. 8. Sed tertiā vigiliā noctis hostēs celeriter et māgnō cum studiō proeli moenibus adpropinquāvērunt; ibi diū pūgnātum est, sed victōria erat Rōmānis certa. 9. Post id bellum ante pedēs Caesaris Belgae trīstissimī amīcitiam eius et populī Rōmāni postulābant. 10. Iam hiems adpropinquābat; itaque Caesar eis obsidēs, patrēs et mātērēs, imperāvit.

- 193 1. Of all the states of Gaul, this was the bravest and most eager for war. 2. The enemy had many horses which were swifter and more spirited than those belonging to<sup>1</sup> the Romans. 3. In the first watch of the night the Romans approached the town, the wall of which was very high. 4. But at daybreak the enemy were defeated in a hard battle with the cavalry<sup>2</sup> in a broad plain before the town. 5. The consul ordered the Gauls to furnish<sup>3</sup> many hostages, among whom were the fathers and the sons of the leading men of the state. 6. Caesar intended<sup>4</sup> to get ready a large number of ships in the winter and to carry his soldiers to Britain the following summer. 7. All the neighboring tribes of Britain hastened to the sea by the shortest road and prepared to fight with the Romans.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Belonging to*: translate by the possessive genitive.

<sup>2</sup> *With the cavalry*: translate by an adjective.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 192, 10.

<sup>4</sup> Compare 192, 6.

## LESSON XXIII

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

- 194 ADJECTIVES ending in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>pulcher</b>	<b>pulchr-ior</b>	<b>pulcher-rimus</b>
<b>ācer</b>	<b>ācr-ior</b>	<b>ācer-rimus</b>

In the same way compare **miser**, **liber**.

- 195 Six adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem of the Positive less its final vowel:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>facilis</b> , <i>easy</i>	<b>facil-ior</b>	<b>facil-limus</b>
<b>difficilis</b> , <i>difficult</i>	<b>difficil-ior</b>	<b>difficil-limus</b>
<b>similis</b> , <i>like</i>	<b>simil-ior</b>	<b>simil-limus</b>
<b>dissimilis</b> , <i>unlike</i>	<b>dissimil-ior</b>	<b>dissimil-limus</b>
<b>humilis</b> , <i>low</i>	<b>humil-ior</b>	<b>humil-limus</b>
<b>gracilis</b> , <i>slender</i>	<b>gracil-ior</b>	<b>gracil-limus</b>

## ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

196

## EXAMPLES

1. **Paulō post adpropinquāvit cōsul.** *A little later the consul approached.*
2. **Hæc via est multō difficilior.** *This way is much more difficult.*
3. **Illa turris decem pedibus est altior quam mūrus.** *That tower is ten feet higher than the wall.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **paulō**, **multō**, **decem pedibus** answer the questions "*How much later, more difficult, higher?*" Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

- 197 **Rule.**—The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with Comparatives and words suggesting comparison.<sup>1</sup>

W. 393; B. 223; AG. 250; H. 479.

## 198

## VOCABULARY

<b>beātus</b> , -a, -um, <i>happy</i> .	<b>multō</b> , <i>much</i> . <sup>2</sup>
<b>celer</b> , -eris, -ere, <i>swift</i> .	<b>nēmō</b> , <b>nēminis</b> , m. <i>no one</i> .
<b>decem</b> (indeclinable), <i>ten</i> .	<b>nihil</b> , n. (indeclin.), <i>nothing</i> .
<b>difficilis</b> , -e, <i>difficult</i> .	<b>ōrdō</b> , -inis, m. <i>order, rank</i> .
<b>dissimilis</b> , -e, <i>unlike</i> .	<b>paulō</b> , <i>little</i> . <sup>2</sup>
<b>facilis</b> , -e, <i>easy</i> .	<b>similis</b> , -e, <i>like</i> .
<b>humilis</b> , -e, <i>low</i> .	<b>vīginti</b> (indeclin.), <i>twenty</i> .
<b>insignis</b> , -e, <i>remarkable, prominent</i> .	

- 199 1. Eī Belgae, quī Germānis<sup>3</sup> sunt nōn dissimilēs, multō fortiōrēs sunt quam reliquī hūius nōminis. 2. Illi decem ante<sup>4</sup> annīs superāverant cōsulem Rōmānum, quī per eōrum agrōs cum cōpiīs properābat. 3. Quā dē causā Caesar primā aestāte cum equitibus celerrimīs in eam partem Galliae properāverat. 4. Eō tempore nāvēs Rōmānōrum paulō altiōrēs erant quam eae quās Belgae habēbant, sed humiliōrēs quam eae quae nunc in nostrō marī sunt. 5. Multō facilius erat Belgīs, quōrum in finibus erant

<sup>1</sup> The most common words suggesting comparison are the adverbs **ante**, *before*, **post**, *afterward*, and the verb **mālō**, *to prefer* (487).

<sup>2</sup> **Multō** and **paulō** are originally the ablatives singular neuter of the adjectives **multus** and **paulus**; they are, however, generally called adverbs.

<sup>3</sup> Dative.

<sup>4</sup> **Ante** is here an adverb and has no influence on the ablative.



multae arborēs, nāvis aedificāre. 6. Insignī studiō omnium ōrdinum per vīgintī diēs<sup>1</sup> continuōs Belgae laborābant; multās navīs celeriorēs altiōresque aedificāverunt. 7. Simili studiō cum militibus nostris diū pūgnāverunt, sed septimā hōrā ad ripās sunt fugātī. 8. Nihil hominī fortī bōnōque pulchrius est quam prō patriā morī;<sup>2</sup> nēmō beātiōr est quam is quī coniugis et liberōrum causā fortiter dimicat. 9. Pōns, quem trāns flūmen aedificāvit Caesar, lātiōr septem pedibus erat quam via. 10. Quiēs longa fuerat eā nocte in oppidō Belgārum, sed paulō ante lūcem magnō cum clāmōre ad castra Rōmānōrum prope-rāverunt hostēs.

- 200** 1. For many reasons Caesar prepared to hurry into Gaul by a more difficult way. 2. The tribe, whose territory he was approaching, was much braver than the rest of the Gauls. 3. Their horses were much swifter and more spirited than those of the Romans. 4. These tribes were most like the Germans,<sup>3</sup> who lived across the very wide river. 5. Caesar took possession of all their towns and stationed the bravest troops on the neighboring hills. 6. A little while after, the enemy approached with all their forces, but were defeated and put to flight in a severe cavalry battle. 7. The Gauls' ships were very unlike<sup>4</sup> the Romans'; the former were shorter and broader, the latter longer and higher.

---

<sup>1</sup> Accu. plur. of *diēs*, *day*.

<sup>2</sup> Infinitive, *to die*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 199, 1.

<sup>4</sup> *Very unlike*, superlative.

## LESSON XXIV

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

201 THE following adjectives are irregular in Comparison, the Comparative and Superlative being formed from different stems than the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>bonus</b>	<b>melior</b>	<b>optimus</b>
<b>malus</b>	<b>pēior</b>	<b>pessimus</b>
<b>māgnus</b>	<b>māior</b>	<b>māximus</b>
<b>parvus</b>	<b>minor</b>	<b>minimus</b>
<b>multus</b>	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrimus</b>

202 Plūs is defective in declension:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	_____	plūris	plūrium	
DAT.	_____	_____	plūribus	
ACCU.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	_____	plūre	plūribus	

203 The following have no Positive:

POSITIVE (wanting)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(Compare <i>prae</i> , before)	<i>prior</i> , former	<i>primus</i> , first
" <i>citrā</i> , this side of)	<i>citerior</i> , hither	<i>citimus</i> , hithermost
" <i>ultrā</i> , beyond)	<i>ulterior</i> , farther	<i>ultimus</i> , farthest, last
" <i>in</i> , <i>intrā</i> , in, within)	<i>interior</i> , inner	<i>intimus</i> , inmost
" <i>prope</i> , near)	<i>propior</i> , nearer	<i>proximus</i> , nearest, next

## 204 The Positive of the following is rare:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(posterī) <sup>1</sup>	posterior, later	{ postrēmus, latest, last postumus, late-born
(exterī)	exterior, outer	{ extrēmus } extimus, } outermost
(inferī)	inferior, lower	{ infimus } imus, } lowest
(superī)	superior, higher	{ suprēmus, last summus, highest

## ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

205

## EXAMPLES

1. Amicōs cūrā liberāvit. *He freed his friends from care.*
2. Oppidānōs armīs privābunt. *They will deprive the townsmen of their arms.*
3. Locus militibus vacuus erat. *The place was free of soldiers.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablatives *cūrā*, *armīs*, *militibus* express that from which one is separated or that which he is without. Such an Ablative is called an *Ablative of Separation*.

206

**Rule.**—The Ablative of Separation is used with verbs and adjectives meaning to relieve, deprive, need, lack, etc.

W. 374-377; B. 214; AG. 243; H. 461-465.

(a) Verbs of freeing, depriving, lacking, and removing are ordinarily used with the simple ablative, unless

---

<sup>1</sup> The positive of these adjectives is rare save *posterus* in such phrases as *posterō diē*, on the next day; *posterō annō*, in the next year. The plurals *posterī*, descendants, *inferī*, the inhabitants of the lower world, the dead, *superī*, the gods above, are also fairly common.

a person is meant; then the ablative with a preposition is used: e. g., *civitātem ā rēge liberat*.

(b) Verbs compounded with the prefixes *ab-*, *dis-*, *sē-* usually have the ablative with a preposition: e. g., *Rōma longē abest ab hōc locō*, *Rome is far distant from this place*; *Britannī differunt ā Gallis*, *The Britons differ from the Gauls*.

## 207

VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup>

<i>altitūdō</i> , -inis, f. <i>height</i> .	<i>spoliō</i> , -āre, <i>to despoil of</i> .
<i>levis</i> , -e, <i>light, slight</i> .	<i>vacuus</i> , -a, -um, <i>empty of</i> ,
<i>privō</i> , -āre, <i>to deprive of</i> .	<i>free from</i> .
<i>secundus</i> , -a, -um, <i>favorable</i> ,	<i>vēr</i> , <i>vēris</i> , n. <i>spring</i> .
<i>following</i> .	

## 208

1. Tōtam eam hiemem Caesar in citeriōre Galliā omnibus cum cōpiīs hiemābat. 2. Paulō ante primum vēr cum decem cohortibus et multis equestribus cōpiīs in ulteriōrem Galliam properāvit et in eās civitātēs quae marī propiōrēs erant. 3. Itinera difficillima erant dūriissimō tempore annī et altitūdine montium quae inter Galliam et Italiā sunt. 4. Caesar cum septem cohortibus omnia superiōra loca occupāvit, sed equitēs nōn longē ab infimō monte<sup>2</sup> conlocāvit. 5. Clientēs cīvium Rōmānōrum et omnis quī nātūrā timidiōrēs erant armīs privābant hostēs. 6. Posterō diē<sup>3</sup> levī et secundō proeliō equestri in campō dīmīcātum est. 7. Hōc proeliō et eō quod posterō diē pūgnātum est, Caesar cīvīs Rōmānōs et sociōs māximō periculō et timōre liberāvit. 8. Hī Galli multō acriōrēs erant quam eī quōs Caesar priōre aestāte similī caede

<sup>1</sup> From this point the new words used in paradigms are ordinarily not repeated in the vocabularies, as has been done hitherto. Pupils should therefore carefully learn the meaning of each new paradigm.

<sup>2</sup> *Infimū mōns*, the foot of the mountain; *summus mōns*, the top of the mountain.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative sing. of *diēs*, day.

superāverat. 9. Nam in extrēmīs finibus Gallōrum habitābant et longē aberant ā Germānis, quī timōre vacuī erant. 10. Eī quī superātī erant armīs spoliābantur et in agrīs victōrum labōrābant.

- 209** 1. At the beginning of spring<sup>1</sup> Caesar prepared to carry his troops from farther Gaul into Britain by means of ships. 2. In the previous summer he had put to flight a tribe of the Britons and had deprived them of their arms. 3. He stationed ten cohorts in those parts which were nearer the sea,<sup>2</sup> and a little after the third watch hastened toward the enemy. 4. The enemy's spears were a foot longer than those of the Romans', but their shields were a little smaller than the Romans'. 5. The enemy were overcome in a slight cavalry battle and were driven in flight<sup>3</sup> into a neighboring wood. 6. The inner part of Britain was inhabited by very savage tribes, who were free from all fear. 7. But the hither part was inhabited by those who had taken possession of the country for the sake of war and plunder.

---

## LESSON XXV

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

- 210** Most adverbs are derived from adjective stems:

ADJECTIVES  
*longus* (longo-)  
*miser* (misero-)

ADVERBS  
*longē, far* (132)  
*miserē, wretchedly*

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare sentence 2 above.

<sup>2</sup> Use dative.

<sup>3</sup> *fugō*.

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions by changing the final vowel of the stem -o to -ē.

211

ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
ācer (ācri-)	ācriter, <i>sharply</i>
audāx (audāc-)	audacter, <i>boldly</i>
fortis (forti-)	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
sapiēns (sapiēnt-)	sapienter, <i>wisely</i>

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the Third Declension by the addition of -ter; if the adjective stem end in -nt, the -t is dropped.

212 Accusative or Ablative neuters singular of Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: e. g., multum, *much*; facile, *easily*; tūtō, *safely*; subitō, *suddenly*; multō, (by) *much*; paulō, (by) *little*.

213 Adverbs follow the Comparison of the Adjectives from which they are derived:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longē	long-ius	long-issimē
miserē	miser-ius	miser-rimē
ācriter	ācr-ius	ācer-rimē
audacter	audāc-ius	audāc-issimē
fortiter	fort-ius	fort-issimē
sapienter	sapient-ius	sapient-issimē
facile	facil-ius	facil-limē
tūtō	tūt-ius	tūt-issimē

(a) Notice that the Comparative of the Adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the Adjective, and that the Superlative is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective in the same way as the Positive of the Adverb from the Positive of the Adjective.



sapienter occupāvit et posterā nocte cum primīs hostium ordinibus audācter pūgnāre parāvit. 7. Equī eōrum multō velōciōrēs ācriōrēsque erant quam nostrī et laetē hostibus adpropinquābant. 8. Inter omnis eās gentēs māxima laus est hostīs armīs spoliāre; quae posteā deīs deābusque laetissimē dant. 9. Proximīs annis Caesar fēliciter māximam partem Galliae pācāverat; quīntō annō militēs in Britanniam nāvibus tūtō portāvit. 10. Britannī quī ad mare subitō properāverant, ācritē ab militibus Rōmānis fugātī sunt.

- 218 1. In former years the Gauls had fought more bravely than the Germans. 2. But at this time the Germans were much more savage than the Gauls and fought more boldly. 3. When Caesar came near, the Germans quickly concealed their women and children in the neighboring forest. 4. This forest was very large, and it was not easy to march<sup>1</sup> through it very quickly. 5. Caesar stationed his forces not far from the forest and waited for the enemy seven nights. 6. At the farther end of the bridge there were towers many feet higher than the enemy's towers. 7. But the highest towers were on the top of the hill; here Caesar wisely stationed seven cohorts of his best troops. 8. The horsemen of the Germans approached very quickly, but because of the height of the walls, they did not capture the town.

219

## READING EXERCISE

*Wars with the Gauls*

Ubi Gallī, gēns nātūrā atrōx, quī moenibus urbis adpropinquābant, Rōmānōs ad Alliam flūmen māgnā caede superāvērunt—quae clādēs semper erat Rōmānis trīstissima—, Rōmam etiam occupāvērunt. Nulla<sup>2</sup> erant

<sup>1</sup> To march, iter facere.

<sup>2</sup> nullus, -a, -um, none, no. Declined like tōtus, 177.



praesidia; nihil potuerunt<sup>1</sup> civēs. Cum iuventūte, cuius numerus nōn erat magnus, dūx Manlius arcem dēfendit.<sup>2</sup> Ubi praesidium in summā fame<sup>3</sup> fuit et Manlius pacem ā Gallis māximis praemiis emere<sup>4</sup> voluit,<sup>5</sup> subito Camillus hostis atrōci proeliō superāvit.

Post multōs annōs Galli iterum ad urbem accesserant<sup>6</sup> et quartō milliariō<sup>7</sup> trāns Aniēnem<sup>8</sup> flūmen castra posuerunt.<sup>9</sup> Contrā eōs properābat Titus Quīntius. Ibi Gallus magnō corpore fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad certāmen<sup>10</sup> singulāre<sup>11</sup> provocāvit.<sup>12</sup> Manlius cum barbarō statim dēcertāvit, eum facile occidit<sup>13</sup> spoliāvitque torque<sup>14</sup> aureō.<sup>15</sup> Quā dē causā et Manlius et omnēs posterī Torquātī appellātī sunt. Iterum in Pomptinō agrō<sup>16</sup> Valerius in similī pūgnā sacrā ālite<sup>17</sup> corvō<sup>18</sup> adiūtus<sup>19</sup> spolia<sup>20</sup> cēpit;<sup>21</sup> itaque hīc quoque est Corvinus appellātus. Post aliquot<sup>22</sup> annōs in Etruriā reliquōs Gallōs imperātor Rōmānus dēlēvit;<sup>23</sup> ex eā gente quae Rōmam incenderat,<sup>24</sup> nēmō effūgit.<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Could (do).*

<sup>2</sup> *Defended.*

<sup>3</sup> *famēs, -is, f. hunger, famine.*

<sup>4</sup> *To buy.*

<sup>5</sup> *Wished.*

<sup>6</sup> *Had approached.*

<sup>7</sup> *Mile-stone.*

<sup>8</sup> *Aniō, -ēnis, m. a stream emptying into the Tiber a few miles north of Rome.*

<sup>9</sup> *Pitched.*

<sup>10</sup> *Combat.*

<sup>11</sup> *singulāris, -e, single.*

<sup>12</sup> *Challenged.*

<sup>13</sup> *Killed.*

<sup>14</sup> *torquis, -is, m. necklace.*

<sup>15</sup> *Golden.*

<sup>16</sup> *Pomptinus ager, a district in Latium.*

<sup>17</sup> *āles, -itis, f. bird.*

<sup>18</sup> *corvus, -ī, m. raven.*

<sup>19</sup> *Perf. pass. partic. (adiuvō), aided.*

<sup>20</sup> *Spoils, compare spoliō.*

<sup>21</sup> *Gained.*

<sup>22</sup> *Some.*

<sup>23</sup> *Destroyed.*

<sup>24</sup> *Had burned.*

<sup>25</sup> *Escaped.*

# LESSON XXVI

## FOURTH OR -ū DECLENSION

### Stem in u

#### PARADIGMS

220

**Manus**, f. *hand*.**Cornū**, n. *horn*.**manu-****cornu-**

#### SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	<b>manus</b>	<b>cornū</b>
GEN.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>cornūs</b>
DAT.	<b>manui</b> , -ū	<b>cornū</b>
ACCU.	<b>manum</b>	<b>cornū</b>
ABL.	<b>manū</b>	<b>cornū</b>

#### PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>
GEN.	<b>manuum</b>	<b>cornuum</b>
DAT.	<b>manibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>
ABL.	<b>manibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>

(a) A few nouns, of which **portus**, *harbor*, is the most common, have -ubus or -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

- 221 The Gender of most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in -us is Masculine. A few, of which **domus**,<sup>1</sup> *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the most common, are Feminine. All ending in -ū are neuter.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Domus** has besides the regular forms of the Fourth Declension the following forms of the Second: Dat. and Abl. Sing. **domō**; Gen. Plur. **domōrum**; Accu. Plur. **domōs**.

## FIFTH OR -ē DECLENSION

## Stem in ē

222

## PARADIGMS

	<b>Diēs, m. <i>day</i>.</b> <b>diē-</b>	<b>Rēs, f. <i>thing</i>.</b> <b>rē-</b>
	SINGULAR	
NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diēī	rei
DAT.	diēī	rei
ACCU.	diem	rem
ABL.	diē	rē
	PLURAL	
NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus
ACCU.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus

(a) Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout. Other nouns, if used at all in the plural, are found only in the nominative and accusative.

(b) Notice that the genitive and dative singular have the ending **-ēī** when the stem vowel is preceded by a consonant, but when a vowel precedes, the ending is **-ēī**.

**223** The Gender of nouns of the Fifth Declension is Feminine with the exception of **dies**, *day*, which is usually masculine.

224

## VOCABULARY

**aciēs, -ēī, f. *line* (of battle).** **cornū, -ūs, n. *horn, wing***  
**agmen, -inis, n. *line* (of (of an army).**  
**march).** **dexter, -tra, -trum, *right*.**

<b>equitātus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>cavalry</i> .	<b>rēs</b> , rei, f. <i>thing, fact</i> .
<b>exercitus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>army</i> .	<b>senex</b> , senis, <sup>1</sup> m. <i>old man</i> .
<b>manus</b> , -ūs, f. <i>hand, band</i> (of soldiers).	<b>sinister</b> , -tra, -trum, <i>left</i> .
<b>necō</b> , -āre, <i>to kill</i> .	<b>tribūnus</b> , -ī, m. <i>tribune</i> (a military officer).

**225** 1. Posterō diē Caesar omnia superiōra loca subitō occupāvit et manūs hostium fugāvit. 2. Secundā hōrā diēī ācritēr inter equitātum Caesaris et hostium in flūmine pūgnātum est. 3. Iam vulnera Gallōrum et multa et grāvia erant; sed princeps eōrum senex tribūnum nostrum necāvit et corpus armīs spoliāvit. 4. Hōc diē in dexterā rīpā flūminis erant multa corpora hominum quae armīs spoliāta erant. 5. Dum (*while*) impedimenta in proximum collem portantur,<sup>2</sup> subitō exercitus Gallōrum aderat et agmen Rōmānum oppūgnāvit. 6. In sinistrō cornū hostium erat pater rēgis, insignis senex, quī equum in nostrōs ācritēr incitāvit. 7. Primā lūce aciēs hostium in campō ante castra aderat; ad multam noctem ācritēr dimicāverunt hostēs, nam Gallī nōn minus fortēs quam nostrī erant. 8. Atrōx erat illa caedēs Gallōrum, quī contrā sinistrum cornū fortiter pūgnāverant, sed septimā hōrā in flūmen ā nostrīs fugātī sunt. 9. Multō dūriōrēs sunt hiemēs in eīs partibus quam in Italiā, diēs breviorēs, noctēs longiorēs; quā dē causā itinera nostra erant multō difficiliōra.

**226** 1. The enemy's army is much larger than Caesar's. 2. Across this river, not far from the mountain, is a large band of Gauls. 3. On the next day the enemy suddenly and boldly attacked the Roman army on the march with all their forces. 4. On the left wing of the enemy's line

<sup>1</sup> Declined in full: **senex**, **senis**, **senī**, **senem**, **sene**; **senēs**, **senum**, **senibus**, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Translate as if imperfect.

of battle were the Gallic cavalry. 5. The leader of the Gauls had in his right hand a sword, in his left a shield. 6. The Gauls fought long and fiercely at the foot of the mountain for seven consecutive hours and a large part of the chief men were killed. 7. This fact was announced to the tribes of farther Gaul by fires and by shouting. 8. Within seven days the tribune got together<sup>1</sup> a large band of new soldiers.

## LESSON XXVII

### SECOND or ē CONJUGATION

**227** LEARN the Indicative and the present Infinitive of **habeō**, active and passive (480).

(a) Compare the conjugation of **habeō** carefully with that of **amō** (479). Observe that the only difference is in the stem vowels.

(b) Conjugate **teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentus**, *to hold*.

**228** 1. **Habēs**, **habēbimus**, **habitus est**. 2. **Tenuimus**, **tenuerit**, **tenēbātis**. 3. **Teneor**, **habuit**, **habēberis**. 4. **Habuerat**, **habita erant**, **tenēbar**. 5. **Tenēbis**, **habuērunt**, **habēre**. 6. **Tenērī**, **habētis**, **tenuistī**.

1. You have, we shall hold, we had had. 2. I have held, you will have, you will have had. 3. It is held, we were held, they had. 4. To be held, to have, to hold. 5. We have had, you were having, you had held.

<sup>1</sup> **parō**, **-āre**,

<b>aedificium</b> , -i, n. <i>building</i> , <i>house</i> ( <b>aedificō</b> , 101).	<b>maneō</b> , -ēre, <b>mānsi</b> , <b>mānsū-</b> <b>rus</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>to remain</i> .
<b>aqua</b> , -ae, f. <i>water</i> .	<b>natiō</b> , -ōnis, f. <i>nation</i> .
<b>caelum</b> , -i, n. <i>heaven, sky</i> .	<b>nūntius</b> , -i, m. <i>messenger</i> ( <b>nūntiō</b> , 126).
<b>captivus</b> , -i, m. <i>captive</i> .	<b>regiō</b> , -ōnis, f. <i>region, direc-</i> <i>tion</i> .
<b>contineō</b> ( <b>cum</b> + <b>teneō</b> ), -ēre, -uī, -tentus, <i>to hold back,</i> <i>to keep in check</i> .	<b>Rhēnus</b> , -i, m. <i>the Rhine</i> .
<b>hiberna</b> , -ōrum, n. <i>winter</i> <i>quarters</i> .	<b>sustineō</b> , -ēre, -uī, -tentus ( <b>sub</b> + <b>teneō</b> ), <i>to sustain, with-</i> <i>stand</i> .
<b>imperātor</b> , -ōris, m. <i>com-</i> <i>mander</i> ( <b>imperō</b> , 192).	<b>ventus</b> , i, m. <i>wind</i> .
<b>imperium</b> , -i, n. <i>command,</i> <i>rule</i> .	<b>videō</b> , -ēre, <b>vidī</b> , <b>visus</b> , <i>to</i> <i>see</i> (in the passive, <i>to be</i> <i>seen or to seem</i> ).
<b>impetus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>onset, attack</i> .	

- 230 1. Ii qui superiōribus temporibus illās regiōnēs tenēbant, corpora maiōra habēbant. 2. Ubi primō vēre Rōmānae legiōnes ex prōvinciā flūminī Rhēnō adpropinquāvērunt, multa animālia vidēbantur cum māgnīs capitibus et cornibus. 3. Mulierēs et senēs eārum exterārum natiōnum labōrem māximum facile semper sustinēre vidēbantur; nunc audācter in proximā ripā flūminis ad impedimenta manēbant. 4. Inter captīvōs in hibernīs imperātōris fuerant obsidēs, māter et pater illius rēgis, qui prō amicō populi Rōmāni erat habitus. 5. Ā rēge vėlōx nūntius subitō aderat, qui haec dē cōnsiliō eius nūntiavit: "Hōc locō impetum cōsulis sustinēbit et prō summō imperiō dēcertābit." 6. Tertiō diē imperātor cum māgnō exercitū oppidum bene et fēliciter expūgnāvit; haec rēs hostibus celeriter nūntiāta est. 7. Validus erat ventus qui noctem

<sup>1</sup> As the perfect passive participle of **maneō** is not in use, the future active participle is given. This will be done with all intransitive verbs.

et diem hīs regiōnibus flābat<sup>1</sup> et aqua dē caelō erat multa; itaque imperātor militēs in castrīs et oppidō continēbat. 8. In oppidīs erat neque frūmentum neque argentum, et incolae, egentēs et tristēs, miserē in parvis aedificiīs habitābant. 9. Extrēmā aestāte faciiliore et breviore itinere in ulteriorem prōvinciae partem imperātor properāvit.

- 231** 1. In the most ancient times the Roman armies were much smaller. 2. For many years the power was held by kings who kept the neighboring peoples in check by their foot-soldiers and cavalry. 3. The Romans often fought boldly and successfully with their neighbors and sustained many attacks. 4. The districts which they seized were regarded as<sup>2</sup> Roman land,<sup>3</sup> and the nations whom they subdued as slaves. 5. But the Romans did not always deprive of their<sup>4</sup> lands those whom they had overcome with their arms. 6. In those districts where the winter-quarters of the cavalry were, there was much rain,<sup>5</sup> but at the opening of spring<sup>6</sup> the general hurried with all the army into hither Gaul. 7. At daybreak the enemy prepared to withstand our attack. 8. Their line of battle was very long: on the right wing was their bravest cavalry; on their left also many horsemen were seen.

---

<sup>1</sup> flō, -āre, to blow.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 230, 4.

<sup>3</sup> ager.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>5</sup> Compare 230, 7.

<sup>6</sup> Compare 230, 2.

## LESSON XXVIII

THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE  
OF QUALITY

232

## EXAMPLES

1. **Imperātor bonō animō erat.** *The general was of good courage.*
2. **Erat flūmen altis ripis inter Rōmānōs et hostis.** *There was a river with high banks between the Romans and the enemy.*
3. **Hic vir erat fortis et māgnae auctōritātis.** *This man was brave and very influential.*

(a) Notice that the phrases **bonō animō**, **altis ripis**, **māgnae auctōritātis**, all express some Quality or Characteristic of the noun with which they are connected. They are therefore adjective expressions, so that in the third sentence the genitive is parallel to the adjective **fortis**.

(b) Notice also that in each sentence the ablative or genitive is modified by an adjective.

- 233** *Rule.*—Quality may be expressed by the Genitive, but only when the Genitive is modified by an Adjective.<sup>1</sup>

W. 354; B. 203; AG. 215; H. 440, 3.

- 234** *Rule.*—Quality may also be expressed by the Ablative, but only when the Ablative is modified by an Adjective.<sup>2</sup>

W. 394; B. 224; AG. 251; H. 473, 2.

<sup>1</sup> That is, we may say **vir summae virtūtis**, *a man of the greatest courage*; but we may not say **vir virtūtis**, but **fortis vir**.

<sup>2</sup> There is often no distinction between the genitive and ablative, but for expressions of time, space, number, and measure, the genitive is used, e. g., **mūrus decem pedum**; while for parts of the body and external qualities the ablative is employed, e. g., **puer magnis pedibus**, and sentence 2 above.



## 235

## VOCABULARY

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus (ad + iuvō, 132), <i>to help, assist.</i>	Graecus, -a, -um, <i>Greek, Grecian.</i>
Asia, -ae, f. <i>Asia.</i>	iuvenis, -is, m. <i>a youth (iuventus, 182).</i>
Athēniēnsis, -e, <i>Athenian.</i>	Miltiadēs, -is, m. <i>Miltiades.</i>
auctōritās, -ātis, f. <i>authority, influence.</i>	necessārius, -a, -um, <i>necessary, needful.</i>
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, <i>to increase.</i>	paucī, -ae, -a, <i>few.</i>
barbarus, -a, -um, <i>barbarous, foreign.</i>	Persicus, -a, -um, <i>Persian.</i>
Chersonēsus, -i, f. <i>the Chersonesus.</i> <sup>1</sup>	saepe, <i>often.</i>
Eurōpa, -ae, f. <i>Europe.</i>	suus, -a, -um, <i>his (her, its, their) own.</i>
fortitūdō, -inis, f. <i>bravery</i>	timeō, -ēre, -uī, <i>to fear.</i>
	(fortis, 181, fortiter, 111).

## 236

1. Erat olim inter Athēniēnsis iuvenis summae fortitudinis et magnō corpore, cui nōmen erat Miltiadī. 2. Ille imperātor cum magnā manū et nāvibus multis impetum barbarōrum in Chersonēsō fēliciter sustinēbat. 3. Hī barbarī hominēs vidēbantur magnā virtūte esse magnumque amōrem patriae habēre. 4. Paucīs diēbus omnem illam regiōnem imperātor occupāverat et incolās armīs privāverat; iam bonōs armābat et rēbus necessariis adiuvābat, omnia magnā cūrā administrābat. 5. Ibi cum exercitū multōs annōs manēbat et erat inter eās natiōnes magnae auctōritātis. 6. Postea patriam suam cōnsiliō et virtūte saepe adiuvābat et augēbat. 7. Ab hostibus Atheniēnsium semper timēbātur, ab amicis suis et eōrum magnoperē amābātur. 8. Māximē eius auctōritāte et cōnsiliō adiūtī sunt Atheniēnsēs in Persicō bellō, quō tempore Miltiadēs illum Persicum rēgem superāvit. 9. Nēmō eā victōriā clārior apud Graecōs erat quam Miltiadēs,

<sup>1</sup> A peninsula of Thrace on the northwest of the Hellespont.

nēmō māiōris auctōritātis; itaque Atheniēnsēs ei multās nāvis dedērunt. 10. His nāvibus paucās urbēs, quae barbarōs cōpiīs iūverant, expūgnāvit. Sed postea timuit cōpiās rēgis et Athēnās<sup>1</sup> properāvit.

- 237** 1. The general is a person of great influence; within ten days he will have an army of seven legions. 2. He has increased his forces, which are already many more than in the former war. 3. They have undergone<sup>2</sup> much labor and are ready to remain the entire winter far from their native country. 4. They have built a seven-foot wall and will gladly fight by reason of their lack of all things needful. 5. The inhabitants of those regions are men of great courage and boldness. 6. The trees are higher than those which we see in our part of Europe, but the houses are very low. 7. The old men are of greater authority, but the young men are feared by the enemy. 8. On the march in Germany they often saw animals with large horns but small bodies.

---

## LESSON XXIX

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

- 238** LEARN the Present System, active and passive, of the Subjunctive of *sum* (485), *amō* (479), and *habeo* (480).

---

<sup>1</sup> *To Athens.* With names of towns the accusative alone expresses the limit of motion, 425.

<sup>2</sup> *sustineō.*

(a) Notice carefully the following facts:

(1) That the personal endings of the Subjunctive are the same as those of the Indicative.

(2) But that in the present tense the stem **amā-** of the First Conjugation is changed to **amē-**, and that the stem **habē-** of the Second Conjugation becomes **habea-**.

(3) And that the tense sign of the Imperfect is **-re-**. Compare the tense sign of the Imperfect Indicative.

### VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

239

#### EXAMPLES

- |                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Hunc laudēmus.</b>       | <i>Let us praise this man.</i>       |
| 2. <b>Hodiē nē pūgnēmus.</b>   | <i>Let us not fight to-day.</i>      |
| 3. <b>Haec dōna habeat.</b>    | <i>Let him have these gifts.</i>     |
| 4. <b>Nē haec dōna habeat.</b> | <i>Let him not have these gifts.</i> |

(a) Notice that the Subjunctives in these sentences express the Will of the speaker that something shall or shall not be done. This subjunctive that expresses the will is called the *Volitive Subjunctive* (**volō, to will**). In the third person it is sometimes called also the *Jussive Subjunctive*<sup>1</sup> (**iubeō, to order**).

240

**Rule.**—The Volitive Subjunctive states the action as willed.

W. 481-482; B. 273-275; AG. 266; H. 559.

241

### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

#### EXAMPLES

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Haec habeāmus.</b>  | <i>May we have this.</i>     |
| 2. <b>Nē haec habeat.</b> | <i>May he not have this.</i> |

<sup>1</sup> It should be observed that only the First and Third persons of the Present Subjunctive are ordinarily used in this construction. If we wish to translate into Latin "Praise him," we usually use the imperative, **hunc laudā, 355**; for the negative addressed to the second person, "Do not praise him," the Latin employs a circumlocution which will be given later (**356**).

3. **Utinam fortis esset.** *Would that he were brave.*  
 4. **Utinam nē hostēs essent.** *Would that they were not enemies.*

(a) Notice that here the subjunctives express the Wish or Desire of the speaker that something may or may not be done. This subjunctive is called the *Optative Subjunctive* (*optō, to wish, desire*). Compare with the Volitive Subjunctive.

(b) Notice also that the Present tense refers to Future, the Imperfect to Present time.

(c) In the Optative Subjunctive all three persons may be used. Compare the Volitive Subjunctive.

(d) **Utinam** is often used with the Present, regularly with the Imperfect, of the Optative Subjunctive.

- 242** *Rule.*—The Optative Subjunctive states the action as a wish or desire.

W. 484; B. 279; AG. 267; H. 558.

- 243** 1. Haec laudēmus; frātre[m] suum laudet. 2. Haec habeamus; nē pūgnent. 3. Utinam fortēs essētis; utinam laudārentur. 4. Dūcem laudētis; utinam nē pūgnārētis. 5. Nē haec habeat; bonī sīmus.

- 244** 1. Let them be slaves; may they be free. 2. Would that you were being praised; let us praise them. 3. Would that we were not fighting against them; let him have the books. 4. May we have the gifts; let us not be slaves.

**245** VOCABULARY

<b>fidēs, -eī, f.</b> <i>faith, pledge.</i>	<b>memoria, -ae, f.</b> <i>memory.</i>
<b>hodiē (hōc + diē), adv.</b> <i>to-day.</i>	<b>moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, to</b> <i>move; signa movēre, to</i>
<b>māiores, -um, m.</b> <i>elders, forefathers.</i>	<i>advance; castra movēre, to break camp.</i>

**nē**, adv. and conj. *not*.  
**prohibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus (prō  
 + habeō), *to hinder, pre-*  
*vent, keep from.*

**rēs publica**, **rei publicae**,<sup>1</sup> f.  
*state.*

**sī**, conj. *if.*

**signum**, -i, n. *signal, stand-*  
*ard.*

**spēs**, -ei, f. *hope.*

**tamen**, adv. *still, neverthe-*  
*less.*

**tēlum**, -ī, n. *weapon, spear,*  
*javelin.* (Compare **hasta**,  
**arma**, 111.)

**tum**, adv. *then, at that time.*

**utinam**, adv., used with op-  
 tative subjunctive.

**vix**, adv. *hardly, with diffi-*  
*culty.*

- 246** 1. Nōn sine spē, mīlitēs, sīmus; nē hodiē castra moveāmus. 2. Vidēmus, iuvenēs, aciem equitātumque hostium; nē timeāmus impetum eōrum. 3. Sed sī fortissimē cum eis pūgnābimus, clāra victōria nostra erit. Prohibeāmus hostīs ab aquā et ā rēbus necessariis. 4. Ubi signum ab imperātore dabitur, sīna moveāmus et castra quam<sup>2</sup> celerrimē oppūgnēmus. 5. Bona spēs victōriae nostris mīlitibus est. Sī eōs fugābimus, nostra auctōritās apud omnīs nātiōnēs māxima erit. 6. Senēs et mulierēs omnēs cum suis impedimentis in castra properent quae nōn longē ab hāc ripā absunt. Difficillimis ripis est hōc flūmen; itaque barbarī castris vix adpropinquābunt. 7. Utinam hodiē eum animum habērēmus quem māiōrēs nostrī paucis ante annis nōn longē ab his locis habuērunt. 8. Semper, civēs, memoriā teneātis ea quae māiōrēs vestri prō rē publicā fecērunt.<sup>3</sup> 9. Utinam nē impetum Gallōrum timērētis. Sī māiōra corpora et longiōra tēla habent, nōn fortiōrēs sunt. 10. Sī virtūtem, fidem, fortitudinemque māiōrum memoriā tenēbitis, audācius impetum hostium sustinēbitis.

<sup>1</sup> Each part is declined separately: Dat. **rei publicae**: Acc. **rem publicam**, etc.

<sup>2</sup> **quam** with the superlative of adjectives and adverbs means *as possible*.

<sup>3</sup> Perf. indic. of **faciō**, *to do*.

- 247 1. Would that you remembered to-day all the things which our ancestors did<sup>1</sup> for our native land. 2. They freed their state from the fear of the barbarians, who had come against it with a great force. 3. The leader who held the command was a man of great foresight.<sup>2</sup> Would that he were present to-day. 4. Let us not remain longer in this place, but break camp to-day and hurry into the neighboring mountains. 5. The enemy's commander is a man of the greatest bravery and influence; still our men have good hope of victory. 6. If we shall keep the enemy away from our supplies, our allies will soon aid us. 7. May we soon advance a long distance from this camp; then we shall not be kept from water and supplies. 8. May Caesar's influence increase the bravery of his own auxiliary troops.

---

## LESSON XXX

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES

#### PURPOSE CLAUSES

248

#### EXAMPLES

1. Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) *They are fighting (have fought) to be free.*  
ut liberi sint.
2. Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) *They are fighting (have fought) that they may not be slaves.*  
nē servi sint.

---

<sup>1</sup> 246, 8.

<sup>2</sup> cōsiliū.

3. *Pūgnābunt ut liberī sint.* *They will fight to be free.*
4. *Pūgnābunt nē servī sint.* *They will fight that they may not be slaves.*
5. *Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt) ut liberī essent.* *They were fighting (fought) to be free.*
6. *Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt) nē servī essent.* *They were fighting (fought) that they might not be slaves.*

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Purpose of the leading verb; also that the conjunction *ut* introduces positive clauses, *nē* negative.

(b) Notice further that when the point of view of the leading verb is Present<sup>1</sup> or Future, the Present Subjunctive<sup>2</sup> follows; when the point of view is Past,<sup>3</sup> the Imperfect Subjunctive is used in the dependent clause.

(c) In a dependent clause the subjunctive is said to follow the tense of the principal verb, which fixes the point of view. This relation is called the *Sequence of Tenses*.

**249** *Rule.*—The Subjunctive is used with *ut*, *that*, *nē*, *that not*, to express Purpose.

W. 506; B. 282; AG. 317; H. 568.

<sup>1</sup> The point of view of the definite perfect, in English, *I have fought*, is the same as that of the present tense; but that of the indefinite, in English, *I fought*, is past like the imperfect.

<sup>2</sup> The student should remember that the present subjunctive in independent sentences (239, 241) may express future time, so that its use in clauses depending on a future verb is natural. As it also may have a present meaning, it does double duty.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., imperfect or indefinite perfect.

## EXAMPLES

1. *Nostri tam fortiter pugnabant (pugnāvērunt) ut hostis fugent.* *Our soldiers are fighting (have fought) so bravely that they are putting the enemy to flight.*
2. *Nostri tam fortiter pugnabant (pugnāvērunt) ut nōn superārentur.* *Our men were fighting (fought) so bravely that they were not conquered.*

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Result of the action of the leading verb; also that *ut* introduces positive results, *ut nōn* negative.

(b) Compare these with purpose clauses above and notice that *nē* is used only with negative purpose, *ut nōn* only with negative result clauses; notice also that in result clauses, as in those of purpose, the present tense follows the present point of view, the imperfect the past.

251 *Rule.*—The Subjunctive is used with *ut*, *that*, *ut nōn*, *that not*, to express Result.

W. 519; B. 284; AG. 319; H. 570.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 252 <i>celeritās, -ātis, f. speed.</i>   | <i>porta, -ae, f. a gate.</i>             |
| <i>cūr, adv. why?</i>                    | <i>portus, -ūs, m. harbor.</i>            |
| <i>enim, conj. for (nam, 138).</i>       | <i>postquam, conj. after.<sup>2</sup></i> |
| <i>mille,<sup>1</sup> adj. thousand.</i> | <i>statim, adv. immediately.</i>          |
| <i>multitūdō, -inis, f. crowd.</i>       | <i>tantus, -a, -um, adj. so great,</i>    |
| <i>Nūma, -ae, m. Numa.</i>               | <i>such.</i>                              |
| <i>orō, -āre, to ask, beg.</i>           | <i>terreō, -ēre, terrui, territus,</i>    |
| <i>passus, -ūs, m. pace (about</i>       | <i>to frighten.</i>                       |
| <i>five feet).</i>                       | <i>ut, conj. that.</i>                    |

<sup>1</sup> *Mille* in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. The plural is a neuter noun and is declined: Nom. Acc. Voc. *mīlla*, Gen. *mīllum*, Dat. Abl. *mīllibus*.

<sup>2</sup> Used with the perfect indicative,



**253** 1. Cūr senēs iuvenēsque ex portis oppidī tantā celeritāte adpropinquābant? 2. Hibernīs nostrīs adpropinquābant ut ōrārent nē in numerō hostium habērentur. 3. Postquam sīgnum datum est, nostrī castra statim mōvērunt; barbarī ita terrēbantur ut in oppidō nōn continērentur. 4. Omnēs quī eum locum habitābant, nē frūmentō prohibērentur, māgnā celeritāte decem milia passuum<sup>1</sup> in finīs sociōrum properābant. 5. Proximō diē māgna multitūdō Gallōrum locum castrīs magis idōneum occupāvit; tum Caesar cum parte equitātus properāvit ut hunc locum oppūgnāret. 6. Gallī in memoriā tenēbant omnia quae māiōrēs fēcērunt ut patria libera esset; itaque dūx eōrum māgnam spem victōriae habuit. 7. Utinam tāntam fidem habērēmus ut in hāc rē publicā nēmō malus esset. 8. Māiōrem partem cōpiārum continēbat imperātor in hibernīs, quae septem milia passuum ab eō oppidō aberant sed proxima portuī. 9. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, cōsul omnia auxilia in sinistrō, sociōs in dextrō cornū tantā celeritāte conlocāvit, ut hostēs statim terrērentur.

**254** 1. The Gauls often fought that they might not be deprived of their towns and lands. 2. The Romans built their city on hills in order that it might not be suddenly attacked by the enemy. 3. The city was small in the time of Romulus, the first king, but it was afterward enlarged so that it was the greatest city in Italy. 4. The Romans were men of such bravery and courage that they were not often conquered by the enemy. 5. Romulus, in order that he might increase the number of citizens, gave citizenship to many from the neighboring peoples. 6. The next king, whose name was Numa, was very different from Romulus (dative); for he liked peace more than war. 7. Why did consuls, rather than<sup>2</sup> kings, hold the power afterward?

<sup>1</sup> mille passūs, a Roman *mile*, about 5,000 feet.

<sup>2</sup> prō.

*The Persian Wars*

Posterō annō Dārēus, rēx Persārum, lēgātōs in Graeciam misit,<sup>1</sup> quī rēgis nōmine terram et aquam ā cīvitātibus Graeciae postulābant; simulque alii lēgātī maritimās urbēs Asiae nāvis longās parāre iubēbant.<sup>2</sup> Brevi tempore hae urbēs nāvis, quās rēx eīs imperāverat,<sup>3</sup> parāvērunt. Lēgātīs, quī in Graeciam missi sunt,<sup>4</sup> ā multis cīvitātibus data sunt omnia quae rēx postulāverat; sed contrā eās quae terram et aquam nōn dederant, Dārēus māximō exercitū pūgnāre parāvit. Itaque imperātōrēs eius, Dātis et Artaphernēs, plūrimās nāvis adversus<sup>5</sup> Eretriam<sup>6</sup> et Athēnās dūxērunt, quās urbēs Dārēus expūgnāre atque incolās in servitūtem redigere<sup>7</sup> māximē cupīvit.<sup>8</sup> Eretria sex<sup>9</sup> diēs āb Persis frustrā<sup>10</sup> oppūgnābātur; sed septimō diē duo cīvēs urbem hostibus prōdidērunt,<sup>11</sup> postquam multī utrimque<sup>12</sup> occīsī sunt.<sup>13</sup> Hostēs omnia vastāvērunt atque incolās, ut<sup>14</sup> Dārēus imperāverat, in servitūtem redēgērunt.<sup>15</sup> Post paucōs diēs ad Atticam nāvigāvērunt hostēs ut Athēniēnsīs quoque superārent. In campum Marathōnium,<sup>16</sup> quī locus totius Atticae opportunissimus<sup>17</sup> erat equitibus, cōpiās ē nāvibus edūxērunt.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. act. of *mittō*, to send.

<sup>2</sup> *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussus*, to order.

<sup>3</sup> See 192.

<sup>4</sup> Perf. indic. pass. of *mittō*.

<sup>5</sup> Prep. with the accu., *against*; compare *contrā*.

<sup>6</sup> A city in Euboea.

<sup>7</sup> To reduce.

<sup>8</sup> Perf. ind. act. of *cupiō*, to wish.

<sup>9</sup> Six.

<sup>10</sup> Adv., *in vain*.

<sup>11</sup> Perf. indic. act. of *prōdō*, to betray.

<sup>12</sup> Adv., *on both sides*.

<sup>13</sup> Perf. indic. pass. of *occidō*, to kill.

<sup>14</sup> *As*.

<sup>15</sup> Perf. ind. act. of *redigere*.

<sup>16</sup> *Of Marathon*.

<sup>17</sup> *opportunus*, *sited*.

<sup>18</sup> Perf. indic. act. of *ēdūcō*, to lead out, to disembark.

## LESSON XXXI

THIRD OR *ě* CONJUGATION

## PRESENT SYSTEM

**256** LEARN the Present System of **regō**, 481, in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation end in *-ě* (*i*). Compare this with the stems of the First and Second Conjugations.

(b) Notice also that the Future Indicative is not formed by the tense sign *-bī-* (*-bē*) as in **amābō** and **habēbō**, but that the vowel is *-a* in the First Person Singular and *-e* in the other persons. Compare also the formation of the Present Subjunctive **regam** with **amem** and **habeam**.

**257** Conjugate the following: **dīcō**, *to say*; **dūcō**, *to lead*; **mittō**, *to send*.

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

**258**

## EXAMPLES

1. **Dūcī persuādent (persuāsērunt) ut auxilium mitterat.** *They persuade (have persuaded) the leader to send help.*
2. **Lēgātis imperābit ut bellum gerant.** *He will order his lieutenants to carry on the war.*
3. **Eum ōrābant (ōrāvērunt) nē oppidum oppugnāret.** *They were asking (asked) him not to attack the town.*

(a) Notice that in each sentence the dependent clause is a direct object of the verb, that is, that the clause is a substantive; moreover, that each dependent clause expresses also the purpose of the subject of the leading

verb. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Purpose*<sup>1</sup> and are used with verbs whose action looks toward the future.

(b) Notice further that the sequence of Tenses is the same as in simple Purpose Clauses, 248, that is, that the Present Subjunctive follows the present point of view, the Imperfect the past.

- 259 **Rule.**—Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used after verbs whose action looks toward the future—that is, verbs of Will or Aim.

W. 511; B. 295; AG. 331; H. 564 ff.

## 260

## VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, m. <i>arrival</i> .	Ēpirus, -ī, f. <i>Epirus</i> (a district of Northwestern Greece).
āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (ā + mittō), <i>to lose</i> .	gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, <i>to carry on, perform</i> .
Appius, -ī, m. <i>Appius</i> .	iterum, adv. <i>again</i> .
atque, āc, <sup>2</sup> conj. <i>and</i> .	lĕgātīō, -ōnis, f. <i>embassy</i> (lĕgātus, 138).
Cineas, -ae, <sup>3</sup> m. <i>Cineas</i> .	mittō, -ere, misi, missus, <i>to send</i> .
classis, -is, f. <i>fleet</i> .	modus, -ī, m. <i>manner</i> .
Claudius, -ī, m. <i>Claudius</i> .	persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsūrus, <i>to persuade</i> (with dat. of the person).
committō, -ere, -misi, -missus (cum + mittō), <i>to engage</i> (in battle).	
dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, <i>to say</i> .	

<sup>1</sup> While Substantive Clauses of Purpose are generally used as objects of the leading verb, they are occasionally employed as subjects of Passive Verbs, e. g., *ut bellum gerant lĕgātis imperātum est*, *That they should carry on the war was the command to the lieutenants*.

<sup>2</sup> *atque* is used before vowels and consonants, *āc* only before consonants.

<sup>3</sup> A Greek name declined like any noun of the First Declension except in the nominative.

**petō, -ere, petivī (-iī),<sup>1</sup> peti-** **renūntiō, -āre (re + nūntiō,**  
*tus, to seek, ask.* **126), to carry back**

**prīmum, adv. first, for the** **word.**  
*first time.*

**pūgna, -ae, f. battle (pūgnō,** **Tarentinus, -ī, m. a citizen**  
*101).* **of Tarentum (a city in**  
*Southern Italy).*

**Pyrrhus, -ī, m. Pyrrhus (King of Epirus).**

- 261** 1. Tarentinī ōrābant Rōmānōs, nē portum suum cum nāvibus intrārent; sed Rōmānī māgnam classem mīsērunt. 2. Itaque Tarentinī per lēgatiōnem petunt ā Pyrrhō, Ēpirī rēge, ut auxilium contrā Rōmānōs mittat. 3. Eī persuāsērunt ut statim māgnō exercitū adiuvāret; tum prīmum Rōmānī cum hoste exterō dīmīcāvērunt. 4. Hī primā pūgnā, quam post adventum Pyrrhī cum eō commīsērunt, ita terrēbantur ut facile superāret rēx ille. 5. Tantam multitudinem hominum hōc in proeliō āmisit Pyrrhus ut diceret, “Sī iterum hōc modō Rōmānōs superāverō, bellum diūtius gerere nōn poterō.”<sup>2</sup> 6. Lēgātī, quī dē captivīs missī sunt, summō honōre ab Pyrrhō habēbantur; captīvōs statim Rōmam<sup>3</sup> mīsīt. 7. Nam ille omnia faciēbat<sup>4</sup> nē grāvis Rōmānīs Tarentinīsque vidērētur. 8. Postēā Pyrrhus lēgātum, Cīneam nōmine, ad urbem Rōmam mīsīt, eō cōnsiliō, ut pāx cum Rōmānīs esset; multum argentum portābat ut dōnīs persuādēret Rōmānīs. 9. Sed Appius Claudius, vir clārissimus, civibus persuāsīt nē cum rēge pācem cōfirmārent. 10. Itaque Cīneas Pyrrhō renūntiāvit: “Urbs Rōma templum, patria rēgum, hominēs rēgēs esse videntur.”

- 262** 1. An embassy is sent by the Romans to ask Pyrrhus to liberate the prisoners. 2. Pyrrhus ordered the Roman

<sup>1</sup> A number of verbs have two forms in the perfect active, e. g., **petivī** or **petīī**.

<sup>2</sup> Future indic. of **possum, to be able**.

<sup>3</sup> Compare **236, 10**.

<sup>4</sup> *Did.*

prisoners to be liberated and sent to the city. 3. You will not persuade the Romans to establish peace, if you remain in Italy. 4. In the first battle in which he engaged after his arrival, Pyrrhus was victorious,<sup>1</sup> but he lost many men. 5. He said, "If I fight again in this way, I shall no longer have an army." 6. I hope that (utinam) there will not be a victory of this sort again. 7. They persuaded Pyrrhus not to fight again on that day. 8. Cineas captured more cities by eloquence<sup>2</sup> than by arms. 9. The chief man of the embassy asked the Romans to make peace with the king, but Appius persuaded them to carry on the war much longer.

## LESSON XXXII

## THIRD CONJUGATION (Continued)

## PERFECT SYSTEM

- 263** LEARN the Perfect System of **regō**, **481**, in the Indicative,<sup>3</sup> and review the Perfect System in the Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations.

**264**

## VOCABULARY

**Africa**, -ae, f. *Africa*.**agō**, -ere, **ēgi**, **āctus**, to drive, do.<sup>4</sup>**Carthāginiēnsis**, -e, *Carthaginian*.**cōgō**, -ere, **coēgi**, **coāctus**

(cum + agō), to drive together, to compel.

**condiciō**, -ōnis, f. *condition*, terms.<sup>1</sup> **vīctor**.<sup>2</sup> **vōce**.<sup>3</sup> The perfect and pluperfect Subjunctives and the other moods will be learned later.<sup>4</sup> **grātiās agere**, to pay thanks, to thank. Compare **grātiām habēre**, to feel grateful.

contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, to exert one's self, hasten.	quod, conj. because.
deinde, <sup>1</sup> adv. then, second- ly.	reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (re + dō) to return.
dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, to lead (dūx, 144).	Rēgulus, -ī, m. <i>Regulus</i> (a Roman general).
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy, shameful.	rūrsus, adv. again.
ingēns, -tis, huge.	senātus, -ūs, m. senate.
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Lace- daemonian.	sententia, -ae, f. opinion.
peritus, -a, -um, skilled, ex- perienced.	tot (indeclinable), so many.
	trādūco, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, to lead across (trāns + dūcō).
	ūnus, -a, -um, <sup>2</sup> one, a single.

- 265** 1. Rēgulus, princeps Rōmānōrum, exercitum in Afri-  
cam trādūxit ut ibi bellum gereret. 2. Ille erat vir sum-  
mae virtūtis; māgnā spē victōriae contrā hostis contendit.  
3. Mox multīs pūgnis Carthāginiēnsis ita superāvit ut  
pācem petere cōgerentur. Senātus Rōmānus illi grātiās  
ēgit quod rēs in Africā bene gesserat. 4. Rēgulus dūris-  
simās condiciōnēs dabat; deinde Carthāginiēnsēs ā Lace-  
daemoniis petiērunt ut imperātōrem bellī peritissimum  
mitterent. 5. Ab eō Rōmānī ingentī clāde superāti sunt  
et māgnam partem exercitūs āmisērunt. Inter captīvōs  
erat Rēgulus. 6. Sed proximō annō bellum fēliciter rū-  
sus gerēbant Rōmānī et post multa mala<sup>3</sup> hostēs Rēgulum  
captivum Rōmam<sup>4</sup> mittere cōgerentur, ut per eum pācem  
peterent. 7. Postquam eum in senātum dūxērunt Rō-  
mānī, eī imperāvērunt ut sententiam dē pāce et captivīs  
Rōmānīs dīceret. 8. Ille ōrābat nē tot milia captivōrum  
propter ūnum senem et paucōs Rōmānōs redderent ut

<sup>1</sup> Always a dissyllable.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive sing. ūnīus, dat. sing. ūnī; otherwise declined like  
bonus. Compare tōtus, 177.

<sup>3</sup> mala: neut. plur. used as a substantive.

<sup>4</sup> Compare 236, 10.

indigna pax cum hostibus esset. 9. Hęc sententiā mōti sunt Rōmāni ut bellum multō ācrius administrārent; sed Rēgulus ā Carthāginiēnsibus indignissimō modō est necātus.

- 266** 1. The Senate ordered Regulus to lead an army across into Africa. 2. Regulus led an army across into Africa with the design of carrying on war with the Carthaginians. 3. In what manner did Regulus carry on the war after his arrival? 4. Regulus was a general experienced in war and he quickly compelled the Carthaginians to sue for peace. 5. The Senate thanked Regulus, and then asked him to give<sup>1</sup> his opinion with regard to the conditions of peace. 6. He said: "It is not best to return the prisoners, but to send me back to Africa again." 7. Regulus was a man of great patriotism and great courage; the manner of his death was most sad. 8. Regulus was held in the highest honor by the Romans on account of his many victories and his great spirit.

---

### LESSON XXXIII

#### THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō)

- 267** LEARN the conjugation of **capiō, 482**, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that in the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, and in the Present Subjunctive the -i of the

---

<sup>1</sup> dicō.



stem is retained whenever it is followed by another vowel.

## 268

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

1. **Efficit (effēcit) ut socii omnia dūci renūntient.** *He secures (has secured) the result that the allies report everything to the leader, or He succeeds (has succeeded) in having the allies, etc.*
2. **Efficiet ut socii omnia dūci renūntient.** *He will succeed in having, etc.*
3. **Impetrābat (impetrāvit) ab eō ut castra nōn movēret.** *He was obtaining (obtained) from him the result that he did not break camp.*

(a) Compare these clauses with Substantive Clauses of Purpose (258), and notice that these also bear the relation of substantives to leading verbs as well as express the result actually obtained in each case. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Result* and are used with verbs expressing the accomplishment of a result.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Notice that the sequence of tenses is the same as in all other Result or Purpose Clauses.

## 269

**Rule.**—Substantive Clauses of Result with *ut* (negative *ut nōn*) fill out or complete what is implied in the leading verb.

W. 521-526; B. 297; AG. 332; H. 571.

---

<sup>1</sup> A Substantive Clause of Result may also be the Subject of the leading verb, e. g., *impetrātum est ut omnia renūntiārentur*. *The result obtained was that everything was reported.*

270

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUIN, *that not*

## EXAMPLES

1. Nōn dubitō quin socii haec renūntient. *I do not doubt that the allies are reporting this.*
2. Nōn dubitābo quin socii haec renūntient. *I shall not doubt that the allies will report this.*
3. Nōn erat dubium quin socii haec renūntiarent. *There was no doubt that the allies reported this.*
4. Nōn dēterrēbantur hostēs quin in finis sociōrum contenderent. *The enemy were not deterred from hurrying into the lands of the allies.*

271

*Rule.*—Substantive clauses introduced by *quin* are used depending on a negative verb, or verbal expression, of Doubting, Hindering, and the like.

W. 575-579; B. 298; AG. 332, *g*; H. 595-596.

272

## VOCABULARY

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| clam, adv. <i>secretly</i> .   | dēnique, adv. <i>finally</i> .  |
| Cunctātor, -ōris, m. <i>The Delayer</i> (a name applied to Fabius).  | dēterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -itus (dē + terreō, 252), <i>to frighten away, deter</i> . |
| cupiō, -ere, -ivi (-iī), -itus, <i>to desire</i> .                   | dubitō, -āre, <i>to doubt</i> .   |
| dēducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus (dē + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead away</i> . | efficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (ē + faciō), <i>to accomplish, bring about</i> .      |
| dēfendō, -ere, -di, dēfēnsus, <i>to defend</i> .                     | Fabius, -i, m. <i>Fabius</i> .  |
|  | faciō, -ere, fēci, factus, <sup>1</sup> <i>to do, make</i> .                        |

<sup>1</sup> The irregular passive will be given later; but compounds of *faciō* which like *efficiō* change a to i have a regular passive, *efficior*, etc.

**fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugitūrus, Saguntum, -i, n.** *Saguntum to flee.* (a city in Spain).

**Hannibal, -alis, m.** *Hannibal.* **tergum, -i, n.** *back.*

**licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum** **trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (trāns**  
*est (impersonal), it is per-* **+ dō), to hand over, be-**  
*mitted.* *tray.*

**quīn, conj.** *but that, from.* **uter, utra, utrum,** *which of*  
**ratiō, -ōnis, f.** *way, reason.* *two?*<sup>1</sup>

- 273** 1. Deinde postquam Saguntum ā Carthāginiēnsibus armīs captum est, statim lēgatiō in Africam missa est, cūius princeps erat Fabius. 2. Fabius effēcit ut in Africam mitterētur. “Hīc,” dīxit senātūī Carthāginiēnsium, “bellum et pācem portō. Utrum vōbīs<sup>2</sup> optimum vidētur, habēre licet.” 3. Nōn dubitābat Fabius hōc bellō quīn novam bellī ratiōnem capere melius esset. 4. Itaque morā rem pūblicam dēfendit: sī hostēs terga dabant atque fugiēbant, ad eōs contendit; sī pūgnāre cupiēbant, Fabius agmen dēdūxit. 5. Hōc modō effēcit ut Cunc-tātōris nōmen caperet et summus peritissimusque dūx laudārētur. 6. Nōn dubium erat quīn Fabius rem publicam morā servāret. 7. Tamen dūx Carthāginiēnsium nōn dēterrēbātur quīn bellum māgnā cum virtūte cele-ritāteque gereret. 8. Tarentinī iuvenēs, ut urbem Carthāginiēnsibus trāderent, ad Hannibalem contendērunt et eum dē cōnsiliō suō certiōrem fēcērunt.<sup>3</sup> 9. Hannibal iuvenibus persuāsit ut pecora Carthāginiēnsium, quae in agrīs erant, ad urbem agerent. 10. Id saepe fēcērunt; dēnique Hannibal militēsque eius cum iuvenibus portīs clam adpropinquāvērunt atque urbem intrābant.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive sing. in all genders **utrīus**; dat. sing. **utrī**. Compare the demonstrative pronouns (123, 135).

<sup>2</sup> *To you.*

<sup>3</sup> **eum certiōrem facere,** *to inform him.*

- 274** 1. There was no doubt that Fabius was managing affairs well by his policy of delay.<sup>1</sup> 2. The soldiers were not deterred by fear of the enemy from hastening in line of battle to the town. 3. He made the enemy turn their backs and flee in great haste. 4. Hannibal ordered the young men to drive the flocks to the city-gates. 5. Finally Hannibal succeeded in<sup>2</sup> entering the city secretly with his soldiers. 6. The Carthaginians desired to make war, because they had no doubt that Hannibal was a more skilful general than Fabius. 7. "Again a victory of this sort, and I shall have made an end of the war." 8. "The Romans also have a general skilled in war. We have lost the city in the same<sup>3</sup> way in which we took it."

---

## LESSON XXXIV

### FOURTH OR -I CONJUGATION

- 275** LEARN the conjugation of **audiō, 483**, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation ends with -i, and compare this with the stems of the other Conjugations. Observe that verbs like **capiō, 483**, have a number of forms similar to those of the Fourth Conjugation, but that the stem vowels differ, as is shown by the Present Infinitives.

(b) Notice that the Tense Sign of the Future Indica-

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate simply, *by delay*.

<sup>2</sup> *efficere ut*.

<sup>3</sup> *eōdem*.

tive in verbs of the Third and Fourth Conjugations is -e- (-a-), but in verbs of the First and Second -bi- (-be-).

## 276

## VOCABULARY

**anteā**, adv. *before*.

**Antiochus**, -ī, m. *Antiochus*.

**cōgnōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to find out, to become acquainted with*.

**dēdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus (dē + dō), *to give up*.

**Hispānia**, -ae, f. *Spain*.

**impediō**, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itus, *to impede, hinder*.

**iniūria**, -ae, f. *injury, wrong*.

**opera**, -ae, f. *labor*.<sup>1</sup>

**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, *to drive*.

**relinquō**, -ere, -liquī, -lictus, *to leave behind*.

**sciō**, **scīre**, **scīvī**, **scītus**, *to know (a fact)*.

**simul**, adv. *at the same time*.

**sub**, prep. with accu. and abl. *under*.<sup>2</sup>

**Syria**, -ae, f. *Syria*.

**veniō**, -ire, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, *to come*.

- 277** 1. Hannibal puer ā patre petivit ut cum exercitū Carthāginiēnsī in Hispāniam venīre licēret. 2. "Nōn prohibēbō," dixit pater, "quīn ad castra mea veniās, sī fidem quam postulō dederis." 3. Hannibal, pūgnae avidissimus, equitibus imperāvit ut dē adventū hostium cōgnōscerent. 4. Nōn dubitāvit quīn eōs facile fugāret; sed neque numerum hostium neque ratiōnem pūgnae scīvīt. 5. Agmen hostium tantā celeritāte sub montem vēnit ut Hannibal neque iter impedīret neque locum castris idōneum caperet. 6. Posterō diē ab Rōmānīs in aciē diū feliciterque pūgnātum est ut hostēs pellerentur. 7. Lēgātī ad urbem vēnērunt ut senātūī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent simulque peterent ut captivī redderentur. 8. Impetrā-

<sup>1</sup> **operam dare**, *to give attention to, to take pains*.

<sup>2</sup> **sub** with the accusative denotes motion to a place, **sub montem**, *to the foot of the mountain*; with the ablative rest in a place, **sub monte**, *at the foot of the mountain*. Compare **in**.

vērunt lēgātī ut captīvī et obsidēs quōs Rōmānīs dederant sine morā redderentur. 9. Postquam Hannibal in Ītaliā rēs bene gessit, in Africam nāvigāvit ut patriam quoque dēfenderet hostisque ex eā pelleret. 10. Postea Hannibal Africam clam reliquit et ad rēgem Antiochum in Syriam fūgit, nē Rōmānīs dēderētur. 11. Eīs partibus et sub eō caelō fuit eōdem<sup>1</sup> animō, quō anteā, ac semper operam dedit, ut Rōmānīs iniūriam faceret.

- 278** 1. Hannibal came into Italy in order that he might bring injury upon the Roman nation. 2. The Romans could<sup>2</sup> not keep Hannibal from leading his army across into Italy. 3. They could<sup>2</sup> not hinder his approach;<sup>3</sup> but after he came to the foot of the mountains which are not far from Rome, they sent Fabius against him with the greatest speed. 4. No one doubted that Hannibal was a greater general than Fabius; but the latter kept him from besieging the city. 5. He always made an effort to become acquainted with the enemy's method of warfare. 6. After Hannibal left Africa, he came to the king of Syria, where he remained many years. 7. Ambassadors came, who asked that their general might be allowed to leave Italy with his wounded.

---

## LESSON XXXV

### REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

- 279** REVIEW the Indicative, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of the four conjugations (479-483).

---

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of *idem*, *the same*.

<sup>2</sup> *poterant*.

<sup>3</sup> *iter*.

## 280

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

1. **Equitēs praemittit quī** *He sends forward horsemen*  
**videant.** *to see (who are to see).*
2. **Equitēs praemisit quō celerius imperātor haec** *He sent horsemen forward*  
**audiret.** *that the general might*  
*hear this the quicker.*

(a) Notice that in the first sentence the Relative **quī** introduces the Purpose Clause and is equivalent to **ut eī**. A Relative rather than **ut** is used to introduce a Purpose Clause when the antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the antecedent clause.

(b) Notice that in the second sentence the Purpose Clause contains a comparative, **celerius**; **quō** is the ablative case of the relative and is equivalent to **ut eō**, the Ablative being the Ablative of the Degree of Difference, 197. We translate by the English adverb *the*, as in the phrases *the more, the less, the quicker*, etc. **Quō** is only used to introduce Purpose Clauses which contain a Comparative. The Sequence is the same as in other Purpose Clauses.

## 281

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

1. **Sunt quī putent.** *There are men who think.*
2. **Nēmō est quī haec nōn** *There is no one who does*  
**faciat.** *not do this.*
3. **Quis erat quī haec nōn** *Who was there who did not*  
**faceret?** *do this?*
4. **Nōn is sum quī haec dicam.** *I am not one to say this.*

(a) Notice that the principal clause is either a negative or general expression stating something indefinitely, and that the relative clauses answer the question, *Of what kind?* Such clauses are called *Relative Clauses of Characteristic*.

(b) Whenever the antecedent is definite, the relative clause defines who or what is meant and only incidentally characterizes the antecedent, e. g., *Brūtus erat qui Caesarem occidit. It was Brutus who killed Caesar. Hic est qui haec dicit. This is the man who says this.* In such relative clauses the Indicative is regularly used.

- 282** *Rule.*—A relative clause which states the natural result or Character of something suggested indefinitely in the principal clause, is called a Clause of Characteristic and takes the Subjunctive.

W. 587-588; B. 283; AG. 320; H. 591.

**283**

VOCABULARY

<b>Alcibiadēs, -is, m.</b> <i>Alcibiades.</i>	<b>plērique, plēraeque, plēra-</b>
<b>expediō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus</b>	<b>que, the most of.<sup>1</sup></b>
<i>to get ready (impediō,</i>	<b>potestās, -tātis, f. power,</b>
<b>276).</b>	<b>ability.</b>
<b>incendo, -ere, -cendi, -cēsus,</b>	<b>praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus</b>
<i>to set fire to.</i>	<b>(prae + faciō, 272), to put</b>
<b>interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus</b>	<b>in command of.<sup>2</sup></b>
<b>(inter + faciō), to kill.</b>	<b>praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus</b>
<b>magistrātus, -ūs, m. magis-</b>	<b>(prae + mittō, 260), to</b>
<b>trate, office.</b>	<b>send ahead.</b>
<b>mōs, mōris, m. custom; plur.</b>	<b>recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus</b>
<b>character.</b>	<b>(re + capiō, 267), to re-</b>
<b>occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsus, to</b>	<b>cover, receive.</b>
<b>cut down, to kill.</b>	<b>redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus</b>
<b>Persa, -ae, m. a Persian.</b>	<b>(re + dūcō, 264), to lead</b>
<b>pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventū-</b>	<b>or bring back.</b>
<b>rus (per + veniō, 276), to</b>	<b>revocō, -āre (re + vocō, 80),</b>
<b>arrive.</b>	<b>to recall.</b>
<b>Pharnabāzus, -ī, Pharnaba-</b>	<b>satis, adv. enough, suffi-</b>
<b>zus (a Persian satrap).</b>	<b>ciently.</b>

<sup>1</sup> Rare in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> With the accu. of person and the dative of thing.



**sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsūrus, vincō, -ere, vici, victus, to**  
*to be aware of, perceive. conquer (victor, 158; vic-*  
**Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily. tōria, 111).**  
**simul atque (ac), conj. as soon as.**

**284** 1. Alcibiadēs honōrēs māximē cupiēbat, bella terrā  
 marique fēliciter gerēbat; neque erat is quī facile terrērē-  
 tur. 2. Postquam Alcibiadēs in Siciliam pervēnit, nāvis  
 ā magistrātibus Athēniēnsibus praemissa est, quae eum  
 reducerēt. 3. Sed Alcibiadēs mōrēs Athēniēnsium satis  
 cōgnōvit; itaque simul atque in Ītaliā pervēnit, ad  
 hostīs Athēniēnsium fugivīt nē interficerētur. 4. Postea  
 ad Persās fugere coactus est; tum suōs cīvis ita adiuvā-  
 bat ut dēnique revocātus, classī praeficerētur. 5. Hōc in  
 imperiō tantam classem expedit ut plērāsque urbēs  
 Asiae reciperet quae in potestātem hostium vēnerant.  
 6. Nēmō est quī nōn audiat dē victōriis Alcibiadis, nēmō  
 quī eum vidēre nōn cupiat; nam simul ac dē eius adventū  
 sēnsērunt, omnēs ad portum contendērunt. 7. Postquam  
 Athēniēsēs victi sunt, in Asiam fugere coactus est Alci-  
 biades. Sed nōn erat is quī patriam liberāre nōn cupe-  
 ret; itaque ā Pharnabāzo petivīt ut ad rēgem Persārū  
 mitterētur. 8. Tum Lacedaemoniī eum prohibēre statuē-  
 runt ā rēge auxilium petere; itaque pauci clam praemissi  
 sunt qui eum occiderent; aedificium in quō erat incendē-  
 runt.

**285** 1. Who was there who did not hurry to the harbor, to  
 see Alcibiades and to hear his voice? 2. By the advice  
 of Alcibiades the Lacedaemonians sent forward men to  
 take possession of a citadel. 3. Alcibiades was aware of  
 the plans of the magistrates, but he was not a man to be  
 frightened. 4. As soon as their foes had defeated the  
 Athenians, he fled to the Persians, in order that he might  
 not be killed. 5. Men were sent to set fire to the build-  
 ing in which Alcibiades was and to kill him. 6. So this

man who had been the most famous general the Athenians had known, was cut down in a most undeserved death. 7. Why did his citizens drive him from his native land and not defend him against his enemies?

## READING EXERCISE

*The Battle of Marathon*

**286** Postquam Athēniēnsēs haec cōgnōvērunt, nūntium ad Lacedaemoniōs mīsērunt quī peteret ut quam celerrimē auxilium mitterent. Sed propter<sup>1</sup> diēs festōs<sup>2</sup> Athēniēnsīs statim adiuvāre eis nōn licēbat. Itaque nūlla civitās auxilium dedit praeter<sup>3</sup> Plataeēnsīs<sup>4</sup>; ea civitās mille milites mīsīt. Quōrum adventū decem milia armātōrum<sup>5</sup> complēta sunt.<sup>6</sup> Huic exercituī sunt praefectī decem dūcēs, in quibus princeps erat Miltiadēs. Hic cēteris persuāsīt ut cōpiās ex urbe in campum Marathōnium statim dūcerent locōque idōneō castra facerent. Ubi is diēs vēnit quō Miltiadēs summum imperium habēbat, aciem ita instrūxit<sup>7</sup> ut longitūdinem<sup>8</sup> Persārum aciēi aequāret<sup>9</sup> sed in mediā<sup>10</sup> aciē ordinēs minus firmī<sup>11</sup> essent quam in cornibus. Quamquam Athēniēnsēs numerō inferiōrēs erant, nōn dubitābant quīn Persās vincere possent.<sup>12</sup> Itaque ubi sīgnum datum est, contrā hostis māximā virtūte properābant; in mediā aciē barbarī superiōrēs erant; sed postquam Athēniēnsēs et Plataeēnsēs, quī in cornibus Persās vīcerant, in eōs qui mediam Athē-

<sup>1</sup> Prep. with accu., *on account of*.

<sup>2</sup> *Festival*.

<sup>3</sup> Prep. with accu., *with the exception of*.

<sup>4</sup> *Men of Plataea* (a city in southern Boeotia).

<sup>5</sup> *armātī*, *armed men*.

<sup>6</sup> *complēō*, *-ēre*, *to make up*.

<sup>7</sup> *Instruō*, *-ere*, *to draw up*.

<sup>8</sup> *longitūdō*, *-inis*, *length (longus)*.

<sup>9</sup> *aequō*, *-āre*, *to equal*.

<sup>10</sup> *medius*, *-a*, *-um*, *middle of*.

<sup>11</sup> *firmus*, *-a*, *-um*, *strong*.

<sup>12</sup> Impf. subj. of *possum*, *to be able*.

niēnsium aciem pellēbant, impetum fēcērunt, māgnam partem eōrum occidērunt; reliquī nōn castra sed nāvīs petēbant. Quārum septem cēpērunt Athēniēnsēs. Numquam parva manus tantās cōpiās fugāverat: decemplex<sup>1</sup> numerum hostium vicerant Graeci.

## LESSON XXXVI

### DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

**287** VERBS having Passive forms but Active meanings are called Deponents.

**288** Learn the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of *hortor* and *vereor* (484).

**289** SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF FEARING

#### EXAMPLES

1. *Vereor* (*veritus sum*) *nē* *I fear (I have feared) that he may come.*
2. *Verēbar* (*veritus sum*) *ut* *I was fearing (I feared) that he might not come.*

(a) Notice that the clauses introduced by *nē* and *ut* are the objects of the introductory verbs, and are therefore also called Substantive Clauses, like similar clauses of Purpose (258) and of Result (268).

<sup>1</sup> *decemplex, -icis, ten times.*

(b) Notice also that after a verb of fearing *nē* means *that* or *lest*, *ut* means *that not*.<sup>1</sup>

**290** *Rule.*—Substantive Clauses with verbs of Fearing are introduced by *nē*, *that*, *ut*, *that not*.

W. 516; B. 296, 2; AG. 331, f.; H. 567.

**291**

# VOCABULARY

<i>cōnor</i> , -āri, -ātus, <i>to try</i> .	<i>mūniō</i> , -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itus, <i>to fortify</i> .
<i>cotidiē</i> , adv. (quot + diē) <i>daily</i> .	<i>nōnnūllī</i> , -ae, -a, <i>some, a few</i> .
<i>Ēlis</i> , -idis, f. <i>Elis</i> (a district in the western Peloponnesus).	<i>ob</i> , prep. with accu., <i>on account of</i> .
<i>expellō</i> , -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (ex + pello, 276), <i>to drive out</i> .	<i>pedes</i> , -itis, m. <i>foot soldier</i> .
<i>incolumis</i> , -e, <i>safe, uninjured</i> . <sup>2</sup>	<i>poena</i> , -ae, f. <i>penalty</i> .
<i>inquit</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>said he</i> (etc.).	<i>premō</i> , -ere, <i>pressī</i> , <i>pressus</i> , <i>to press, oppress</i> .
<i>invitus</i> , -a, -um, <i>unwilling</i> . <sup>2</sup>	quot, adj. indeclin. <i>how many? as many as</i> (compare tot, 264).
<i>Lacedaemōn</i> , -onis, f. <i>Sparta</i> .	<i>supplicium</i> , -ī, n. <i>punishment</i> .
<i>libertās</i> , -tātis, f. <i>liberty, freedom</i> .	<i>vehementer</i> , adv. <i>violently, exceedingly</i> .

**292** 1. Alcibiadēs vehementer verēbātur nē odiō suppliciiſque premerētur. 2. "Alcibiadem hortēmur," inquit

<sup>1</sup> The reason for this apparent reversal of the meanings of the two particles is that originally the clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* were independent, the Subjunctive being the Optative (241): *vereor*, *I am fearful*; *ut veniat*, *may he come* (but my fear is that he will not); *vereor: nē veniat*, *may he not come* (but I fear he will). In the development of the Latin language the originally independent clauses became dependent, so that we are obliged to translate as indicated above.

<sup>2</sup> This may often be conveniently translated by an adverb.

<sup>3</sup> This is the only common form of the defective verb *inquam*, say I, inserted in direct quotations.

ëius inimicus, "ut in prövinciam contendat, quö eum facilius premamus." 3. Invitus Alcibiadës urbem reliquit; plërique enim civës inimicï erant et eum occidere cupiëbant. 4. Alcibiadës ab custödibus fûgit nē poenās dare cögerëtur, atque incolumis primum in Êlidem, deinde Lacedaemonem<sup>1</sup> pervēnit. 5. Ibi magisträtibus Lacedaemoniörum persuāsit ut peditës equitësque mitterent quï arcem Athëniënsium münirent. 6. Sed simul atque hostës virtutem Alcibiadis cögnöverunt, veriti sunt nē ob patriae amörem Athëniënsium amicitiam rûrsus petere cönärëtur. 7. Itaque nōnnüllï Alcibiadem interficere cupiëbant; verëbantur enim nē ä civibus revocärëtur et militës suös iterum ex patriä suä expelleret. 8. "Utinam Alcibiadës in nosträ patriä esset. Nēmö est enim quï felicitàs sapientiusque rem públicam gerat." 9. Alcibiadës cotidië operam dedit ut Athëniënsës libertätë recipèrent nēve<sup>2</sup> in potestätë Lacedaemoniörum essent. 10. Quot militës eä pügnä ämisit? Multa milia hominum ämisit, atque etiam plürës equös scütaque.

- 293** 1. They feared that Alcibiades would run away and come in safety to the Persian king. 2. Alcibiades sailed to Sicily against his will, for he greatly feared that he would be oppressed by his enemies. 3. They attempted to persuade the magistrates to send a ship at once. 4. The magistrates ordered the messengers to bring Alcibiades back to Greece. 5. Alcibiades fled in order that he might not be carried to Greece and made to suffer punishment. 6. "Let us have a few soldiers to fortify this place; this garrison is not large enough to deter the neighboring tribes from attacking the camp." 7. When they saw Alcibiades unharmed, they could hardly be prevented from carrying him to the city in their arms.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Compare 236, 10.

<sup>2</sup> Nēve (nē + ve) before vowels, neu before consonants, is used to introduce the second member of a purpose clause when negative.

<sup>3</sup> manus.

## LESSON XXXVII

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND  
FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

- 294** LEARN the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of *sequor* and *potior* (484).

## SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

- 295** Semi-Dependent Verbs have Active forms in the Present System and Passive forms in the Perfect System, keeping their Active meanings throughout. There are but four Semi-Deponents :

*audeō, audēre, ausus, to dare. \**  
*gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus, to rejoice.*  
*soleō, solēre, solitus, to be wont.*  
*fidō, fidere, fīsus,<sup>1</sup> to trust.*

**296**

## ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS

## EXAMPLES

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Hōc cōnsiliō ūtitur.</i>      | <i>He uses this advice.</i>                     |
| 2. <i>Omnibus rēbus fruī.</i>       | <i>To enjoy all things.</i>                     |
| 3. <i>Urbe hostium potītī sunt.</i> | <i>They got possession of the enemy's city.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablative is used where in English we use the Accusative (Objective)

---

<sup>1</sup> The compound *cōnfidō, to have confidence*, is much more common than the simple *fīdo*.

case. Such ablatives are Ablatives of Instrument or of Means (109) and are used with five deponents and their compounds.

- 297** *Rule.*—The Ablative is used with *utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor*, and their compounds.<sup>1</sup>

W. 387; B. 218, 1; AG. 249; H. 477.

## 298

## VOCABULARY

*accipio*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus *numquam*, adv. (*nē + um-*  
(*ad + capio*, 267), *to receive, get.* *quam*), *never.*

*Aemilius*, -i, m. *Aemilius.*

*Āpulia*, -ae, f. *Apulia.*

*cōnsequor*, -i, -secūtus (*cum + sequor*), *to overtake.*

*dolor*, -ōris, m. *grief.*

*ēiusmodi*,<sup>2</sup> adj. *of that sort, such.*

*experior*, -iri, -pertus, *to try, prove.*

*medius*, -a, -um, *middle, middle of.*

*periculōsus*, -a, -um, *full of risk, dangerous.*

*probō*, -āre, *to approve.*

*proficiscor*, -i, -fectus, *to set out.*

*quidam, quaedam, quoddam*,<sup>3</sup>  
*a, a certain.*

*umquam*, adv. *ever.*

*utor*, -i, ūsus, *to use.*

*Varrō*, -ōnis, m. *Varro.*

- 299** 1. Simul atque Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnit, contrā eum summā celeritāte profecti sunt cōsulēs, Aemilius et Varrō. 2. Aemiliō minus periculōsum vidēbātur eā ratiōne bellī morāque ūtī quā Fabius ūsus erat; sed Varrō ācriōra cōnsilia sequi solēbātur. 3. Aemilius, quī verēbātur nē Rōmānī superārentur, invītus pūgnāvit; Rōmānī ingenti clāde pulsī sunt. 4. Numquam gravius vulnus accēpit rēs pūblica; plērique dūcēs tribūnique indignā

<sup>1</sup> As *fungor*, *to perform*, and *vēscor*, *to feed*, are not common in the Latin authors which pupils first read, they are not used in this book; but the complete rule should be learned for future convenience.

<sup>2</sup> The genitives *ēius* and *modī* written as one word.

<sup>3</sup> Declined in full, 475.

morte interfecti sunt atque Hannibal magnā praedā potius est. 5. Aemilium mediā in pugnā vulneratum vidit tribūnus quidam, qui hortabatur ut equum suum caperet et fugeret. 6. "Etiam sine tuā morte," inquit tribūnus, "satis doloris est. Nihil impedit quin fugiās, nēmō tē consequetur." 7. Sed cōsul tribūnō imperāvit ut magistratibus renūtiāret ut urbem mūnirent. 8. Quot hominēs occisī sunt hāc pugnā? Multa milia; numquam enim Rōmāni eiusmodi clādem experti sunt. 9. Lēgātus Hannibalem hortabatur ut ad urbem contenderet. "Diē quartō," inquit, "victor sub moenibus eris." 10. Ubi hōc cōsiliū nōn probāvit Hannibal, dixit ille, "Superāre hostis scīs, victoriā ūti nōn cūpis."

- 300** 1. The consuls set out immediately, in order that they might follow the enemy. 2. Hannibal did not know how to take advantage of<sup>1</sup> the victory, for the Romans were in his power. 3. Aemilius was not accustomed to employ dispatch, and did not try to overtake the enemy's foot-soldiers with his cavalry. 4. Nothing prevents you from taking my horse and fleeing, that you may not meet an undeserved death. 5. At daybreak Hannibal took possession of the Roman camp; the Romans did not attempt to defend it. 6. The consul who had been put in command of the foot was afraid he should not conquer Hannibal. 7. How many soldiers were slain in this battle? So many thousands that this was the greatest disaster which a Roman army ever experienced.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., *to use*.



## LESSON XXXVIII

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE  
SUBJUNCTIVE

**301** LEARN the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of **sum** (485) and in the four Conjugations, including deponent verbs (479–484).

**302** Among the constructions thus far learned the chief use of the Perfect Subjunctive is in Result Clauses where after an introductory verb in a secondary tense the Perfect Subjunctive states the result as a simple fact, and corresponds to the Perfect Indicative of an independent statement: **Galli ita perterriti sunt ut nihil fēcerint**, *The Gauls were so thoroughly frightened that they did nothing*.

(a) Here **fēcerint** corresponds to **fēcērunt** of a simple statement. If the imperfect **facerent** had been used in the Result Clause, it would have indicated the continuance of the action, *were doing*.

**303** The Pluperfect Tense of the Subjunctive may be used in wishes referring to the past (the Optative-Subjunctive, 241): **utinam haec fēcisset**, *Would that he had done this*.

(a) The Pluperfect like the Imperfect of the Optative Subjunctive is always introduced by **utinam**.

**304** Naturally both the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used in Characterizing Clauses (281):

1. **Is est qui nihil timuerit.** *He is a man who has feared nothing.*  
 2. **Is erat qui nihil timuisset.** *He was a man who had feared nothing.*

(a) The other important uses of the Perfect and Pluperfect will be noticed in later lessons.

## 305

## VOCABULARY

<b>audeō, -ēre, ausus, to dare.</b>	<b>moror, -ārī, -ātus, to delay.</b>
<b>cōfido, -ere, -fusus (cum + fidō), to have confidence.</b>	<b>obliviscor, -i, -litus, to forget.<sup>2</sup></b>
<b>cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily.</b>	<b>paene, adv. almost.</b>
<b>dēspērō, -āre, to despair.</b>	<b>pecūnia, -ae, f. money.</b>
<b>dēsum, -esse, -fui, to be lacking, to fail.<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (per + terreō, 252), to terrify.</b>
<b>fruo, -i, fructus, to enjoy.</b>	<b>sic, adv. so.<sup>3</sup></b>
<b>loquor, -i, locūtus, to talk.</b>	<b>tam, adv. so.<sup>4</sup></b>

- 306** 1. Nūntiō hūius clādis Rōmānī sic perterritī sunt ut nihil facere nihilque dicere ausī sint. 2. Māgnum dolōrem accēpērunt civēs; nēmō loquēbātur, omnēs tam tristēs erant ut nēmō contrā hostis proficisci auderet. 3. Hannibal tamen nōn erat is quī victōriā ūti sciret; atque nunc quoque victōriā frui, non ūti, cupiebat. 4. Utinam morātus esset noster exercitus; nē Fabi eiusque bellī ratiōnis obliviscāmur. 5. Nec tamen dēspērāvērunt Rōmānī; omnia faciebant nē libertātem potestātemque āmitterent nēve in aciē vincerentur. 6. Quod arma quibus pūgnārent deerant, ex templis scūta tēlaque hostium cēpērunt quibus ūterentur. 7. Pecūniam tēlaque quibus

<sup>1</sup> With the dative, not accusative.

<sup>2</sup> With the genitive of the object. Compare 156.

<sup>3</sup> Modifying verbs.

<sup>4</sup> Modifying adjectives and adverbs, not verbs. Compare ita, 182.

ūtēbantur,<sup>1</sup> senātus suā operā expēdīvit, ut urbs facile dēfenderētur. 8. Hannibal fidei<sup>2</sup> Rōmānae sic cōfidēbat ut captīvos eōrum ad urbem sine custōdibus mīserit. 9. Utinam castrīs hostium potītī essēmus; atque nunc cēterōs statim cōsequāmur nē his auxilium darent. 10. Rōmānī cum eīs nātiōnibus paene cotīdiānīs proeliis pūgnāre solēbant ut adventū tot mīlium novōrum hostium nōn perterritī sint.

- 307** 1. Hannibal acted with so little speed that the Romans did not despair of the state. 2. Hannibal knew how to enjoy a victory, but not how to use one.<sup>3</sup> 3. Would that the Romans had followed the advice of Aemilius! 4. The advice of Aemilius was to delay and not to fight, for to engage with the enemy at once was dangerous. 5. Because young men were lacking, the senate ordered the slaves to be liberated and armed. 6. The Romans lost so many men in this battle that they no longer had an army. 7. They no longer had enough foot-soldiers to send against Hannibal. 8. They were not a people who had been accustomed to be afraid that they would be conquered.

---

<sup>1</sup> How does the indic. here differ from the subj. in the preceding sentence?

<sup>2</sup> Dat. with cōfidēbat; translate by the English objective.

<sup>3</sup> Omit in translating.

---

# LESSON XXXIX

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

308

SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS

### EXAMPLES

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Si adest, bene est.</b>   | <i>If he is here, it is well.</i>                         |
| 2. <b>Si aderat, bene erat.</b> | <i>If he was here, it was well.</i>                       |
| 3. <b>Si adfuit, bene fuit.</b> | <i>If he has been (was) here, it has been (was) well.</i> |

(a) Notice that the time of these sentences is either Present or Past, and that nothing is implied as to whether the subject actually is, was, or has been here. Such conditions are called *Simple Present* or *Past Conditional Sentences*.

(b) The Condition, or Subordinate Clause, of the Sentence is frequently called the *Prótasis*; the Conclusion, or Principal Clause, is called the *Apódosis*.

309

**Rule.**—In Simple Present or Past Conditional Sentences, implying nothing as to the fact, the Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis.

W. 558; B. 302; AG. 306; H. 574.

310

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

### EXAMPLES

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <b>Si adesset, bene esset.</b>     | <i>If he were here, it would be well.</i>            |
| 2. <b>Si adfuisset, bene fuisset.</b> | <i>If he had been here, it would have been well.</i> |

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences imply that the supposition is not true, i. e., that he is not, or was not here. Such conditions are called *Conditions Contrary to Fact*.

(b) Notice further that the Imperfect Subjunctive refers to Present time, the Pluperfect to Past.

- 311** *Rule.*—In Present and Past Conditional Sentences contrary to fact, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to Present, the Pluperfect to Past Time.

W. 557; B. 304; AG. 308; H. 579.

**312**FUTURE CONDITIONS<sup>1</sup>

## EXAMPLES

1. Si aderit (adfuerit), bene    *If he is (shall be, shall have been) here, it will be well.*
2. Si adsit, bene sit.            *If he should be here, it would be well.*

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences both refer to Future time and therefore state the condition as Possible, rather than as a simple fact or one impliedly false. In the first sentence the Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative states the condition more vividly than the Present Subjunctive does in the second. The first sentence is called a *More Vivid Future Condition*, the second a *Less Vivid Future Condition*.

(b) In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Perfect Indicative is very common in the Protasis, as the Latin language is more precise than the English. We generally use the Present Indicative here to represent both the Future and the Future Perfect.

- 313** *Rule.*—In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; in Less Vivid Future Conditions the Present Subjunctive.

W. 553, 555; B. 302, 303; AG. 307; H. 574, 576.

---

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will remember that conditional sentences with the Indicative have been freely used in many of the preceding exercises.

314

VOCABULARY

<b>aequus, -a, -um, equal, fair,</b> <i>level.</i>	<b>nanciscor, -i, nactus, to find.</b>
<b>aetās, -ātis, f. age.</b>	<b>necesse, adj. necessary.</b>
<b>dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus</b> <b>(di + mittō, 260), to dis-</b> <b>miss.</b>	<b>nisi, conj. unless.</b>
<b>etsi, conj. even if, although.</b>	<b>pedester, -tris, -tre, foot</b> <b>(pedes, 291).</b>
<b>graviter, adv. heavily, se-</b> <b>verely.</b>	<b>pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, to</b> <b>put, place.<sup>1</sup></b>
<b>Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish.</b>	<b>propter, prep. with accu. on</b> <b>account of.</b>
<b>māne, adv. early in the</b> <b>morning.</b>	<b>rēgius, -a, -um, royal.</b>
<b>morior, -i, mortuus, to die.</b>	<b>respondeō, -ēre, -ndi, -nsus,</b> <b>to answer.</b>
	<b>Scipiō, -ōnis, m. Scipio.</b>

- 315** 1. Scipiō olim magistrātum quendam petivit, sed propter aetātem hunc habere ei nōn licuit. 2. "Sī mē," inquit, "omnēs civēs magistrātum facere cupiunt, satis annōrum habeō." 3. Scipiō tantā virtūte ēgit ut vitam patris ex hostium tēlis servāverit. 4. Nam pater graviter vulnerātus erat, ut nisi eum Scipiō celeriter periculō liberāvisset, in hostium manūs vēnisset mortuusque esset. 5. Ubi iuvenēs quidam dē rē publicā dēspērāvērunt, Scipiō respondit, "Sī rei publicāe deeritis, hūius gladii virtūtem experiētis." 6. Sī Scipiō aequisimō locō māne castra posuerit, pedestribus cōpiis paene cotidiē cum hostibus pūgnabit. 7. Etsi ea nātiō nōn magna erat, tamen apud eōs multa arma nōnnūllōsque captivōs nactus est imperātor. 8. Erat inter captivōs Hispānōs puer rēgius insignisque, quōcum<sup>2</sup> Scipiō pauca loquēbātur. 9. Scipiō probāvit ea quae puer dixit, atque ubi ei equum equitēsque dedit quī eum tūtō dēdūcerent, domum dimi-

<sup>1</sup> castra pōnere, to pitch camp.

<sup>2</sup> cum is regularly attached to the abl. of the Personal and Relative Pronouns,

sit. 10. Si beātus esse cupīs, bonīs vitāe sapiēter ūti et frui necesse est.

- 316** 1. If Scipio had not acted with great haste, his father would have died in the hands of the enemy. 2. Scipio's father was so severely wounded that he almost died. 3. Scipio's years were not many; still he would receive from the citizens the magistracy if he should seek it. 4. "Unless you follow my advice and defend the state," said Scipio, "my sword will make<sup>1</sup> you drive the enemy out." 5. If the enemy be not terrified, they will pitch camp early in the morning in a level place. 6. Scipio persuaded the youth who was brought to him not to be afraid. 7. "My father died," said the boy, "so that I followed my mother's brother to the war." 8. If you should use and enjoy wisely the goods of life, you would be happy.

## LESSON XL

### PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

#### PARADIGMS

**317**

	SINGULAR		
	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM.	ego	tū	—
GEN.	meī	tui	sui
DAT.	mihi, mi	tibi	sibi
ACCU.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
ABL.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

<sup>1</sup> efficiō with a substantive clause.

PLURAL

NOM. (VOC.)	nōs	vōs	—
GEN.	nostrum, nostri	vestrum, vestri	sui
DAT.	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
ACCU.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
ABL.	nōbis	vōbis	sē, sēsē

(a) The First and Second Personal Pronouns are used only for emphasis; *ego haec laudō, tū ista laudās, I praise this, you praise that.* Ordinarily the form of the verb alone indicates the subject in these two persons.

(b) **Nostrum** and **vestrum** usually denote the whole of which the modified word is a part: *quis nostrum? Who of us?* **Nostri** and **vestri** are generally used as Objective Genitives: *memōria nostri, Memory of us.*

(c) There is properly speaking no Personal Pronoun of the Third Person. Its place is taken by the Demonstratives *ille* and *is* (123, 135).

(d) The Reflexive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are supplied from the Personal Pronouns: *ego mē laudo, I praise myself; tū tē laudās, You praise yourself.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

<b>meus</b> , <i>my</i>	<b>noster</b> , <i>our</i>	for the First Person
<b>tuus</b> , <i>your (thy)</i>	<b>vester</b> , <i>your</i>	for the Second Person
<b>suus</b> , <i>his own, their own</i>		for the Third Person

(a) These are adjectives, which have been already used, and are declined like **bonus** and **niger**. But the Voc. Sing. Masc. of **meus** is **mī**.

(b) **Suus** is used only in a Reflexive sense, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands: *suum filium laudat, He praises his own son; filium illius laudat, He praises his (another man's) son,*



- 319 The following table shows the correspondence of the Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, and Demonstrative Pronouns.

	PERSONAL	REFLEXIVE	POSSESSIVE	DEMONSTRATIVE
FIRST PERSON	<b>ego</b>	<b>mei</b>	<b>meus, noster</b>	<b>hic</b>
SECOND PERSON	<b>tū</b>	<b>tui</b>	<b>tuus, vester</b>	<b>iste</b>
THIRD PERSON	<b>(ille, is)</b>	<b>sui</b>	<b>sus</b>	<b>ille</b>

## 320

## VOCABULARY

<b>aut</b> (aut . . . aut), conj.	<b>iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, to order.<sup>2</sup></b>
<b>either</b> (either . . . or).	
<b>dēsistō, -ere, -stiti, —, to cease, cease from, give up.</b>	<b>iūdicō, -āre, to judge, consider, (iūdex, 144.)</b>
<b>dignus -a, -um, worthy.</b>	<b>māgnitūdō, -inis, f. size, greatness.</b>
<b>Hasdrubal, -alis, m. Hasdrubal</b> (a famous Carthaginian).	<b>modo, adv. only.</b>
<b>idem, eadem, idem,<sup>1</sup> the same.</b>	<b>nē . . . quidem, adv. not even.</b>
<b>ipse, ipsa, ipsum,<sup>1</sup> self, very.</b>	<b>nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.</b>
<b>iste, ista, istud,<sup>1</sup> that (of yours).</b>	<b>silentium, -ī, n. silence.</b>

- 321 1. Multitūdō eadem Hispānōrum Scīpiōnem ingentī clāmōre rēgem appellāvit; sed ille nōn passus est sē regiō nōmine appellārī. 2. Postquam silentium eōs facere iussit, summā auctōritāte dixit, "Nōmen imperātōris quō mē militēs mei appellāvērunt, mihī est māximus honor. 3. Rōmānī nē nōmen quidem rēgium patī solent. Etsī vōs hōc nōmen māximum dīgnissimumque iūdicātis, tamen necesse est vōs<sup>3</sup> etiam invitōs cōnsiliō dēsistere."

<sup>1</sup> These are declined in full, 475. Compare with other demonstrative pronouns.

<sup>2</sup> Followed by the accu. and infin.: *iubeo tē haec facere, I order you to do this.* Compare *imperō*, 191.

<sup>3</sup> Accu. subject of *dēsistere*; translate, *that you, etc.*

4. Tum sēnsērunt nōn modo illi sed etiam cēteri māgnitudinem eius animi, ut eum rēgem appellāre dēstiterint. 5. "Quot vestrum hōc animō sunt? Si cōsiliū istud probārem, nōn dubitārem quā nōmen illud accipere necesse esset." 6. Deinde Scipiō proficisci parābat, ut dūrō tempore anni māgnū agmen in Africā trādūceret. 7. Lēgatiōnem cum dōnīs ad rēgem mīsit; sed nōn poterat<sup>1</sup> ei persuādere ut fidem, nisi cum ipsō dūce Rōmānō, aut daret aut acciperet. 8. Idem effēcit ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ipse, quī Hispāniā expulsus erat, ad hunc portum perveniret. 9. Numquam tuī obliviscar, etsi aetās mihi longissima sit.

- 322** 1. I should accept the name of king for love of you, if the Romans would allow me to do so. 2. Scipio ordered the Spaniards not to call him king against his wishes.<sup>2</sup> 3. Because the Spaniards recognized his nobility of spirit, they gave up their plan. 4. I do not approve of your plan; let them not call me by that name. 5. If he had not sent an embassy to the king, he not only would have come himself, but would also have given up the hostages. 6. If you wish to exchange<sup>3</sup> pledges with me, it will be necessary for you to come yourself. 7. After a short silence, he said, "I shall not forget you, even if you forget me." 8. You are eager to adopt<sup>4</sup> either that plan of yours or this of mine?<sup>5</sup>

**323**

## READING EXERCISE

*The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis*

Postquam Darēus dē pūgnā Marathōniā certior est factus, Graeciam vincere multō magis cupiēbat. Itaque per civitatēs Asiae lēgātōs mīsit quī cōpiās et nāvīs longās

<sup>1</sup> Imperfect indic. of **possum**, to be able.

<sup>2</sup> **invitus**.

<sup>3</sup> Use **dō** and **accipio**; compare **321**, 7.

<sup>4</sup> **capere**.

<sup>5</sup> Simply **hic**; compare **124 (a)**.

et equōs et frūmentum parārī iubērent. Sed mox Darēus moritur. Deinde Xerxēs rēgnat.<sup>1</sup> Quamquam<sup>2</sup> in animō nōn habēbat<sup>3</sup> bellum Graeciae inferre,<sup>4</sup> tamen Mardonius, cuius auctōritās apud eum erat māxima, eī persuāsit ut patris cōnsilia persequerētur.<sup>5</sup> Per quattuor<sup>6</sup> annōs māgnū exercitū omnīsq̄e rēs exercitūi necessāriās parābat ut quīntō<sup>7</sup> annō ingentibus cōpiis proficiscerētur. Ubi rēx cum peditibus equitibusque ad Thermopylārū<sup>8</sup> angustias<sup>9</sup> pervēnit, castra ante eās pōnere est coāctus, quod in angustias erant Graeci, quī parātī erant prohibēre eum suōs militēs in Graeciam dūcere. Cēterī Graeci, māgnō numerō hostium perterriti,<sup>10</sup> ex angustias fugere et Isthmum mūnīre cupiebant; sed Leōnidas hanc sententiam nōn probābat, et cum Lacedaemoniis suis manēbat.

Ubi nōnnūllōs diēs rēx morātus est, suōs militēs impetum facere iussit. Quamquam summā audaciā pūgnāvērunt, tamen tanta erat caedēs eōrum ut dēnique proeliō dēstiterint ac sē in castra recēperint. Neque reliquī plūs contrā Graecōs effēcērunt. Ubi iam dē victoriā Xerxēs dēspērābat, eī Graecus quīdam viam per montēs indicāvit. Eā nocte Persae profectī sunt ut Graecōs ā tergō<sup>11</sup> adorīrentur.<sup>12</sup> Leōnidas omnis praeter<sup>13</sup> Lacedaemoniōs dimiserat. Primā lūce Persae in eōs impetum fēcērunt: parva manus Graecōrum fortissimē pūg-

<sup>1</sup> The present indicative is often thus used in narration to record incidents as they occur. It is best known as the Annalistic Present.

<sup>2</sup> *Although.*

<sup>3</sup> Compare *in animō esse*, 193, 6.

<sup>4</sup> *Infin., to bring on, with dat.*

<sup>5</sup> *persequor, to follow out.*

<sup>6</sup> *Four.*

<sup>7</sup> *Fifth.*

<sup>8</sup> *Thermopylae*, a pass from Thessaly to southern Greece.

<sup>9</sup> *angustiae, pass.*

<sup>10</sup> *Perf. pass. partic., not indic.*

<sup>11</sup> *In the rear.*

<sup>12</sup> *adorior, -irī, to attack.*

<sup>13</sup> *Prep. with accu., except.*

nāvit, sed omnēs occīsī sunt. Hic in ūnō locō sepultī,<sup>1</sup> semper in mǎximō honōre apud suōs erant.

Paulō post apud Salāmīnem<sup>2</sup> pūgnam nāvālem<sup>3</sup> cum classe Persicā commīsērunt Graecī, quī cōnsiliō Themistoclis<sup>4</sup> hōc locō dīmīcāre coāctī sunt. Multī enim ā Salāmīne ad Isthmum fugere in animō habuerant. Māior pars nāvium Persārūm interiit;<sup>5</sup> multae ab Athēniēnsibus sociisque sunt captae. Ita Graecia est liberāta.

## LESSON XLI

### THE USES OF THE INFINITIVE

**324** REVIEW the Present Infinitives and learn the Perfect and Future Infinitives of the model verbs (479-485).

(a) Notice that the Future Active Infinitive is made up of the Future Active Participle and *esse*; the Perfect Passive of the Perfect Passive Participle and *esse*. These participles, it should be remembered, are declined like *bonus*.

**325** SUBJECT AND OBJECT INFINITIVES

The Infinitive in Latin, as in English, is a Verbal Noun and has neither person nor number. It is chiefly used as Subject or Object.

<sup>1</sup> Perf. pass. partic. of *sepellō*, to bury.

<sup>2</sup> *Salamis*, -inis, an island south of Athens.

<sup>3</sup> *nāvālis*, -e, compare *nāvis*.

<sup>4</sup> *Themistoclēs*, -is, the famous Athenian general.

<sup>5</sup> *Was lost*.

## 326

## EXAMPLES

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Urbem dēfendere erit periculōsum. | <i>To defend the city will be dangerous.</i>   |
| 2. Urbem mūnīre cupit.               | <i>He wishes to defend the city.</i>           |
| 3. Urbem mūniri cupit.               | <i>He wishes the town to be defended.</i>      |
| 4. Urbem esse māgnam cupit.          | <i>He wishes the city to be large.</i>         |
| 5. Urbs māgna esse dicitur.          | <i>The city is said to be large.</i>           |
| 6. Urbs dēfēnsa esse dicitur.        | <i>The city is said to have been defended.</i> |

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 the Infinitive is the Subject of *erit*; in 2, 3, and 4 it is the Object of *cupit*; and that in 5 and 6 it simply completes the meaning of the sentence. Such infinitives as those in sentences 2-6 are frequently called *Complementary Infinitives*, especially when, as in sentence 2, the infinitive has no subject. All these constructions are common in English, so that they have been freely used in the preceding lessons.

(b) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 the accusative *urbem* is the Subject of the infinitives, and that in sentence 4 the predicate adjective *māgnam* is therefore accusative. But in sentences 5 and 6, in which the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the finite verb and therefore nominative, the predicate adjective *māgna* and the participle *dēfēnsa* are nominative.

- 327**     *Rule.*—The Infinitive may be used as Subject or Object of a Finite Verb.

W. 622-629; B. 326-332; AG. 270-272; H. 613-615.

- 328**     *Rule.*—The Accusative may be used as the Subject of an Infinitive.

W. 322; B. 184; AG. 240, *f.*; H. 415.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

## EXAMPLES

## DIRECT

## INDIRECT

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tū urbem dēfendis.<br><i>You are defending the city.</i>     | Dicit tē urbem dēfendere.<br><i>He says that you are defending the city.</i>             |
| 2. Ego urbem dēfendi.<br><i>I defended the city.</i>            | Dixit mē urbem dēfendisse.<br><i>He said that I defended the city.</i>                   |
| 3. Urbs dēfensa est.<br><i>The city has been defended.</i>      | Dixit urbem dēfensam esse.<br><i>He said that the city had been defended.</i>            |
| 4. Urbem dēfendēbat.<br><i>He was defending the city.</i>       | Dicit sē urbem dēfendisse.<br><i>He says that he defended the city.</i>                  |
| 5. Hic urbem dēfendet.<br><i>This man will defend the city.</i> | Dixit hunc urbem dēfensūrum esse.<br><i>He said that this man would defend the city.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Infinitives with Subjects in the Accusative are Objects of the introductory verb, but at the same time represent the quoted thought or words of some person, as is shown by the left-hand column. When a person's thought or words are thus quoted after a verb of Saying or Thinking, the construction is called *Indirect Discourse*. Compare 326, 5 and 6.

(b) The Tenses of the Infinitive have no independent time of their own, but their time depends on that of the leading verb, as is shown by the examples given above.

- 330** *Rule.*—The Present Infinitive expresses the same time as that of the leading verb, the Perfect Infinitive time before, and the Future Infinitive time after the time of the leading verb.

W. 632-635; B. 270 *a-c*; AG. 288; H. 617-620.

## 331

## VOCABULARY

**alius, -a, -ud, another.<sup>1</sup>**

**arbitror, -āri, -ātus, to think.**

**centuriō, -ōnis, m. centurion.**

**circum, prep. with accu. around, about.**

**cōstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus, to establish, place, station, determine.**

**difficultās, -ātis, f. difficulty (difficilis, 196).**

**imperitus, -a, -um (in + peritus, 264), unskilled.**

**iniquus, -a, -um (in + aequus, 314), unequal, uneven, unfair.**

**paulum, adv. a little, somewhat (paulō, 199).**

**procul, adv. far off.**

**prōgredior, -i, -gressus, to advance.**

**putō, -āre, to think.**

**quisquam, —, quidquam, indefinite pron. any one, anything.<sup>2</sup>**

**sōl, -is, m. sun.**

**spērō, -āre, to hope.**

**Suēbī, -ōrum, m. The Suebi (a German people).**

**suprā, adv., and prep. with accu. above, beyond.**

**tālis, -e, such.**

**tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātus, to lift up, carry off, remove, destroy.**

## 332

1. Ipse Caesar cōpiās pedestrīs in Germaniam dūcere castraque pōnere cōstituit paulō suprā eum locum ubi anteā peditēs trādūxerat. 2. Arbitrābātur hostis, imperitōs hominēs, aut iniquō locō proelium commissūrōs aut dē victōriā dēspērātūrōs esse. 3. Hōc modō spērābat sē castris eōrum argentōque omnī potitūrum esse. 4. Sōl occultātus erat nūbibus ut periculōsum difficileque esse putāret tālī caelō proficisci; sed primōs ordinēs paulum prōgredi iussit. 5. Mōs hārum civitātum fuisse dicitur, ut circum sē finis vastātōs vacuōsque ab incolis habērent; hōc modō sē tūtiorēs esse arbitrābantur. 6. Caesar, simul atque certior factus est Suēbōs iniquō locō bellum committere nōn audēre, longius prōgredi cōstituit. 7. Nē timōrem barbaris tolleret, turrim nōn procul ā ripā cōn-

<sup>1</sup> Declined in full, 469.

<sup>2</sup> For the declension, see 478. **Quisquam** is used in negative sentences and in questions; compare 332, 9.

stituit, centuriōnem quendam turri castrisque praefecit. 8. Postquam ipse peditēs plērōsque incolumis redūxit, ad alium bellum profectus est. Arbitrābātur illōs supplicī nōn oblitūrōs esse. 9. Ista silva est sacra deis; neque est quisquam quī sē ad finem eius umquam pervēnisse dicat aut māgnitudinem eius cōgnōverit. 10. Sī pontem nōn incendisset, barbarī arbitrātī essent eum in Germaniam prōgressūrum esse atque perterritī essent.

- 333** 1. It is a dangerous and difficult matter to follow the Suebi into such a forest. 2. He thought that the centurion had erected a tower not far from the bridge. 3. The Suebi had determined to betake themselves into the forest, nor was there any one who knew their plan. 4. If the sun had not been hidden by clouds, he would have set out on that day. 5. A little way above the bridge was a very large forest, in which there were many strange animals; this forest is said to have been sacred to the gods. 6. Caesar was informed that the Suebi would neither engage in battle nor stay where they were.<sup>1</sup> 7. If you wish to destroy all fear and to enjoy<sup>2</sup> quiet, you must lay waste the country about your cities.

---

## LESSON XLII

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

**334**

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

##### EXAMPLES

##### DIRECT

1. Quid facit?

##### INDIRECT

{ Rogat quid faciat.  
He asks what he is doing.  
Rogāvit quid faceret.  
He asked what he was doing.

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate, *in the same place*.

<sup>2</sup> ūti.





(a) Notice that the verb of the Apodosis of a conditional sentence, being independent, is changed to the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse; the verb of the Protasis, being dependent, is changed to the Subjunctive, following the regular sequence of tenses.

(b) Notice also that Protases of the Simple Present and the More and the Less Vivid Future Conditions have the same Subjunctive form when quoted. The Tense of the Infinitive in the Apodosis shows in part what kind of condition was used in the Direct Discourse; but there is no way of distinguishing between the two classes of Future Conditions when quoted, except by the context.

## 338

## VOCABULARY

<b>cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessurus, to</b> <i>withdraw, yield.</i>	<b>nūllus, -a, -um, no, none.<sup>2</sup></b>
<b>conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ven-</b> <b>tūrus (con + veniō, 276),</b> <i>to come together, assemble.</i>	<b>oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. attack,</b> <i>assault, siege (oppugnō,</i> <i>111).</i>
<b>discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus</b> <b>(dis + cēdō), to go away,</b> <i>depart.</i>	<b>ostendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntus, to</b> <i>show.</i>
<b>domus, -ūs, f. house, home.<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>pīlum, -ī, n. javelin.</b>
<b>existimō, -āre, to think.</b>	<b>quaerō, -ere, -sivī, -situs, to</b> <i>ask, enquire.</i>
<b>fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.</b>	<b>revertor, revertī, reversus, to</b> <i>return.<sup>3</sup></i>
<b>intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus,</b> <i>to perceive, understand.</i>	<b>salūs, -ūtis, f. safety, life.</b>
	<b>undique, adv. from all sides.</b>

- 339 1. Centuriō existimāvit, si tālī tempore oppugnātiōne dēsisteret, hostīs aut cōpiās dēductūros aut aedifi-

<sup>1</sup> See 465. The accu. without a preposition is used as the limit of motion like names of towns.

<sup>2</sup> Declined in full, 469.

<sup>3</sup> Usually deponent in the present system; in the perfect system the active **revertī** is used.

cia Rōmānōrum incēnsūrōs esse. 2. Nūntium rogāvit cūr tam trīstis esset. Respondit ille hostis undique convēnisse, hastis pilisque armātōs, neque procul abesse. 3. Caesar, nē caedēs māgna esset, silentiō māne reverti cōstituit; nē ūnum quidem diem mānserat. 4. Ipse dux certior factus est hostis iam discessisse, neque quisquam sciēbat ubi essent. Existimābat Caesar eōs mediam in prōvinciam profectōs esse. 5. Arbitrābātur, si tāli tempore sōl nūbibus occultārētur, imperītōs hominēs dē salūte dēspērātūrōs et oppugnātiōne dēstitūtōs esse. 6. In tantā difficultāte dixit eīs, si locō nōn cēderent, sē eōs incolumis domum dēductūrum esse. 7. Si sentient necesse esse mori, māiōre fortitūdine bellī fortunam experientur et sē fortiōrēs ostendent. 8. Quaesivit ab eīs quam ob rem māne prōgressi essent. Respondērunt sē bellī fortunam secundā hōrā experiri cupivisse. 9. Caesar intellēxit nisi locum nātūrā mūnitum nanciscerentur, eōs numquam proelium commissūros esse.

- 340** 1. He asked the messenger where the enemy were and why they had determined to return. 2. He thought that, if he returned, the enemy would advance and try the fortune of war. 3. The centurion was informed that the enemy had gathered from all sides and would attack the tower if Caesar should fall back from his position. 4. You ask why I wish to give up<sup>1</sup> the attack. I think it will be dangerous to stay here, if the enemy do not withdraw. 5. He told them that, if they should show themselves brave men, they need not despair of victory and safety. 6. Not to deprive<sup>2</sup> them altogether of hope, he says that if they withdraw quickly, they will reach<sup>3</sup> home in safety. 7. He asks how many miles distant the enemy are from the camp and how large an army they have.

---

<sup>1</sup> dēsistō.
<sup>2</sup> tollō.<sup>3</sup> revertor.

Quartō annō post coniūratiōnem Catilināe Gāius Iūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōsul est factus. Datae ei sunt in quinquennium prōvinciae, Gallia et Illyricum, deinde in alterum quinquennium prōrogatae. Pācavit autem annis novem paene omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Bis milites Rhēnum trādūxit Germānosque in ultimās regiōnēs sē recipere coēgit; bis etiam trāsgressus est in Brittaniam, quod inde Gallis auxilia missa erant, victorque in prōvinciam revertit. Septimō ex quō Caesar in Galliam vēnerat annō gravis oritur sēditio; paene omnes Galli, quōrum Vercingetorix erat dux, contrā Rōmānos coniūrant. Sed Caesar Alesiam, quō sē hostēs recēperant, expūgnavit et tōtam Galliam gravibus suppliciis pācavit. Interim cum Pompēiō et Crassō societātem illam rei pūblicae periculōsam renovāvit. Pompēiō etiam filiam Iūliam Caesar in mātrimonium dedit, ut eum sibi adiungeret; sed illa iam alterō annō moritur. Crassus, cui post cōsulātum quem cum Pompēiō gesserat, data est Syria et bellum Parthicum, ad Carrās, Mesopotamiae oppidum, ā dūce Parthōrum victus et interfectus est. Mox inimici erant Caesar et Pompēius: huic illius opēs suspectae erant, illum huius auctōritās grātiaque apud nōbilis sollicitābant.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup>

adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-	Carrae, -ārum, f. Carrae.
tus, to join to, attach.	cōsulātus, -ūs, m. consul-
alter, -era, -erum, other, second.	ship.
bis, adv. twice.	inde, adv. from that place.
	mātrimonium, -ī, n. marriage.

<sup>1</sup> Proper names are not ordinarily given in the vocabularies to the reading exercises, unless they present some difficulties.

<i>nōbillis</i> , -e, <i>noble</i> .	<i>Rhēnus</i> , -i, m. <i>the Rhine</i> .
<i>novem</i> , (indeclin.) <i>nine</i> .	<i>Rhodanus</i> , -i, m. <i>the Rhone</i> .
<i>opēs</i> , -um, f. plur. <i>power</i> .	<i>sēditio</i> , -ōnis, f. <i>uprising</i> .
<i>orior</i> , -iri, -ortus, <i>to arise</i> .	<i>societās</i> , -ātis, f. <i>alliance</i> .
<i>Parthicus</i> , -a, -um, <i>Parthian</i> .	<i>suspicio</i> , -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, <i>to suspect</i> .
<i>prōrogō</i> , -āre, <i>to extend</i> .	<i>trānsagredior</i> , -i, -gressus, <i>to cross</i> .
<i>quinquennium</i> , -i, n. <i>five years</i> .	
<i>renovō</i> , -āre, <i>to renew</i> .	

## LESSON XLIII

## THE COMPOUNDS OF SUM

342 THE only compounds of *sum* which present any peculiarities are *possum*, *can*, *be able*, and *prōsum*, *to be of advantage to*, *to help*. Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive entire of these verbs (486).

(a) *Possum* is a compound of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*; therefore the *t* appears everywhere before a vowel, e. g., *potest*, *poteram*, etc. *Prōsum* is compounded of *prōd* (an old form of *prō*) and *sum*.

## 343 DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Peditibus occurrit.</i>       | <i>He met the infantry.</i>                       |
| 2. <i>Equitātui prae-fuit.</i>      | <i>He was in charge of the cavalry.</i>           |
| 3. <i>Equitātui praefectus est.</i> | <i>He has been put in command of the cavalry.</i> |
| 4. <i>Haec tibi prōderunt.</i>      | <i>These things will be to your advantage.</i>    |

(a) Notice that the Dative, not the Accusative, is used with these Verbs Compounded with the preposi-

tions *ob*, *prae*, and *prō*. Many compound Latin verbs are intransitive and have the Dative depending on them thus; but their English equivalents are often transitive.

- 344** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*.

W. 332; B. 187, iii; AG. 228; H. 429.

**345**

## VOCABULARY

<i>cōsistō</i> , -ere, -stiti, —, <i>to</i>	<i>praesum</i> , -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
<i>stand</i> , <i>halt</i> .	<i>to be in command of</i> .
<i>fossa</i> , -ae, <i>f. ditch</i> .	(Compare <i>prae</i> ficiō, 283).
<i>interim</i> , <i>adv. meanwhile</i> .	<i>profeciō</i> , -ōnis, <i>f. departure</i>
<i>occurrō</i> , -ere, -curri, -cursū-	( <i>proficiscor</i> , 298).
<i>rus</i> , <i>to go to meet</i> , <i>resist</i> .	<i>prōpōnō</i> , -ere, -posui, -posi-
<i>ōrātiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>f. speech</i> . <sup>1</sup>	<i>tus</i> ( <i>prō</i> + <i>pōnō</i> , 314), <i>to</i>
<i>orior</i> , -iri, <i>ortus</i> , <i>to arise</i> .	<i>set forth</i> , <i>tell</i> , <i>offer</i> .
<i>peditātus</i> , -ūs, <i>m. foot-soldiers</i> ,	<i>quō</i> , <i>adv. whither</i> , <i>to which</i>
<i>infantry</i> ( <i>pedes</i> , 291).	<i>place</i> .
<i>polliceor</i> , -ēri, -itus, <i>to prom-</i>	<i>tandem</i> , <i>adv. at last</i> , <i>finally</i> .
<i>ise</i> .	<i>vēlōciter</i> , <i>adv. swiftly</i> .

- 346** 1. Ille lēgātus, quī peditātui praefuit, cōstitit nōn procul ā classe, et māgnā vōce apud imperitām et egen-tem multitudinem ōrātiōnem habuit. 2. Deinde quibusdam prōposuit quō hostēs prōgrederentur et quot convēnissent; hortābātur ut eōs cōsequerentur et ostendit victōriam suis prōfutūram esse. 3. Pollicētur sē eis multum etiam argentum datūrum esse, quō fruantur quōque aedificia domōsque faciant. 4. Centuriōnem quendam multitudinī praefēcit, ac iussit eum hastis pilisque eōs armāre; postquam sōl ortus est, silentiō peditātum praemittit. 5. Arbitrābātur eōs, si vēlōciter prōgrederentur, exercitum cui Quīntus praeesset cōsequi posse. 6. Secundā hōrā hostēs, nūllō certō ordine profecti, effēcē-

<sup>1</sup> ōrātiōnem habēre, *to make a speech*.

runt ut similis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 7. Interim nōnnūllī convēnērunt et vacua ab militibus aedificia esse audivērunt; statim clāmōrem ingentem tollunt et prōgrediuntur. 8. Propter altitudinem fossae, peditātus cui centuriō praeerat neque sequī neque revertī poterat. 9. Quaesivit ab eis cūr aut dē suā salūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent. Post hanc ōrātiōnem vëlōciter hostibus occurrērunt. 10. Tandem coniugibus hostium signisque potiti sunt et domum discessērunt nē iniquam condiōnem experirentur.

- 347** 1. The infantry, of which Labienus was in charge, halted not far from the ditch. 2. Caesar put Labienus in charge of the infantry, which then went to meet<sup>1</sup> the army. 3. He promises that he will lead them off home, if they show themselves brave men. 4. They were able neither to advance nor to retreat, and it was of no avail to them to have found out the enemy's plans. 5. He asked them why they had not set out and gone to meet the enemy. 6. In the meantime the sun rose; he delivered a speech in which he told them where his brother had gone. 7. That their departure might not have the appearance of flight, they advanced with a shout and showed their spears. 8. If Caesar had been in charge of those troops, they would not have despaired of their lives<sup>2</sup> and returned home.

---

## LESSON XLIV

### VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

- 348** LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitives of *volō*, *to wish*, *nōlō*, *to be unwilling*, and *mālō*, *to prefer* (487).

---

<sup>1</sup> One word.

<sup>2</sup> *salūs*.

(a) **Nŏlŏ** is compounded of **nĕ**, *not*, and **volŏ**; **mĕlŏ** of the stem of **magis**, *more*, and **volŏ**.

(b) Notice that the Present Indicative, and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive are the only tenses in which any irregular forms appear. None of these verbs has a Future Infinitive.

(c) These verbs are all followed by the Complementary or Object Infinitive.

## 349

## VOCABULARY

<b>adorior</b> , -iri, -ortus (ad + orior, 345), to rise up against, attack, assault.	<b>militāris</b> , -e, pertaining to war (miles, 142).
<b>alter</b> , altera, alterum, the other of two (469). (Compare alius, 331.)	<b>omnīnŏ</b> , adv. altogether, wholly.
<b>dĕbeŏ</b> , -ĕre, dĕbui, dĕbitus, to owe, ought.	<b>patior</b> , -i, passus, to suffer, allow.
<b>ferĕ</b> , adv. almost. <sup>1</sup>	<b>prope</b> , adv. and prep. with accu. near.
<b>imprŏvisŏ</b> , adv. suddenly, unexpectedly.	<b>quantus</b> , -a, -um, how great, as great as. <sup>2</sup>
<b>intermittŏ</b> , -ere, -misi, -missus, to stop, interrupt, let pass.	<b>quisque</b> , quaeque, quidque, each one. <sup>3</sup>
	<b>subsidiū</b> , -i, n. reserve, aid.

- 350 1. Centuriŏ, quī peditātui praeerat, subsidium ad Caesarem mittere volĕbat, sed imperitus rei militāris<sup>4</sup> erat.  
 2. Alium ducem peditātui praeficere nŏlĕbat Caesar nĕ omnīnŏ timidis hominibus<sup>5</sup> spem salūtis tolleret. 3. Cae-

<sup>1</sup> Used chiefly with numerals and negative adjectives and adverbs; **paene**, 305, is of wider application and is found with verbs as well.

<sup>2</sup> Frequently used as a correlative with **tantus**, 252: **tantam multitudinem interfēcērunt quantum diēi tempus est passum.** They killed as great a number as the time allowed.

<sup>3</sup> Declined in full, 478.

<sup>4</sup> **rĕs militāris**, science of war.

<sup>5</sup> Translate from.



sar cōpiās pedestris ā labōre revocāvit atque hostis secūtus est quantum diēi tempus est passum, ut alterō diē māne eis occurreret. 4. Māluit imperitum dūcem classī praeesse quam alium in tantā difficultāte praefici, quod hostis improvīsō adoriri voluit. 5. Arborēs māgnā altitūdine prope classem erant; caelum nūbibus occultābātur ut nostrī ab hostibus neque audiri neque vidēri possent. 6. Cōfidēbat, sī pecūniam eis pollicērētur, sē ab eis impetrātūrum esse ut domōs finitimōrum incenderent et sē sequerentur. 7. Nullum ferē diem intermittēbant quīn pedestri proeliō experirentur quid in quōque animi esset; ac paene cotidiē decem milium passuum iter facere solēbant. 8. Nōn intellegō utrum cōsiliū probēs, neque quisquam est quī sē iūdicāre posse dicat. 9. Nisi fossā essēmus impediti quīn hostibus vėlōciter occurrissēmus, numquam morāti essēmus. 10. Nōn modo bonam fortunam spērāre debēs, sed etiam malam cum fortitūdine experiri. Beātus ille, cui pauca satis sunt!

- 351** 1. On the second day Caesar wished to advance swiftly, in order that he might attack the enemy unexpectedly. 2. The soldiers allowed hardly a day to pass<sup>1</sup> without advancing many miles. 3. They preferred to do this rather than<sup>2</sup> to be defeated in battle line. 4. As long as the time of day allowed, they followed the enemy, for Caesar had promised them much money. 5. They were unwilling to leave the fleet before midnight, for fear they should be seen or heard. 6. He does not doubt that if he places another in charge of the infantry, the soldiers will despair of their lives. 7. Caesar wished to set out early the next day, in order to engage the enemy.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare 350, 7.

<sup>2</sup> quam.

*The Beginning of Civil War (52-48 B. C.)*

Itaque Pompēius, postquam cōsul sine collēgā creātus est, lēgem tulit<sup>1</sup> nē cui absenti cōsulātum petere liceret, quā lēge plēbiscitum abrogāvit, quō paulō ante Caesarī permissum erat ut absēns alterum cōsulātum peteret; atque inimīci Caesaris senātui persuāsērunt ut ante tempus ex Galliā revocārētur. Tum Caesar suōs militēs est hortātus ut imperātorem cūius ductū<sup>2</sup> tot annīs plūrima proelia secunda fēcissent finisque imperi Rōmāni auxissent, ab inimicis dēfenderent, et trāns Rubicōnem, quod flūmen est inter Galliam Cisalpīnam<sup>3</sup> et Ītaliā, contendit. Cōsulēs senātusque omnis cum Pompēiō ex urbe et ex Ītaliā in Graeciam fūgērunt, ubi bellum contrā Caesarem parāvērunt. Is vacuā urbe aerāriōque potitus est et dictātorem sē fēcit. Inde Hispaniās<sup>4</sup> petiit: ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs fortissimōsque cum dūcibus superāvit, sed militēs omnis incolumis dīmisit. Deinde postquam Massiliam expūgnāvit, Rōmam rediit<sup>5</sup> et cōsul creātus est cum Publiō Serviiliō. Mox in Graeciam profectus est ut contrā Pompēium dīmīcāret. Primō proeliō victus est et fugātus; sed nōn est captus quod Pompēius noctū sequi nōluit, dīxitque Caesar nec Pompēium scire vincere ac sē effectūrum esse ut postea numquam superāri posset.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

abrogō, -āre, to abrogate, aerārium, -ī, n. treasury.  
abolish. Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, this side  
absēns, absent. the Alps.

<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. act. of *ferō*, to carry; with *lēgem*, to have a law passed.

<sup>2</sup> Under whose leadership.

<sup>3</sup> Roughly that portion of northern Italy which is included in the modern Piedmont, Lombardy, and Emilia.

<sup>4</sup> Spain was at this time divided into two provinces.

<sup>5</sup> Returned.

<b>collēga</b> , -ae, m. <i>colleague</i> .	<b>lēx</b> , lēgis, f. <i>law</i> .
<b>cōnsulātus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>consulship</i> .	<b>nē quis</b> , <i>that not . . . any one</i> (478).
<b>creō</b> , -āre, <i>to elect</i> .	<b>noctū</b> , adv. <i>by night</i> .
<b>dictātor</b> , -ōris, m. <i>dictator</i> .	<b>permittō</b> , -ere, -misi, -missus (per + mittō), <i>to allow, entrust</i> .
<b>dimittō</b> , -ere, -misi, -missus (di + mittō), <i>to send away</i> .	<b>plēbiscitum</b> , -i, n. <i>vote of the people</i> .
<b>ductus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>leadership (dux)</i> .	

## LESSON XLV

## COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

**353** LEARN the Imperatives of all the paradigms 479–486, and of **nōlō**, 487. The pres. imper. sing. of **dico**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō**<sup>1</sup> are **dic**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**; their other imperative forms are regular.

**354**

## EXAMPLES

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Haec laudā.</b>                | <i>Praise these things.</i>                     |
| 2. <b>Nōli haec laudāre.</b>         | <i>Don't praise these things.</i>               |
| 3. <b>Cavē nē haec laudēs.</b>       | <i>Take care not to praise these things.</i>    |
| 4. <b>Fac (vidē) nē haec laudēs.</b> | <i>See that you do not praise these things.</i> |

(a) The first example illustrates the common way of expressing a Command or Request in the second person;<sup>2</sup> in the first and third persons, and sometimes in

<sup>1</sup> The full conjugation of this verb will be given later.

<sup>2</sup> The future imperative is rare, being only used in sentences stating an expected result or in formal language, laws, etc.

the second, the Hortatory or Jussive Subjunctive is used, 239.

(b) The second example illustrates the most common way of expressing a Prohibition in the second person; sometimes the imperatives *cavē*, *beware*, *fac* or *vidē*, *see to it*, followed by *nē* and the present subjunctive, are used as in 3 and 4.

(c) For prohibitions in the first and third persons, the Hortatory Subjunctive is used, 239.

**355** *Rule.*—The Imperative states the action of the verb as a Command or Request.

W. 495; B. 281; AG. 269; H. 560.

**356** *Rule.*—Prohibitions are regularly expressed by *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the Infinitive; sometimes by *cavē*, *fac* or *vidē*, with *nē* and the present subjunctive.

W. 496, 1.3; B. 276, c; AG. 269, a, 2.3; H. 561.

**357** VOCABULARY

<i>caveō</i> , -ēre, <i>cāvi</i> , <i>cautus</i> , <i>to be on one's guard, take care not.</i>	<i>incertus</i> , -a, -um ( <i>in + certus</i> , 192), <i>uncertain.</i>
<i>complūrēs</i> , -ia or -a ( <i>gen. -ium</i> ), <i>several.</i>	<i>instituō</i> , -ere, -ui, -ūtus, <i>to begin.</i>
<i>cōficiō</i> , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus ( <i>con + faciō</i> , 272), <i>to complete, finish, weaken.</i>	<i>mercātor</i> , -ōris, <i>m. trader.</i>
<i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um, <i>tired out.</i>	<i>opus</i> , -eris, <i>n. work.</i>
<i>excitō</i> , -āre, <i>to arouse.</i>	<i>quamquam</i> , conj. <i>although, and yet.</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>facultās</i> , -ātis, <i>f. opportunity.</i>	<i>quidem</i> , adv. <i>at least, in fact, etc.</i>
	<i>voluntās</i> , -ātis, <i>f. will, wish.</i>

**358** 1. *Habētis, milītēs, facultātem quam voluistis; iniquō locō et imprōvisō adorimini hostis, nōlīte cēdere.* 2. *Nōlite ūnam quidem hōram opus intermittere; dūcem ipsum audire haec et vidēre existimāte; subsidium mit-*

<sup>1</sup> Used with the Indicative.

tite. 3. Vidēte nē locō cēdātis; multam vōbīs pecūniam prōpōnō et hanc mē vōbīs datūrum esse polliceor, sī hostīs cōsequāminī. 4. Opus cōficiāmus; tēla, hastās pilaque, expediāmus; insignis erit vōbīs glōria, si hostīs premētis. 5. Cōstitērunt militēs et ad opus discessērunt; quisque alterō diē cōgnōscere voluit quō hostēs sē recēpissent. 6. "Arborēs portāte ut castra mūniātis." Hāc ōrātiōne mōtī militēs, quamquam dēfessi erant, sē ex quiēte excitāvērunt et opus instituērunt. 7. Aliae<sup>1</sup> gentēs equīs māgnoperē dēlectantur, aliae eōs sacrōs habent; ad hanc gentem ab mercātōribus portantur. 8. Germānī complūrēs annōs ā Suēbīs premēbantur; hī nihil omnīnō contrā suam voluntātem facere solēbant. 9. Cavē nē existimēs eōs domum reversūrōs esse; spērō et cōfidō eōs revertisse, sed incertum est. 10. Nōn imperitī rei militāris sunt; paene cotidiānis proeliis contendere mālēbant quam pāce frui.

- 359** 1. Halt, soldiers, and pitch camp; see that the enemy do not attack you unexpectedly. 2. Do not desist from the work; believe that Caesar sees all that you do. 3. The opportunity that you desired is here; be brave men; fight as long as the time of day will allow.<sup>2</sup> 4. It was uncertain which of the two plans Caesar approved; but the soldiers preferred to fight. 5. Although they were tired, they set to work as soon as the sun had risen. 6. They were nearly all aroused by this speech, nor was there anyone who did not wish to meet the enemy. 7. They never did anything which they did not wish to do;<sup>3</sup> still they were skilled in military matters. 8. They asked the traders, of whom there were several present, what they brought.

---

<sup>1</sup> *aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.*

<sup>2</sup> Compare 350, 3.

<sup>3</sup> *voluntās*; compare 358, 8.

## LESSON XLVI

## THE VERBS EŌ AND FĪŌ

eō, ire, (ivī) ii, itūrus, to go.

- 360 LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) The stem is -i-; this appears as -e- in the forms eō, eunt, euntō, and in the present subjunctive throughout.

fīō, fierī, factus, to be made, become.

- 361 Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) Notice that the i is long except in the form fit and when followed by -er.

(b) Fīō is the passive of faciō; but compounds of faciō which, like efficiō, change the a to i have regular passives, e. g., efficior, effici, effectus.

## 362

## VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -ntis, m. and f. <i>young man or woman.</i>	noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, <i>to harm.</i> <sup>1</sup>
circumveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ven- tus (circum + veniō, 276), <i>to surround.</i>	noctū, adv. <i>by night</i> (nox). nōndum, adv. <i>not yet.</i>
coepl, -isse, coeptus, to be- gin. <sup>1</sup>	opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres- sus (ob + premō, 291), to <i>overwhelm.</i>
ēducō, -ere, -xī, -ctus (ē + ducō, 264), to lead forth.	permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (per + mittō, 260), to yield, <i>surrender, permit.</i>
expeditus, -a, -um, lightly burdened, unincumbered (expediō, 283).	prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessūrus (prō + cēdō, 338), to ad- <i>vance.</i>
latus, -eris, n. side, flank.	

<sup>1</sup> The present system is supplied by incipiō, -ere.

<sup>2</sup> Used with the dative.

**363** 1. Eōsdem quōs in fugā esse arbitrābantur, ad sē ire vidērunt; itaque ipsī fugere coepērunt. 2. Fiēbat ut clāmor post tergum tollerētur. Tum undique convēnērunt hostēs et nostrōs ab latere sinistrō adortī, circumvērunt. 3. Interim adulēscētem quendam praemisit, quī eōs māgnoperē hortārētur nē longius tālī tempore prōcēderent. 4. Sōl iam ortus erat, sed eī quī, ut hostīs opprimerent, trāns fossam ierant, nōndum reverterant. 5. Nōlite fugā salūtem petere; primum cōsistite, deinde contrā hostīs vëlōciter ite; sic spērō vōs servārī posse. 6. Etsi propter altitudinem flūminis erat summa difficultās, tamen cōpiās pedestris noctū trādūcere coepit. 7. Caesar postquam quid ā quōque fierī velit ostendit, legiōnēs expeditās ēdūcit; statim sē suaque omnia potestātī eiūs permīsērunt hostēs. 8. Haec ad sē portārī ab mercātōribus Germānī nōn patiuntur, quod ea sibi nocēre existimant. 9. Ūnā nocte Germānī eōs vulneribus dolōreque cōfectōs adortī omnis oppressērunt. 10. Hic est Gallōrum mōs, ut mercātōrēs, etiam invitōs, cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit, quaerant.

**364** 1. Caesar ordered them first to make camp, then to go against the enemy. 2. He showed what he wished to be done by each man, that they might not be surrounded and attacked on all sides. 3. Finish the work which you have begun; do not surrender yourselves and all your possessions to them. 4. The Germans thought that many things which the traders brought injured them. 5. Therefore some tribes did not allow the traders to go to them, but used what they themselves had. 6. The storming of the town was so difficult for the right flank that nearly everybody was killed. 7. They would have begun to march early, if there had not been the greatest difficulty on account of their baggage.

## READING EXERCISE

*The Civil Wars (continued)*

Deinde in Thessaliā ad<sup>1</sup> Pharsalum ingentibus cōpiis diū dīmicātum est. Postrēmō victus est Pompēius: ipse fugātus<sup>2</sup> Alexandrēam petiit ut ā rēge Aegypti acciperet auxilia. Sed hīc fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus<sup>3</sup> occidit Pompēium et caput eius ad Caesarem misit; quī, ubi caput tantī viri et generi quondam sui vīdit, etiam lacrimās fūdisse dīcitur.

Mox Caesar Alexandrēam<sup>4</sup> vēnit. Ipsum quoque Ptolemaeus conātus est interficere; itaque rēgi bellum illātum est,<sup>5</sup> quī victus in Nīlō moritur. Caesar Alexandrēā potītus,<sup>3</sup> rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorori. Deinde Pharnacem quī ad Pompēium in Graeciam auxilium miserat, aciē vicit; postea ad mortem eum coēgit. Postquam Rōmam revertit, sē cōsulem cum Lepidō collēgā fēcit. Deinde in Africam profectus,<sup>3</sup> suos inimicōs post multa proelia superāvit. Ubi Catō, quī nōn longē ab urbe Uticā castra posuerat, certior est factus de victōriis eius, mortem sibi cōscīvit.

Post annum Caesar Rōmam revertit ubi quartō sē cōsulem fēcit. Ei tamen quiēte fruī nōn licuit: statim in Hispāniās est profectus, quod ibi Pompēi filii, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingēns bellum parāverant. Multa proelia secūta sunt quōrum ultimum ad Mundam erat. In hōc proeliō Caesar paene victus est ut sē voluerit occidere nē post tantam rei militāris glōriam in potestātem inimicōrum

---

<sup>1</sup> *Near.*

<sup>2</sup> Perf. pass. partic. agreeing with *ipse*.

<sup>3</sup> Observe that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

<sup>4</sup> See 236, 10.

<sup>5</sup> Perf. indic. pass. of *Inferō*, an irregular verb which is treated in Lesson LI; translate, *was brought on*.



venerit; dēnique suōs in aciem redūxit vicitque hostīs.  
Ex Pompēi filiis māior<sup>1</sup> occisus est, minor fūgit.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

cōnsciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus,	gener, -erī, m. son-in-law.
to determine; with mor-	glōria, -ae, f. glory.
tem sibi, to commit sui-	lacrima, -ae, f. tear.
cide.	postrēmō, adv. finally.
fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.	quartō, adv. for the fourth
fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsus, to	time.
pour out.	soror, -ōris, f. sister.

## LESSON XLVII

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES

366

## EXAMPLES

1. **Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.**  
*After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*
2. **Ubi parāti sunt, oppida sua incendērunt.**  
*When they were prepared, they set their towns on fire.*
3. **Cum primum potuit, ad exercitum contendit.**  
*As soon as he could, he hurried to the army.*

(a) The pupil will remember that similar sentences have been used frequently in the preceding lessons. Such temporal clauses usually refer to a single past action and take the Perfect Indicative.

**Rule.**—*Postquam, after, ubi, ut, when, cum primum, ubi primum, simul atque (simul ac), as soon as, when referring to a single past action, are used with the Perfect Indicative.*

W. 530, 531; B. 287; AG. 324; H. 602.

<sup>1</sup> *māior* is often used to mean *the elder*; *minor*, *the younger*. Compare *māiorēs*, *ancestors*.

### 367 CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM<sup>1</sup>

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Oppidum nōn antequam tēla deerant expūgnātum est.**  
*The town was not taken until arms failed.*
2. **Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt.**  
*They did not stop fleeing until they reached the river.*
3. **Caesar priusquam haec faciat, castra oppūgnābit.**  
*Before Caesar does (shall do) this, he will storm the camp.*
4. **Priusquam id effici posset, Rōmāni aderant.**  
*The Romans were there before that could be done.*

(a) Notice that in the first two sentences the clauses introduced by **antequam** and **priusquam** express an actual fact and have the Indicative; but in sentences 3 and 4 the clauses express an act as anticipated and have the Subjunctive.

- 368** *Rule.*—**Antequam** and **priusquam** are used with the Indicative to express an actual fact; with the Subjunctive to express an act as anticipated.

W. 534; B. 291, 292; AG. 327; H. 605.

### 369 CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY DUM

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Dum haec geruntur, ad flūmen contendērunt.**  
*While this was being done, they hurried to the river.*
2. **Dum erat facultās, abibant.**  
*So long as there was a chance, they went away.*

---

<sup>1</sup> **Antequam** and **priusquam** are compounded of the adverbs **ante**, **prius**, and the conjunction **quam**; they are often separated: **ante . . . quam**, **prius . . . quam**; as in sentence 2.

3. **Caesar expectat dum nāvēs convenient.**

*Caesar is waiting until the ships (shall) assemble.*

4. **Caesar nōn expectāvit dum Helvētīi pervenirent.**

*Caesar did not wait until the Helvetii should arrive.*

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 **dum**, *while*, is used with the Present Indicative expressing a continued action in past time. The Present is used, as the clause expresses something which was going on at the same time with the action of the principal verb; but we translate by the past.

(b) When, as in sentence 2, **dum** means *so long as*, any tense of the Indicative may be used.

(c) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 **dum**, *until*, introduces clauses of expected action and that the Subjunctive is used.<sup>1</sup>

**370** *Rule.*—**Dum**, *while*, is used with the Present Indicative; **dum**, *so long as*, with any tense of the Indicative; but **dum**, *until*, introducing a clause of expected action, is used with the Subjunctive.

W. 523; B. 293; AG. 328; H. 603.

**371**

## VOCABULARY

abēō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ab + eō, 360), <i>to go away.</i>	interclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, <i>to cut off.</i>
compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, <i>to fill, cover.</i>	poscō, -ere, poposci (poscitūrus), <i>to demand.</i>
concēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus (cum + cēdō, 338), <i>to yield.</i>	prōvideō, -ēre, -vidi, -visus (prō + videō, 229), <i>to provide.</i>
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. <i>sally.</i>	trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (trāns + eo, 360), <i>to cross.</i>
extrā, prep. <i>outside of.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes **dum**, *until*, introduces an actual event; it is then used with the Indicative: **expectāvērunt dum pervēnit.** *They waited until he arrived (not for him to arrive).*

**372** 1. Cum primum facultās data est, cōpiās ēdūxit et montem militibus complere coepit. 2. Nōn prius eum abire patiuntur quam ab eō concessum sit, ut hostibus alterō diē occurrerent. 3. Nōn prius ille vacuus ā militibus relictus est locus quam ēruptiō est facta. 4. Dum adūlēscentēs longius prōcēdunt, hōstēs quī undique convēnērunt ēruptiōnem fēcērunt et eōs castris interclūsērunt. 5. Dum tempus noctis patiēbātur, quiēte per herbam fruēbantur. Ubi sōl ortus est, abibant, atque eō diē multa milia passuum prōcēdēbant. 6. Dixit eōs ipsōs quidem nōn debere dubitare, quā hostēs prōgredi extrā agmen auderent. 7. Exspectāvit dum omnēs undique convenirent; antequam abiret, quid in tantā difficultāte vellet, imperāvit. 8. In ēiusmodi difficultātibus, quantum diligentia prōvidēri poterat, sapienter prōvidēbātur. Signum profectiōnis datum est priusquam hostēs domum discēderent. 9. Priusquam ei certiorēs fierent, obsidēs poposcit, atque postquam hī traditi sunt, flūmen trānsiit. 10. Nihil erat quod sē virtūte nōn efficere posse putarent, nec prius sequi dēstitērunt quam mūrō portisque adpropinquāvērunt.

**373** 1. So long as the night allowed, they advanced; but they did not arrive before the sun rose. 2. As soon as they arrived, he began to lead forth his troops and to cross the river. 3. He brought all his legions together into one place, before the Gauls could be informed of his arrival. 4. The enemy waited until he should cover the hill with men, before they made an attack. 5. While the soldiers were pitching and fortifying the camp, the young men made a sally. 6. There was no provision<sup>1</sup> that was not made, and they thought that with courage they could do everything. 7. Do not stop advancing until you arrive near the wall and the gates of the city. 8. After

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare **372**, 8.

the hostages had been handed over, Caesar departed and the tired soldiers dispersed to their homes.

## LESSON XLVIII

### CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY CUM

#### CUM TEMPORAL

374

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Tēcum videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō.**  
*I seem to be with you when I read your letter.*
2. **Tum erās cōsul cum meam domum incendēbant.**  
*You were consul at the time when they set my house on fire.*
3. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haedui.**  
*At the time Caesar entered Gaul, the Haedui were the leaders.*

(a) Notice that these clauses introduced by **cum**, like those in 366, fix or determine the time which is meant, and have the Indicative. Often the independent part of the sentence contains **tum**, **eō tempore**, *then, at that time*, or a similar expression. Compare these clauses with defining Relative Clauses 281, b, remembering that **cum** is itself a relative.

#### CUM CIRCUMSTANTIAL

375

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, sē in montem recēpērunt.**  
*Being unable to (when they could not) withstand the charges of our soldiers any longer, they withdrew to the mountain.*

2. **Caesari cum id nūtiātum esset, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit.**

*When this had been reported to Caesar, he hurried into further Gaul.*

3. **His cum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt.**

*Being unable to (since they could not) persuade these, they sent envoys.*

4. **Cum diū pūgnātum sit, hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.**

*While (although) the battle lasted a long time, no one could see an enemy.*

(a) Notice that all these clauses introduced by **cum** express not the time so much as the situation or the circumstances, under which the action denoted by the principal verb took place, and have the Subjunctive. If the Indicative had been used in 1 and 2, **cum . . . nōn poterant**; **cum . . . nūtiātum erat**, to give the full meaning we should have had to translate: *It was when they could not*; *It was when report had been made*, etc.

(b) In English we use either a participial clause, as in the translation of 1 and 3, or a relative *when*, *as*, etc., to express the same relation. Such clauses in English may express simply the circumstances or they may be causal or concessive: e. g., "Being in town, I saw him," may tell nothing but the circumstances under which I saw him; but it may also mean, "Because I was in town, I saw him"; or even "Although I was in town, I saw him." Exactly so in Latin, circumstantial clauses with **cum** and the Subjunctive may express Cause as in 3, or Concession as in 4.

- 376 **Rule.**—*Cum* is used with the Indicative to determine the particular time of an action; with the Subjunctive to state the situation or circumstances of an action; such clauses may also express Cause or Concession.

W. 535, 536, 542, 571; B. 288, 289, 309. 3; AG. 325, 326; H. 598, 600, 601.

## 377

## VOCABULARY

dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (dē + faciō, 272), <i>to fail, be wanting.</i>	nāscor, nāsci, nātus, <i>to be born, arise.</i>
instruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus, <i>to arrange, draw up.</i>	nocturnus, -a, -um, <i>of the night, by night (nox, 177).</i>
legō, -ere, lēgi, lectus, <i>to read.</i>	perficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (per + faciō, 272), <i>to finish.</i>
littera, -ae, f. <i>letter</i> (of the alphabet), plur. <i>letter</i> (epistle).	prōdūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctus (prō + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead forth.</i>
mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. <i>fortification</i> (mūniō, 291).	propinquus, -a, -um, <i>neighboring; as a substantive, relative.</i>

- 378 1. Caesar, cum suōs iniquō locō pūgnātūrōs esse existimāret, eōs ē castris ēducere et ab<sup>1</sup> dextrō latere hostium cōstituere coepit. 2. Dum illi dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt,<sup>2</sup> litterās ad lēgātum mīsit nē animō dēficeret. 3. Cum vir insigni locō nātus mortuus est, propinquī conveniunt ut de morte eius quaerant. 4. Nōlite vōs potestātī eōrum permittere; omnia prius experiantur quam illud cōsiliū probētis. 5. Cum ipse centuriō vulneribus aetāteque cōnfectus esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat. 6. Eō tempore cum ēruptiō facta est, labōre vulneribusque cōnfēctī hostis circumveniēbātis et ā castris interclūdēbātis. 7. Cum milites summō studiō signum poscerent, cōpiās prōdūcī aciemque instruī iussit. 8. Antequam suis persuadēre posset ut extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcēderent, hostēs fossam trānsierant. 9. Labōre operis quod nōndum perfectum est defessī, simulque adventū hostium perterritī, neque ēruptiōnem facere neque aciem instruere audēbant.

<sup>1</sup> Giving the direction; translate *on*.

<sup>2</sup> Often, as here, *to discuss, treat*.

10. Ubi litterās Caesaris lēgit, cōpiās expeditās ēdūcī et incertīs itineribus noctū ad eum ire iussit.

- 379** 1. When he arrived at the camp, he learned that the neighboring tribes were in arms. 2. Since not only courage but also weapons now failed our men,<sup>1</sup> the centurion ordered them to withdraw. 3. Although they were tired out by the long march, they did not stop<sup>2</sup> working day or night. 4. The enemy filled up the ditch before Caesar's soldiers knew what was being done. 5. At the very time when that sally took place, we were crossing the river. 6. Inasmuch as the fortifications had not yet been finished, he sent a letter to Caesar for aid.<sup>3</sup> 7. While this was happening in Gaul, Caesar was arming the young men. 8. As soon as he had read the letter, he went to the other camp, of which his brother was in charge. 9. Being unable to persuade the soldiers to fight, he ordered them to withdraw within<sup>4</sup> the fortifications.

**380**

## READING EXERCISE

*The Assassination of Caesar 44 B. C.*

Iam omnia bella cīvilīa tōtō orbe<sup>5</sup> terrārum composuerat ut Rōmam revertī posset. Cum plūrimī mǎximīque honōrēs ā senātū dēcrētī essent, inter quōs ut<sup>6</sup> pater patriae appellārētur āc dictātor perpetuus esset, cīvēs ei<sup>7</sup> irātī esse coepērunt quod honōrēs, quī ā populō antea dēcernēbantur, dabat eis quibus voluit, et senātūi,<sup>8</sup> quī ei tantōs honōrēs dederat, nōn adsurgēbat aliaque paene rēgia insolentius faciēbat; sed cum populus eum rēgem appellāvisset, respondit *Caesarem sē, nōn rēgem esse*, et cum ā cōsule Antōniō diadēma saepius capitī<sup>9</sup> admōtum

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> intermittō. Compare 358, 2.

<sup>3</sup> Use a purpose clause.

<sup>4</sup> In with the accu.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. of place.

<sup>6</sup> ut . . . appellārētur, etc., a substantive clause depending on dēcrētī essent.

<sup>7</sup> Dative.

<sup>8</sup> Dat. depending on a compound verb, 344.



esset, reppulit atque in templum Iovis misit. Contrā eum multi senātōrēs equitēsque coniūrāvērunt. Princīpēs inter coniūrātōs fuērunt duo Brūtī, Marcus et Decius, ex eō genere Brūtī, quī primus cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, Cāius Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ab his Caesar cum inter cēterōs<sup>1</sup> vēnisset in cūriam, multis vulneribus occisus est; deinde Capitōlium occupātum est. Cum obliuio caedis eius ā senātū dēcrēta esset atque obsidēs accepti essent, coniūrātī ā Capitōliō dēscendērunt. Testāmentō Caesaris inter hērēdēs institūtus et in nōmēn adoptātus est Cāius Octavius, sorōris nepōs; populō Rōmānō horti trāns Tiberim datī sunt. Corpus Caesaris, cum in campum Martium portārētur, ā plebe ante rōstra<sup>2</sup> cremātum est.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,	duo, <i>two</i> . <sup>3</sup>
<i>to bring near.</i>	hērēs, -ēdis, m. <i>heir</i> .
adoptō, -āre, <i>to adopt</i> .	insolenter, adv. <i>haughtily</i> .
adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -sur-	irātus, -a, -um, <i>angry</i> .
rēctus, <i>to rise before</i> .	nepōs, -ōtis, m. <i>grandson</i> .
Capitōlium, -i, n. <i>the capitol</i> .	obliuio, -ōnis, f. <i>pardon</i> .
civilis, -e, <i>civil</i> .	orbis, -is, m. <i>circle</i> ; orbis
compōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus,	terrārum, <i>the world</i> .
<i>to settle, finish</i> .	perpetuus, -a, -um, <i>perpetual</i> ,
coniūrātus, -i, m. <i>conspira-</i>	<i>permanent</i> .
<i>tor</i> .	repellō, -ere, reppuli, -pulsus,
cūria, -ae, f. <i>senate-house</i> .	<i>to put away, refuse</i> .
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus,	rōstra, -ōrum, n. <i>rostra, plat-</i>
<i>to vote, decree</i> .	<i>form (for speakers)</i> .
diadēma, -atis, n. <i>crown</i> .	soror, -ōris, f. <i>sister</i> .
dictātor, -ōris, m. <i>dictator</i> .	testāmentum, -i, n. <i>will</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Supply senātōrēs.<sup>2</sup> So called because it was adorned with the rams (rōstra) of captured ships. A temple was afterward built at the spot where Caesar's body was burned.<sup>3</sup> The declension will be given later.

## LESSON XLIX

### CAUSE AND CONCESSION

#### CAUSE

- 381** ONE of the most common ways of expressing cause is by **cum** and the Subjunctive, **376**; other particles are **quod**, which has already been used, **264**, **quia**, and **quoniam**, *because*, *since*.

#### 382

#### EXAMPLES

1. **Quod mōns aberat mille passūs, eō sē recēpērunt.**  
*Because the mountain was a mile away, they withdrew to it.*
2. **Quia haec fieri nōn posse intellegēbant.**  
*Because they understood that this could not be done.*
3. **Quoniam mē vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vōs quidem dēfendam.**  
*Since I cannot save myself and you, I will defend you at least.*
4. **Aristidēs expulsus est patriā quod iūstus esset.**  
*Aristides was driven from his native land, because (as people said) he was just.*

(a) Notice that in sentences 1–3 the causal clauses with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam** and the Indicative state the reasons as those of the writer or speaker, while in 4, where the reason of some one else is reported, the Subjunctive is used. Such a Subjunctive is really in Indirect Discourse, as the implied quotation shows.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Naturally when a verb of saying or thinking is expressed, all causal clauses, being subordinate, must have the Subjunctive.

- 383** *Rule.*—*Quod, quia, quoniam, because, since,* are used with the Indicative to give the reason of the speaker or writer; with the Subjunctive to give the reason of some one else.

W. 544-546, B. 286; AG. 321; H. 588.

#### CONCESSION

- 384** Two of the common ways of expressing concession are by *cum* with the Subjunctive, 376, and by *etsi, even if*, usually with the Indicative, 314. Another common way is by *quamquam* with the Indicative, 357.

W. 570; B. 309, 2; AG. 313, e; H. 586.

#### 385

#### VOCABULARY

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>accēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus</i>   | <i>incolō, -ere, -uī, —, to dwell,</i>   |
| <i>(ad + cēdō, 338), to ap-</i>          | <i>inhabit.</i>                          |
| <i>proach.</i>                           | <i>ineō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (in +</i>    |
| <i>autem, conj. but, however,</i>        | <i>eō, 360), to enter, enter</i>         |
| <i>moreover.</i>                         | <i>upon.</i>                             |
| <i>cāsus, -ūs, m. chance, occur-</i>     | <i>laccessō, -ere, -sivi, -situs, to</i> |
| <i>rence.</i>                            | <i>provoke, challenge, har-</i>          |
| <i>cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus, to have</i> | <i>rass.</i>                             |
| <i>regard for, care for, con-</i>        | <i>postridiē, adv. (posterus +</i>       |
| <i>sult.<sup>1</sup></i>                 | <i>diēs), on the next day.</i>           |
| <i>ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, to go</i>     | <i>pridiē, adv. (prior + diēs),</i>      |
| <i>forth.</i>                            | <i>on the preceding day.</i>             |
| <i>eō, adv. thither, to that place</i>   | <i>reperiō, -ire, repperi, reper-</i>    |
| <i>(is).</i>                             | <i>tus, to find.</i>                     |
| <i>frustrā, adv. to no purpose.</i>      |  |

- 386** 1. *Ea quae antea postulāvistis, fieri licet, quoniam propius accessistis mūnitiōnēsque nostrās circumvēnistis.*

<sup>1</sup> *hunc cōnsulere, to ask this man's advice; huic cōnsulere, to look out for this man's interest.*

2. Cum viri complūribus pūgnis dēfessī essent atque tēla eōs dēficerent, nē noctū quidem hostis lacessere dēstitērunt. 3. Quia locum magis idōneum reperire nōn poterat, postridiē montem militibus expeditis complēre hostisque interclūdere instituit. 4. Cum pridīē frūstrā hostis lacessivisset, novam bellī ratiōnem iniit ut ad omnis cāsūs subsidia parāret. 5. Ii quī ea loca incolēbant ē finibus suis ēgressi sunt, quod frūmentum deesset; itaque Caesar eō contendit. 6. Petivērunt, quoniam nullā ratiōne amicis cōsultare possent, ut sibi eius voluntate ē civitate ēgredi liceret. 7. Quī nāvibus praeerat, adulēscēns erat et rei militāris imperitus; quod postridiē ventum secundum nactus est, prōgrediēbātur. 8. Cum hostēs aut ex ripā aut paulum in aquam prōgressi pūgnārent, nostrōs celeriter oppressērunt. 9. Caesar autem, cum lēgātī cōsiliū probāret et ipse idem sentīret, nullā ratiōne id facere poterat. 10. Imperātor, quod nullum eiusmodi cāsum exspectābat, suōs etsi omnibus malis dēfessī erant, aequum in locum prōdūxit et aciem instrūxit.

- 387** 1. Inasmuch as we can not look out for our friends' interests, we beg to be allowed to leave the city. 2. Although the soldiers were tired with their work, they did not stop provoking the enemy. 3. Caesar determined to enter upon a new method of fighting, because on the previous day he had challenged the enemy to no purpose. 4. They begged Caesar to care for their friends because, as they said,<sup>1</sup> they could not care for them themselves. 5. Caesar determined to go to England; when he arrived there, he proceeded<sup>2</sup> to make provision against all chances. 6. Those who dwelt in England at the time when Caesar arrived there were barbarians. 7. The Britons could not conquer the Romans because they were not so experienced in warfare.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare 382, 4.

<sup>2</sup> Use *īstituō*.

## LESSON L

## PARTICIPLES

**388** LEARN the Present Active and the Perfect Passive Participles of the Model Verbs, 479-489.

**389** Participles are adjectives in form and agreement; for the declension of the Present Active see 468; the Perfect Passive is declined like *bonus*, 467. In force they are verbs, having the same constructions as the verbs to which they belong.

**390**

## EXAMPLES

1. **Fortissimē pugnāns interfectus est.**  
*He was killed while fighting most bravely.*
2. **Gallia est omnis dīvisa.**  
*Gaul is divided as a whole.*
3. **Ducem vulnerātum servāvit.**  
*He saved the wounded leader (or the leader who was wounded).*
4. **Auctōritāte rēgis permōti, cōstituērunt exire.**  
*Moved by the influence of the king, they decided to go out.*
5. **Civitās ob eam rem incitāta, ē finibus exire conābātur.**  
*When the state was aroused (the state having been aroused) on account of this, it attempted to leave its territory.*

(a) Notice in sentence 1 that the present participle represents the action as going on at the time indicated by the verb.

(b) The perfect participle with *sum* may become

nothing more than a predicate adjective, as in 2; but its most common use is to express an action as finished before the time of the main verb, as in 3, 4, and 5.

(c) Notice also that the participles in 4 and 5 may express time, cause, concession, etc., according to the context in which the sentences are found. Therefore, we may best translate by *when, because, although*, etc., or by a verb coordinate with the main verb, e. g., "They were moved by the influence of the king and decided," etc.

## 391

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Caesare dūce oppidum expūgnāvērunt.**

*Under the leadership of Caesar they stormed the town.*

2. **Caelō serēnō sōl ortus est.**

*The sun rose in a clear sky.*

3. **Gnaeō Pompēiō, Marcō Crassō cōsulibus Germāni Rhēnum trānsiērunt.**

*In the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus (or When Pompey and Crassus were consuls) the Germans crossed the Rhine.*

4. **Germāni clāmōre auditō fūgērunt.**

*The Germans fled on hearing the shout.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences two nouns, a noun and an adjective, or a noun and a participle are used in the Ablative to express some circumstance attendant on the action of the main verb; this Ablative may also express time, as it clearly does in 3, or cause, as in 4. These same ideas might all be expressed by *cum*-clauses.

(b) Notice further that this ablative has no grammatical relation to the rest of the sentence; it is therefore called the *Ablative Absolute*.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> While we sometimes employ in English such phrases as "Caesar being leader," "The shout having been heard," these expressions are

- 392** *Rule.*—A noun or pronoun with another noun, an adjective or participle may be used in the Ablative to express the circumstances, time, or cause of an action.

W. 397-399; B. 227; AG. 255; H. 489.

**393**

## VOCABULARY

<b>addūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus</b>	<b>oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers. v.</b>
(ad + dūcō, 264), to induce.	it is proper, one ought.
<b>beneficium, -i, n. (bene + faciō), kindness, service.</b>	<b>permovēō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus</b>
	(per + movēō, 245), to move deeply, to induce.
<b>Cassivelaunus, -i, m. Cassivelaunus.</b>	<b>pertineō, -ēre, -ui —, (per + teneō, 227), to pertain to, to reach.</b>
<b>commūnis, -e, adj. common.</b>	<b>queror, -i, questus, to complain.</b>
<b>dividō, -ere, -vīsi, -visus, to divide.</b>	<b>trānsēō, -īre, -ii, -itūrus</b>
<b>exeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ex + eō, 360), to go forth.</b>	(trāns + eō, 360), to cross.
<b>iugum, -i, n. yoke, ridge (of mountains).</b>	<b>ūsus, -ūs, m. use, need (ūtor, 298).</b>
<b>maritimus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to the sea, sea (mare, 162).</b>	<b>uterque, -traque, -trumque, each (of two).<sup>1</sup></b>

- 394** 1. Britannī, nostrō adventū permōtī, suae salūtī cōsulere et ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia prōvidēre instituērunt. 2. Omnibus rēbus parātis, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, Caesar postridiē in Britanniam trānsiit. 3. Imperiō bellī Cassivelaunō permissō, Britannī cum commūnī cōsiliō noctū convēnissent, postridie nostrōs proeliō lacessere

often awkward, and such phrases as those used in the translations given are generally to be preferred. Compare with the Latin construction the English Nominative Absolute. It should be remembered that the English has a Perfect Active Participle, "having made," etc., but that the Latin has none, save in Deponent Verbs.

<sup>1</sup> Declined like **uter, 272, 469.**

coep̄erunt. 4. Nostri, ab utrōque latere hostis adorti,<sup>1</sup> eōs gladiōs ēdūcere cōnantis atque vix sē dēfendentis oppres̄erunt. 5. Cassivelaunō dūce Britannī ā Caesare superātī sunt; finēs illius ā maritimīs cīvitatibus māgnō flūmine divīsī sunt. 6. Inopiā omnium rērum adductī, quod frūmentum in agrīs esse repperērunt nūllum, ē finibus noctū clam exīre īstituērunt. 7. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, dē Britanniae mōribus, quid sentiam quidque cognōverim prōpōnere oportet. 8. Tandem Britannī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī, hostis locō expellunt; fugientis ad flūmen sequuntur complūrisque interficiunt. 9. Conciliō dīmissō, Haeduīs dē iniuriīs querentibus petentibusque ut sē beneficio<sup>2</sup> dīgnōs habēret, libertātem concessit. 10. Interim dīmissīs circum omnia oppida literīs iisque ab oppidānis lectīs, barbarī dē suis fortūnis dēspērāvērunt.

- 395** 1. Induced by the hope of plunder, they left the ships and marched out by night. 2. Having found the enemy on the top of the ridge, they drove them away and killed nearly all as they fled. 3. This done, they set forth and reached the ships before the sun rose. 4. Caesar crossed into Britain when Pompey and Crasso were consuls; when he arrived Cassivelaunus was the chief man there. 5. He left several cohorts on the shore<sup>3</sup> and proceeded into the interior of the country.<sup>4</sup> 6. When the prisoners begged that he would not kill them, he granted them their liberty. 7. Caesar did not pursue the fleeing enemy farther, because he wished to finish the fortifications before night.

---

<sup>1</sup> Remember that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

<sup>2</sup> Abl. with *dīgnōs*, *worthy of*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *near the sea*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate, *into the interior parts*.



## READING EXERCISE

*The Destruction of the Conspirators*

**396** Populus Rōmānus Pompēiō et Caesare interfectis redisse<sup>1</sup> in libertātem vidēbātur; et redisset,<sup>2</sup> nisi Caesar hērēdem scripsisset Gāium Octāvium, quī postea Augustus Caesar est appellātus, eumque filium adoptāvisset. Haec prima cīviliū bellōrum causa erat cum<sup>3</sup> Antōnius, irātus quod praelātus<sup>4</sup> sibi esset iuvenis Octāvius, eum opprimere vellet. Sed Antōnius ā senātū hostis iūdicātus est et Caesar Octāviānus<sup>5</sup> iūssus est cum cōsulibus dēsīgnātis Hirtiō et Pānsā bellum contrā eum gerere. Hī dūcēs profecti eum ad<sup>6</sup> Mutīnam vicērunt. Evēnit tamen ut victōrēs cōsulēs ambō occīsī sint; unde factum est ut trēs exercitūs unī iuvenī Octāviānō pārērent. Fugātus Antōnius āmissō exercitū ad Lepidum pervēnit quī tum prōvinciās Galliae cum plūrimīs cōpiīs habēbat. Mox Lepidō adiuvante Caesar cum Antōniō pācem fēcit et Rōmam<sup>7</sup> cum exercitū reversus effēcit ut sibi annum vicēsimum agentī<sup>8</sup> cōsulātus darētur. Cum sociīs Antōniō et Lepidō rem pūblicam armīs tenēre coepit. Per hōs etiam Cicerō orātor occīsus est multīque aliī nōbīles.

Interea Brūtus et Cassius ingēns bellum mōvērunt. Contrā eōs igitur profecti Octāviānus et Antōnius (relictus enim erat Lepidus ut Italiā dēfenderet) ad<sup>6</sup> Philippos, Macedoniae urbem, pūgnāvērunt. Cum primō proeliō victi essent Antōnius et Caesar, tamen interfectus est

<sup>1</sup> A shorter form for *redīisse*.

<sup>2</sup> What kind of condition?

<sup>3</sup> The clause *cum . . . vellet* is in predicate apposition to *haec prima causa*.

<sup>4</sup> *praelātus esset*, plup. subj. pass. of *praeferō*, to *prefer*.

<sup>5</sup> The form of name which Octavius assumed after his adoption.

<sup>6</sup> With names of towns, *near*.

<sup>7</sup> Compare 236, 10.

<sup>8</sup> *annum agere*, to *spend a year*; translate here, *in his*, etc.

Cassius; secundō Brūtum et plūrimōs nōbilis quī cum illis bellum gesserant, victōs interfēcērunt. Āc sic inter dūcēs dīvisa est rēs pūblica ut Caesar Hispāniās, Galliās, Italiāque tenēret, Antōnius Asiā et Orientem, Lepidus Africā acciperet.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

<b>adoptō, -āre, to adopt.</b>	<b>irātus, -a, -um, angry.</b>
<b>civilis, -e, civil (civis).</b>	<b>nōbilis, -e, well known, noble.</b>
<b>cōsulātus, -ūs, m. consul-ship (cōsul).</b>	<b>Oriēns, -ntis, m. the Orient, East.</b>
<b>dēsignātus, -a, -um, elect.</b>	<b>pāreō, -ēre, pārui, —, to obey.</b>
<b>ēveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventūrus (ē + veniō), to turn out; often impersonal with a substantive clause as its subject.</b>	<b>redeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (re + eō), to return.</b>
<b>hērēs, -ēdis, m. heir.</b>	<b>trēs, tria, three (473).</b>
	<b>unde, adv. wherefore.</b>
	<b>vicēsimus, -a, -um, twentieth (viginti).</b>

## LESSON LI

## THE VERB FERŌ, to bear, bring

**397** LEARN the conjugation of *ferō* entire with the exception of the gerund, gerundive, and supine, 489.

**398** VOCABULARY

<b>abdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (ab + dō), to put away, to hide.</b>	<b>adversus, -a, -um, opposite, unfavorable.</b>
<b>accidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, to fall, happen.</b>	<b>cōnstō, -āre, -stiti, -statūrus, to agree, correspond (impers. it is an established fact, it is well known).</b>
<b>adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (ad + ferō), to bring up.</b>	

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētus, <i>to get accustomed to.</i>	pār, paris, <i>equal, like.</i>
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, <i>f. custom.</i>	paulātim, <i>adv. gradually.</i>
crēber, -bra, -brum, <i>frequent.</i>	referō, -ferre, rettuli, -lātus (re + ferō), <i>to carry back (pedem referre, to retreat).</i>
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātus (in + ferō), <i>to carry, bring upon.</i>	succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus (sub + cēdō), <i>to come up, to relieve.</i>
integer, -gra, -grum, <i>whole, fresh.</i>	

- 399 1. Hōc cāsū adductus, omnīs quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ēgredi iubet; mulierēs sē in silvās abdidērunt. 2. Levī proeliō factō, ad oppidum in quō hiemāre cōnsuēvit, contendit, quod maritimum erat. 3. Litteris mediā nocte adlātīs, intellēxit māgnūm perīculum accidisse, quō nostri interclūsī fugientēsque interfectī essent. 4. Prope oppidum collis erat; ab flūmine parī māgnitūdine alter collis nāscēbātur adversus huic; eō Caesar exercitum addūxit. 5. Integri dēfessīs<sup>1</sup> successērunt; sed, cum nūllum frūstrā pīlum accideret, omnēs tandem sub montem pedem rettulērunt. 6. Crēberrimis Caesaris beneficiis adductus lēgātis respondit nōn oportēre eōs dē suā voluntāte dubitāre. 7. Ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse suam cōnsuētūdinem dē paribus condiciōibus loquī. 8. Crēbris nocturnis ēruptiōnibus aut ignem mūrō inferēbant aut militēs incertis temporibus lacessēbant; haec quidem ratiō bellī eis māximē prōderat. 9. Hostēs, quia pridīe Caesar neque cōpiās prōdūxisset neque flūmen trānsisset, paulātim pedem rettulērunt. 10. Ea silva ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs finis hostium ad flūmen pertinet; multa ibi animālīa nāsci cōstat.

- 400 1. Being asked why they had retreated, they replied that they could not endure the onrush of our soldiers. 2. As it was agreed that they must pass the winter in

---

<sup>1</sup> 344.

Gaul, no grain had been provided in Britain. 3. When they complained of their wrongs, Caesar replied that he brought no hope or terms of peace. 4. This state had often brought war upon the Gauls; with equal valor it had often defended itself. 5. Fresh troops came up, and the enemy were gradually dislodged from their position and retreated. 6. Several ships, sailing out<sup>1</sup> of the harbor, were drawn up opposite us, but it was not agreed what our ships ought to do. 7. As the Gauls were in a higher position, their javelins fell with great force. 8. They said that the Germans had gradually grown accustomed to crossing the Rhine.

## LESSON LII

### PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

- 401 REVIEW the Pronouns learned thus far, 123, 129, 135, 136, 298, 317, 318, 320.
- 402 Learn the declension of the Indefinite pronouns *aliquis*, *some one*, *quisquis*, *whoever*, *quicumque*, *who-soever*, 478.
- 403 The following nine adjectives have *-ius* throughout in the Genitive Singular, with the exception of *alter* which has *alterius* throughout :

<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>one, single</i>
<i>sōlus</i>	<i>sōla</i>	<i>sōlum</i>	<i>alone</i>
<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>whole</i>
<i>ūllus</i>	<i>ūlla</i>	<i>ūllum</i>	<i>any</i>

<sup>1</sup> Notice the real time here expressed.

nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	not any
alius	alia	aliud	another
alter	altera	alterum	the other (of two)
uter	utra	utrum	which (of two)
neuter	neutra	neutrum	neither

(a) These have no Vocative. The form **alterius** is regularly employed as the genitive of **alius** to prevent confusion with the nominative. Five of these have been already used. The declension is given, 469.

## 404

## VOCABULARY

<b>animadvertō, -ere, -ti, -sus</b>	<b>redeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (re +</b>
<b>(animum + advertō), to</b>	<b>eō), to return.</b>
<i>notice.</i>	<b>unde, adv. whence? the place</b>
<b>quārē, adv. whereby? how?</b>	<b>from which (both inter-</b>
<b>wherefore (both interro-</b>	<b>rogative and relative).</b>
<b>ative and relative).</b>	<b>valeō, -ēre, -uī, —, to be</b>
	<b>strong.</b>

## 405

1. Neque ūllum fere tōtius hiemis tempus erat, quā aliquis nūntius dē adversō proeliō adferrētur. 2. Quamquam crēbris nūntiis commūnique periculō permōtī sunt, sic parātī erant, ut, quicumque accidisset cāsus, hunc aequō animō ferrent. 3. Quidquid illi possunt, nāvibus valent; maritimās enim partēs incolunt, neque est ūllus<sup>1</sup> apud eōs rei militāris ūsus. 4. Alterō diē hostēs iugō relictō proelium iniērunt; proeliō adversō factō, nostri pedem rettulērunt et unde vēnerant rediērunt. 5. Quia neutrum eōrum flūminum trānsire poterant nostri ad montem, quō prōvincia ā maritimīs civitātibus divīsa est, paulātim rediērunt. 6. Nōn oportere putābat commūnem salutem Haeduīs sōlis committere; quārē militēs paulātim sē recipere iūssit. 7. Paribus beneficiis ūsus,<sup>2</sup> contrā

<sup>1</sup> When a sentence is connected with the preceding, **neque . . . ūllus** rather than **et nūllus** is used as here. Compare sentence 1.

<sup>2</sup> From **ūtor**.

voluntātem eōrum facere nōn dēbere intellēxit; itaque neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvābat. 8. Graviter querentibus quod ē finibus ēgredi coāctī essent, respondit sē amicōrum fortūnis cōsulere cōsuēscere. 9. Haec ubi Caesar animadvertit, cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in iugō cōstituit. 10. Cum nōn modo tēla sed etiam cōsilia utrīque dēficerent, uterque rūsus exercitum in castra redūxit.

- 406** 1. The Gauls are accustomed to defend themselves against whatsoever people brings war against them. 2. The soldiers answered, "Whoever they are, let us attack them before they return to the place from which<sup>1</sup> they came." 3. Whatsoever wars you wish to be carried on, we will carry on without any danger on your part.<sup>2</sup> 4. Between the two armies was a forest which offered some hope of safety. 5. Each commander ordered his soldiers to withdraw gradually from their position and retreat to this forest. 6. Neither noticed that in the other army fresh troops were relieving the exhausted. 7. Caesar was strongest in infantry,<sup>3</sup> but the commander of the enemy trusted to his cavalry alone.

#### READING EXERCISE

- 407** *The Battle of Actium (31 B. C.) and the End of the Civil Wars*

Sublātīs coniūrātīs quī Caesarem occīderant, supererat Sextus Pompēius quī post clādem ad Mundam fugā ēvāserat. Hic contractīs eīs quī supererant ex partibus<sup>4</sup> Brūtī Cassīque, ingēns bellum in Siciliā commōvit, sed ab Agrippā ita victus est ut in Asiam effugere coāctus sit; ubi paulō post occīsus est.

<sup>1</sup> Compare 405, 4.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 405, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Objective gen.

<sup>4</sup> *The party.*

Cum iam omnem occāsiōnem bellī cīvīlis sublātā esse vidērētur, pāx imprōvisō ab Antōniō rupta est; nam hīc captus amōre Cleopātrae, rēgīnae Aegyptī, sorōrem Octāviānī repudiāvit, et incitātus ā rēgīna quae muliebri cupiditāte etiam in urbe rēgnāre volēbat, bellum contrā Octāviānum parāvit. Quī, primō nūntiō hūius periculī adlātō, Brundisiō<sup>1</sup> in Graeciam trānsiit ut imminenti bellō<sup>2</sup> occurreret, positisque castris in Epīrō ad Actiaci<sup>3</sup> Apollinis templum, classe sinum Ambracium quem nāvēs Antōnī tenēbant obsēdit. Octāviānō quadringentae amplius<sup>4</sup> nāvēs, ducentae hostibus fuērunt; sed hārum māgnitūdō numerum illārum superāvit: haec ipsa rēs hostibus exitiō<sup>5</sup> fuit cum nāvēs tam māgnae essent ut nōn celeriter movī possent, et classis clārā nāvālī pūgnā victa est. Prīma dux fugae erat rēgīna; eam secūtus est Antōnius quī fugientis mulieris quam pūgnantis exercitūs suī comes esse māluit. Proximō annō Caesar rēgīnam Antōniumque Alexandrēam persecūtus, ultimam bellis cīvīlibus imposuit manum. Antōnius obsessus ā Caesare, dēspērātis rēbus, praesertim fāmā occīsam esse<sup>6</sup> Cleopātram permōtus, sē ipse interfēcit; rēgīna cum frūstrā ā Caesare petīssset ut sibi rēgnum redderētur, et sē triumphō<sup>7</sup> servārī vīdisset, sibi serpentem admīsīt, cuius venēnō occīsa est.

<sup>1</sup> "Abl. of place from which"; this is essentially the same as the Abl. of Separation, 206. Notice, however, that the name of a town has no preposition.

<sup>2</sup> 344.

<sup>3</sup> The promontory of Actium was on the south side of the entrance to the Ambracian bay.

<sup>4</sup> The comparative is used here without any influence on the case of nāvēs.

<sup>5</sup> Study 415-418.

<sup>6</sup> Indirect discourse after fāmā.

<sup>7</sup> Dative depending on servārī, *saved for*.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

<b>Actiacus</b> , -a, -um, <i>of Actium.</i>	<b>muliebris</b> , -e, <i>womanish, a woman's.</i>
<b>admittō</b> , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>to let come, give access to.</i>	<b>obsideō</b> , -ēre, -sēdi, -sessus, <i>to blockade.</i>
<b>amplius</b> , adv. comp. <i>more (than).</i>	<b>occāsiō</b> , -ōnis, <i>f. opportunity.</i>
<b>commoveō</b> , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, <i>to arouse.</i>	<b>persequor</b> , -i, -secūtus, <i>to overtake.</i>
<b>contrahō</b> , -ere, -trāxi, -tractus, <i>to draw together, collect.</i>	<b>quadringenti</b> , -ae, -a, <i>four hundred.</i>
<b>cupiditās</b> , -ātis, <i>f. desire, passion.</i>	<b>repudiō</b> , -āre, <i>to cast aside, divorce.</i>
<b>ducenti</b> , -ae, -a, <i>two hundred.</i>	<b>rumpō</b> , -ere, rūpī, ruptus, <i>to break.</i>
<b>evādō</b> , -ere, -vāsi, -vāsūrus, <i>to go out, escape.</i>	<b>serpēs</b> , -ntis, <i>f. snake.</i>
<b>exitium</b> , -ī, <i>n. ruin.</i>	<b>sinus</b> , -ūs, <i>m. bay.</i>
<b>imminēns</b> , <i>threatening.</i>	<b>supersum</b> , -esse, -fuī, <i>to survive, remain.</i>
<b>impōnō</b> , -ere, -posui, -positus, <i>to put on.</i>	<b>triumphus</b> , -ī, <i>m. triumph.</i>
	<b>venēnum</b> , -ī, <i>n. poison.</i>

## LESSON LIII

## REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

## THE GENITIVE

408    Thus far the Genitive has been used chiefly to indicate the Possessor, 35, the Object, 156, and Quality, 232. It has also been employed as the Object with *obliviscor*, 305, and in such phrases as



*pars militum*, in which it denotes the whole. The Genitive in this use is called the *Partitive Genitive*.

- 409 **Rule.**—The Partitive Genitive is used to denote the whole of which the modified word is a part.

W. 355; B. 201; AG. 216; H. 440, 5–443.

#### THE DATIVE

- 410 The Dative has been used chiefly as the Indirect Object, 37, to denote the Possessor, 45, and with Compound Verbs, 344. The Dative with *persuādeō* also represents the construction with a considerable class of verbs.

- 411 **Rule.**—The Dative is used with intransitive verbs meaning *favor, please, trust, assist* (and their opposites), *command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade*.<sup>1</sup>

W. 330; B. 187, ii; AG. 227; H. 426, 1.

(a) It is evident that the passive of these verbs can only be used impersonally, e. g., *I am persuaded, mihi persuādētur*.

- 412 Certain adjectives like *grātus, idōneus, similis*, and *dissimilis* from their meanings are used with the dative.

- 413 **Rule.**—The Dative is used with Adjectives meaning *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, equal, near, and dear*, and with others of like or opposite meaning.

W. 333; B. 192; AG. 234; H. 434.

---

<sup>1</sup> Many of these verbs are used with the dative in English, but this is not apparent, because our language has lost most of its inflectional endings.

- 414 Two constructions which have not yet been employed are illustrated by the following:

415

## EXAMPLES

1. *Māgnō ūsui nostris fuit.* *It was of great service to our men.*
2. *Cohortēs castris praesidiō relinquit.* *He leaves the cohorts for the defense of the camp.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the datives *ūsui*, *praesidiō* are in the predicate, are abstract nouns, and express either that which the subject tends to become or the purpose of the verb's action. Such a dative is called the *Predicate Dative*.

- 416 *Rule.*—The Predicate Dative is used to express Tendency or Purpose.

W. 341–345; B. 191; AG. 233; H. 433.

- 417 Notice that in the sentences in 415, the datives *nostris*, *castris* are not dependent on any single word, but rather on the entire sentence, and express the persons or thing with reference to which the statements are made. This construction is called the *Dative of Reference*.

- 418 *Rule.*—The Dative of Reference denotes the object interested or referred to in a statement.

W. 334–335; B. 188; AG. 235; H. 425, 2–4.

419

## VOCABULARY

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>adeō</i> , -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ad +    | <i>cōgitō</i> , -āre, <i>to think</i> .   |
| <i>eō</i> ), <i>to approach</i> .         | <i>comprehendō</i> , -ere, -ndi, -pre-    |
| <i>aditus</i> , -ūs, m. <i>approach</i> . | <i>hēnsus</i> , <i>to arrest, seize</i> . |

<b>cōnferō</b> , -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (con + ferō), to bring to- gether.	<b>palam</b> , adv. <i>openly</i> (compare clam, 272).
<b>dēmōnstrō</b> , -āre, to point out, show.	<b>praeter</b> , prep. w. accu. <i>be- yond, contrary to, besides.</i>
<b>hūc</b> , adv. <i>hither, to this place</i> (compare hīc, 132).	<b>quā</b> , adv. <i>in what way, by what road (quī).</i>
<b>opiniō</b> , -ōnis, f. <i>opinion, be- lief, reputation.</i>	<b>singulī</b> , -ae, -a, <i>single, indi- vidual.</i>
	<b>suspiciō</b> , -ōnis, f. <i>suspicion.</i>

**420** 1. Crassus autem adulescēns, cum aliquōs hostīs accē-  
dere animadvertisset, septimam cohortem labōrantibus  
nostrīs subsidiō mīsit. 2. Rēbus quae ad bellum ūsūi  
erant hūc conlātis, suōs exīre prohibēbat timōrisque opini-  
ōnem hostibus augēbat. 3. Hostēs autem putābant nūllōs  
sibi esse parīs posse; sōlis deīs concēdere cōsuēscēbant.  
4. Dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrōs quōs incolant nihil esse  
reliquī<sup>1</sup>; quārē eis partem exercitūs subsidiō mīsit. 5. Ut  
omnem timōris suspiciōnem tolleret, alteram partem  
exercitūs mīsit quae Haeduīs bellum inferret. 6. Hīc  
autem, nē aut inferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timō-  
ris aliquam suspiciōnem, paulātīm rediit unde vēnerat.  
7. Quam ob rem, quisquis is esset cūius operā Gallī exci-  
tātī essent, comprehendī atque interficī iūssit. 8. Quārē  
Caesarem adiērunt palamque de eōrum iniūriis questī  
sunt quī eius beneficiis ūsī, amicis eius nocērent. 9. Rep-  
perit omnis ferē hominēs māgnae virtūtis esse neque  
ūllum ad eōs aditum esse mercātōribus. 10. Eadem dē  
profectiōne cōgitāns quae antea cōgitāverat, lēgātis singu-  
lis in singulās<sup>2</sup> cīvitatēs missis, ipse flūmen trānsiit quā  
minimē altum erat.

**421** 1. Caesar left a cohort as protection for the baggage  
and returned by the easiest road.<sup>3</sup> 2. Having found a

<sup>1</sup> Gen. modifying *nihil*, 409.

<sup>2</sup> One to each.

<sup>3</sup> Translate, *where the road was easiest.*

suitable place for a camp, he built a fortified camp and made<sup>1</sup> a ten-foot ditch. 3. He sent his lieutenants, each with a legion,<sup>2</sup> to make war upon the Germans. 4. Everything that was useful for the storming of a city he brought to this place. 5. One part of the army he left in camp, another part he sent as a support to those who were fighting. 6. That they might remove every suspicion of fear, they went out of camp openly. 7. They come to him and show him that they have nothing except their arms left. 8. They arrested those through whose agency the lieutenant had been killed, and brought them to Caesar.

---

## LESSON LIV

### REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE

#### THE ACCUSATIVE

**422** THE Accusative has thus far been used as the Direct Object, **31**, as the Subject of the Infinitive, **328**, with a number of prepositions to express various relations, and also to denote the Duration of Time, **174**. Closely connected with this last use is the Accusative of Extent of Space, e. g., *sex milia passuum prōcēdit, he advances six miles*. The rule in **174** therefore may be expanded to read:

**423** *Rule.*—Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative.

W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256, 257; H. 417.

---

<sup>1</sup> dūcere.

<sup>2</sup> Compare **420**, 10.

**424** The Accusative with *ad* or *in* has frequently been used to express the Aim or Limit of Motion, and since **236**, 10 names of towns *without* a preposition have been employed to express the same thing. Learn the following:

**425** *Rule.*—The Aim or Limit of Motion is expressed by the Accusative with a preposition; but names of towns omit the preposition.<sup>1</sup>

W. 325; B. 182; AG. 258, 2, *a*; H. 418.

#### THE ABLATIVE

**426** The Ablative has been used in nearly all its important relations. If these various constructions be examined, it will be found that they fall into three classes corresponding to the English Objective case with *from*, *with*, and *in*.

**427** This is historically due to the fact that the Latin Ablative represents three cases which have been blended into one—the Ablative proper or *from*-case, the Instrumental or *with*-case, the Locative or *in*-case.

**428** The Ablative proper includes the

1. Ablative of Separation, **206**.
2. Ablative of Agent, **100**.
3. Ablative of Comparison, **190**.

**429** The Instrumental Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Accompaniment, **71**.
2. Ablative of Manner, **150**.
3. Ablative of Means, **110**.
4. Ablative with Deponents,<sup>2</sup> **297**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Also a few other words, of which *domum*, *home*, is the most frequent.

<sup>2</sup> This is properly also Ablative of Means.

5. Ablative of Cause, 119.
6. Ablative of Degree of Difference, 197.
7. Ablative of Quality, 234.
8. Ablative Absolute, 392.

**430** To these should be added the Ablative in such expressions as *linguā differunt*, *they differ in language*; *virtūte praeceḍunt*, *they excel in bravery*; in which the Ablative specifies that with respect to which the statement is made.

**431** *Rule.*—The Ablative of Specification denotes that with respect to which anything is or is done.

W. 398; B. 226; AG. 253; H. 480.

**432** The Locative Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Place, 55.
2. Ablative of Time, 176.

**433**

#### VOCABULARY

<b>Avāricum</b> , -i, <i>Avaricum</i> (a town in Gaul).	<b>item</b> , adv. <i>likewise, also.</i>
<b>concurrō</b> , -ere, -curri or -curri, -cursurus, <i>to run together.</i>	<b>lingua</b> , -ae, f. <i>tongue, language.</i>
<b>coniungō</b> , -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, <i>to join together.</i>	<b>longinquus</b> , -a, -um, <i>long, distant.</i>
<b>conloquor</b> , -i, -locutus ( <i>cum + loquor</i> ), <i>to talk together.</i>	<b>perpetuus</b> , -a, -um, <i>continuous.</i>
<b>cursus</b> , -ūs, m. <i>course, march.</i>	<b>plērumque</b> , adv. <i>for the most part, generally.</i>
<b>differō</b> , -ferre, distuli, dilātus ( <i>dis + ferō</i> ), <i>to spread, scatter</i> (in the present system, <i>to differ</i> ).	<b>praeceḍō</b> , -ere, -cessi, -cessurus ( <i>prae + cēdō</i> ), <i>to go before, excel.</i>
<b>inde</b> , adv. <i>from that place, after that.</i>	<b>primō</b> , adv. <i>at first.</i>
<b>infra</b> , prep. w. accu. <i>below.</i>	<b>subitus</b> , -a, -um, <i>sudden.</i>
	<b>ultrā</b> , prep. w. accu. <i>beyond.</i>
	<b>ūnā</b> , adv. <i>at the same time, in company with.</i>

**434** 1. Complūria milia passuum ultrā eum locum prōgressus, petivit ut sibi ūnā cum Caesare conloquī licēret. 2. Volēbat flūmen trānsire complūribus milibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi pōns esset perfectus. 3. Cōstābat inter omnis, quā arbitrārentur hostīs oppidum adire, iugum aditū difficillimō esse perpetuisque silvis mūnītum. 4. Plērumque accidit ut cōnsilia Gallōrum subita sint; māximam opīniōnem virtūtis habent, cēterōs Gallōs auctōritāte praecedunt. 5. Longīs litteris dēmōstrant sē longinquam oppūgnātiōnem ferre nōn posse; quārē cum integris militibus Avāricum contendit. 6. Captō iugō et succēdentibus nostrīs, Haedui quī haec animadverterant ad arma concurrunt, itemque aliōs hortantur. 7. Praeter opīniōnem cōsuētūdinemque accidit ut omnēs ūnā concurrant; primō māgnus clāmor auditur, inde cursus fit ad iugum. 8. Quoniam illa castra ab oppidō milia passuum multa absunt, hī nōn facile coniungī cum dūce possunt; altera castra multō propinquiōra sunt. 9. Caesar, lectis litteris, sī palam conloquī vellent, concessit; sed hī omnēs linguā differunt. 10. Fossam inter turrīs dūxit,<sup>1</sup> quō tūtius ab subitō hostium impetū etiam singulī redire possent.

**435** 1. They marched seven miles on that day and pitched camp one mile from the town. 2. Though tired out by the march and the flight, they dug the ditch through the entire night. 3. On one side the camp was protected by a continuous forest, on the other by a river. 4. For the most part they use horses in battle that they may retreat more easily. 5. At first they ran to arms with a shout; after that they approached the town in silence. 6. He hurried to Avaricum, because he learned that the city was being fortified by the enemy. 7. When Caesar arrived in this place, the whole state was in arms; but the

---

<sup>1</sup> fossam dūcere, to make a ditch.

Romans were superior in the number of troops. 8. He pitched the new camp ten miles below the old camp, and waited there several days.

## READING EXERCISE

*Octavian's Triumph and Rule*

**436** Bellis tōtō orbe ita cōfectis Octāviānus Rōmam rediit ubi trēs triumphōs ēgit,<sup>1</sup> ūnum ex Illyricō,<sup>2</sup> alterum ex Actiacā<sup>3</sup> victōriā, tertium dē Cleopātrā. Tum Iānī geminī<sup>4</sup> portās suā manū clausit, quae tantummodo bis antea clausae erant, primō sub Nūmā<sup>5</sup> rēge, iterum Titō Manliō cōsule<sup>6</sup> post primum Pūnicum bellum.<sup>7</sup> Iam rem publicam, quam duodecim annōs cum Antōniō et Lepidō tenuerat, sōlus per quattuor et quadragintā annōs administrābat. Nullō tempore rēs Rōmāna magis florēbat: nam Octāviānus Rōmānō adiēcit imperiō plūrimās prōvinciās; vicit etiam proeliis Dācōs,<sup>8</sup> et Germānōrum ingentis cōpiās cecidit, ipsōs quoque trāns Albim<sup>9</sup> flūmen submōvit, quod longē ultrā Rhēnum est. Reddidērunt etiam Parthī<sup>10</sup> legiōnum signa quae Crassō victō<sup>11</sup> adēmerant. Scythī et Indī, quibus antea Rōmānōrum nōmen

---

<sup>1</sup> Celebrated.

<sup>2</sup> Illyricum was north of Epirus in Greece.

<sup>3</sup> An adjective formed from *Actium*.

<sup>4</sup> Janus, the god of gates and doors, was called *geminus*, *double*, because he was represented with two faces looking in opposite directions. His temple, near the northeast corner of the Forum, was always open in time of war.

<sup>5</sup> Numa was the second king of Rome.

<sup>6</sup> 235 B. C.

<sup>7</sup> The First Punic War lasted from 264–241 B. C.

<sup>8</sup> The Dacians lived north of the Danube, in and around the modern Roumania.

<sup>9</sup> The Albis was probably the modern Elbe.

<sup>10</sup> The Parthians were the foes most feared by the Romans in the East.

<sup>11</sup> In 53 B. C.



incōgnitum fuerat, dōna et lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt. Tantō amōre<sup>12</sup> etiam apud barbarōs fuit ut rēgēs, populi Rōmānī amīcī, in honōrem eius conderent urbēs quās Caesarēas nōminārent, sicut in Maurētāniā<sup>13</sup> ā rēge Iubā, et in Palaestinā, quae postea urbs erat clārissima. Octāviānō māximī honōrēs ā senātū dēlāti sunt: ipse Augustus nōminātus et in eius hōnōrem mēnsis sextilis eōdem nōmine est appellātus quod illō mēnse bellis cīvilibus finis est impositus. Multa mala lūxuriāque cīvium gravibus lēgibus suppliciisque ita coercuit ut ob haec facta pater patriae quoque appellātus sit. Obiit in oppidō Campaniae Nōlā;<sup>14</sup> sepultus est Rōmae<sup>15</sup> in campō Martiō. Post mortem Dīvus appellātus est.

## 437

## SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>to add.</i>	divus, -a, -um, <i>divine.</i>
adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus, <i>to take away.</i>	duodecim, <i>twelve.</i>
bis, <i>adv. twice.</i>	florēō, -ēre, florui, —, <i>to be prosperous.</i>
caedō, -ere, cecidi, caesus, <i>to cut down, kill, annihilate.</i>	Iānus, -i, <i>m. Janus.</i>
claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus, <i>to close.</i>	incōgnitus, -a, -um, <i>unknown.</i>
coerceō, -ēre, -ercui, -ercitus, <i>to check, restrain.</i>	lūxuria, -ae, <i>f. luxury.</i>
condō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, <i>to found.</i>	nōminō, -āre, <i>to name.</i>
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, <i>to offer, grant.</i>	obeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, <i>to die.</i>
	quadrīngintā, <i>forty.</i>
	quattuor, <i>four.</i>
	sepeliō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), sepultus, <i>to bury.</i>

<sup>12</sup> 234.<sup>13</sup> The modern Algiers and Morocco.<sup>14</sup> A town about fifteen miles east of Naples.<sup>15</sup> The locative (24), *at Rome.*

- sextilis**, -e, *the sixth* (used only with reference to the month).  
**sicut**, adv. *as*.
- submoveō**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *to remove*.  
**tantummodo**, adv. *only*.  
**trēs**, **tria**, *three* (473).

## LESSON LV

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

- 438** LEARN the Future Active Participle and the Gerundive of all the paradigm verbs, 479–489.

## ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

- 439** The Future Active Participle with **sum** forms the Active Periphrastic Conjugation: Pres. Indic. **amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love*, Imperf. Indic. **amātūrus eram**, *I was about to love*, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, 479, a.

- 440** This Periphrastic Conjugation may be used in any of the active constructions of the verb where the meaning allows.

## PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

- 441** The Gerundive with **sum** forms the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: Pres. Indic. **amandus est**, *He is to be* (i. e., *must be, ought to be*) *loved*. Imperf. Indic. **amandus erat**, *He was to be* (*ought to have been*) *loved*, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, 479, a.

## DATIVE OF AGENT

442

## EXAMPLES

1. **Mihi oppidum est expūgnandum.** *The town is to be (must be) stormed by me.*
2. **Vōbīs prōvincia erat dēfendenda.** *The province was to be (had to be) defended by you.*

(a) Notice that this second Periphrastic Conjugation implies duty, necessity, or obligation. The person on whom the duty rests is expressed by the Dative;<sup>1</sup> as this person is virtually the Agent the construction is called the *Dative of Agent*.

443

**Rule.**—The Dative of Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the duty rests.

W. 339; B. 189; AG. 232; H. 431.

444

## VOCABULARY

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-</b><br><b>tus, to join to.</b>                              | <b>offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātus</b><br><b>(ob + ferō), to present.</b>                 |
| <b>dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (dē</b><br><b>+ ferō), to bring down,</b><br><b>report.</b> | <b>praesertim, adv. especially.</b>   |
| <b>discessus, -ūs, m. departure</b><br><b>(discēdō).</b>                                     | <b>quālis, -e, of what sort, as.</b>  |
| <b>eōdem, adv. to the same place.</b>  | <b>rēgnum, -ī, n. kingdom, royal</b><br><b>power (regō).</b>                              |
| <b>excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus</b><br><b>(ex + cēdō), to go out from.</b>                | <b>servitūs, -ūtis, f. . bondage</b><br><b>(servus).</b>                                  |
| <b>lātē, adv. broadly.</b>   | <b>studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, to pay</b><br><b>attention to, be eager for</b><br><b>(411).</b> |
| <b>obtineō, -ere, -uī, -tentus (ob +</b><br><b>teneō), to maintain, hold.</b>                | <b>utrimque, adv. from both</b><br><b>sides.</b>  |

445

1. Cum intellegeret omnīs Gallōs celeriter ad bellum excitārī atque omnīs hominēs libertātī studēre, lātius sibi

<sup>1</sup> This is only one form of the Dative of Reference, 418.

exercitum mittendum esse putāvit. 2. Poenae timōre permōti, nocentis comprehēnsūri erant interfectūrique; dēmōstrant sē perpetuā servitūte premi. 3. Eiusmodi cōsiliū neque initūri erant neque ūllum omnīnō bellum contrā eum gessūri. 4. Eōdem impedimenta nostris cōferenda erant priusquam hostēs ad arma concurrerent; ad hostis dēlātum est Caesarem castra cum oppidō mūrō coniūctūrum esse. 5. Ea apud eōs cōnsuetūdō est ut quī summum magistrātum obtineant, excēdere ex finibus nōn liceat. 6. Discessū Caesaris animadversō, Galli longinquiorēs civitatēs sibi adiūxerant; ad locum infrā pontem, inde Avāricum sē contulērunt. 7. Eō tempore, praesertim cum tālis oblāta esset potestās, quālis nunquam antea, exeundum sibi esse putāvērunt. 8. Utrimque integrī succēdunt; et, quod cōstābat montem mille passuum abesse, eōdem sua omnia contulērunt. 9. Subitō impetū oppidum cēpērunt; illum, quī rēgnū tot annōs obtinuerat, comprehēsum suppliciō gravī interfēcērunt. 10. Nacti idōneum ventum sub noctem ex portū exiērunt, et postridiē longius dēlāti ultrā locum cōstitūtum ad terram vērērunt.

- 446** 1. Caesar had to recall the men from work and to give the signal for battle at the same time. 2. They said they would go into whatsoever place Caesar should decide, and would carry their goods to the same place. 3. He thought that he ought to make war upon the Gauls, especially as the opportunity was offered. 4. The Haeduan reported to Caesar that all the Gauls were as a rule eager for a revolution.<sup>1</sup> 5. He thought that there would never be another opportunity such as<sup>2</sup> this was. 6. He who had held the royal power in his state for so many years was arrested and killed. 7. They said that they had to endure perpetual bondage and were eager for freedom.

---

<sup>1</sup> novae rēs.

<sup>2</sup> quālis.

## LESSON LVI

## GERUND AND SUPINE

**447** LEARN the Gerunds and Supines of all the paradigm verbs, 479–489.

## THE GERUND

**448** The Gerund is a verbal noun with the force of an active verb. The Infinitive supplies the nominative and accusative cases in the constructions of Subject and Direct Object, 325–327.

## EXAMPLES

1. *Loquendī finem fēcit.*      *He made an end of speaking.*
2. *Ad audiendum parātī sumus.*      *We are prepared to hear (for hearing).*
3. *Hominis mēns discendō alitur.*      *Man's mind is nourished by learning.*

**449** The Gerund may have a direct object, e. g., *spatium arma capiendī, time for taking arms*; but in place of the Gerund with the object accusative, the Gerundive in agreement with the noun is to be preferred.

**450**      **EXAMPLES**

1. *Cōnsilium urbis capiendae.*      *A plan for taking the city.*
2. *Vēnērunt ad pācem petendam.*      *They came to ask for peace.*
3. *Haec rēs Caesari difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat.*      *This fact caused Caesar difficulty in forming his plan.*
4. *Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus.*      *Brutus was killed in freeing his country.*

(a) Notice that in each example the Gerundive is a verbal adjective agreeing with its noun, which is in the case required by the sentence.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Notice that in the second example *ad pācem petendam* expresses purpose and is equivalent to *ut (quī) pācem peterent*. This is one of the common ways of expressing purpose.

## THE SUPINE

451

## EXAMPLES

1. *Lēgātī vēnērunt rogātum auxilium.* *Envoys came to ask help.*
2. *Perfacile factū est haec perficere.* *To accomplish this is very easy (to do).*

(a) Notice that in the first example the Supine *rogātum* is used with a verb of motion to express purpose, being equivalent to *ut (quī) rogārent* or *ad auxilium rogandum*. This is the only use of this Supine.<sup>2</sup>

(b) The Supine in *-u* is rare, being used in a few expressions like the second example as Ablative of Specification.

452 **Rule.**—The Supine in *-um* expresses Purpose after verbs of Motion.

W. 654; B. 340, 1; AG. 302; H. 633.

453

## VOCABULARY

*aliēnus, -a, -um, another's, officium, -ī, n. duty, office, foreign (alius). function.*  
*iūs, iūris, n. justice, right. perfacilis, -e, very easy.*

<sup>1</sup> The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is rare, so that no example is here given.

<sup>2</sup> The future pass. infin. *amātum īrī*, etc., belongs under this head, as *īrī* is the pres. pass. infin. of *eō* used impersonally.

potius, adv. *rather*.

praetereā, adv. *besides*.

praestō, -āre, -stiti, —, to ex-  
cel, exhibit, perform.

vel, conj. and adv. *or*,  
even.<sup>1</sup>

- 454** 1. Nullā in rē deerat lēgātus, et in hortandis militibus imperātōris et in pūgnā militis fortis officia praestābat. 2. Praeter cōsuētūdinem cotidiē sub castra studiō pūgnandī vērunt hostēs; tandem Caesar certum diem colloquendī dicit. 3. Galli sibi Germānōs adiūnxerant ad sociōs nostrōs vel comprehendendōs vel interficiendōs; ex omnibus partibus Galliae eōdem concurrēbant hostēs. 4. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum nē sibi sociis-que noceret; dixerunt sē iūra, agrōs, arma Rōmānis sōlis permittere. 5. Perfacile factū esse dēmōstrat sine ūllā suspiciōne omnia quae ad proficiscendum pertineant, comparāre. 6. Alii cursū et pūgnā dēfessī interfecti sunt pūgnantēs; aliī<sup>2</sup> novā speciē equitum nostrōrum permōti sē dedērunt. 7. Praetereā lēgātī ad Caesarem vērunt ōrātum ut sibi potestās excēdendī fieret. 8. Pūgnātum est utrimque vehementer sub mūris; ubi nostri locō cedere visī sunt, hūc undique concurritur. 9. Equitātū potius quam peditātū māximē valēbat imperātor noster; itaque suis cōpiis plērumque ad vastandōs agrōs hostium utēbātur. 10. Undique ad Haeduōs dēfendendōs convērunt ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus pūgnārent.

- 455** 1. On the next day Caesar led forth his forces from each camp and gave the enemy a chance to fight.<sup>3</sup> 2. Caesar was confident that no one would after that cross into Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 3. The Gauls sent ambassadors to ask for aid, that they

<sup>1</sup> *aut* is exclusive: *aut Caesar aut nullus*, either Caesar or nobody; but *vel* gives a choice: *vel hīc vel ille*, either this man or that (as you please).

<sup>2</sup> Compare 358, 7.

<sup>3</sup> Compare 454, 7.

might not be obliged to fight in others' territory rather than in their own. 4. He showed him that it was very easy to get possession of the royal power in his state. 5. They got ready everything that was of use for besieging a town. 6. They injured the enemy greatly by laying waste their fields and setting fire to their buildings. 7. They sent an ambassador to beg that Caesar would not deprive them of their rights and their lands.

---

## LESSON LVII

## NUMERALS

- 456** LEARN the Cardinal numbers to 1,000 and the ordinals through the twenty-first, **473**.
- 457** Review the declension of *ūnus*, and learn the declension of *duo* and *trēs*, **469**; the other cardinals through *centum* are not declined except those compounds which have *ūnus*, *duo*, or *trēs*. The hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* are declined like the plural of *bonus*.
- 458** Review the declension of *mille*, **252**. All ordinals are declined like *bonus*.
- 459** 1. *Discessū hostium Caesar exercitum in duās partēs divisit; quattuor legiōnēs milia passuum quindecim in Haeduōs dūxit.* 2. *Ducentī hominēs pūgnantēs utrimque interficiuntur; omnia aedificia longē lātēque incenduntur.* 3. *Adiūnxit sibi sex cohortēs atque diē octāvō ex suis in finis aliēnōs prōgressus est.* 4. *Spē rēgnandī novīs rēbus studēbat; sed illī in libertāte manēre quam servitūtem*



ferre mālēbant. 5. Etsi ille mīlia passuum quīnque abesse hostis certior factus est, tamen mīsit equitēs quī cōgnōscerent quālis esset nātūra montis. 6. Fidē sociōrum perspectā, cum novem cohortibus peditum inf̄rā pontem mīlibus passuum quattuordecim flūmen trānsiit. 7. Quōscumque adiit, hortābātur ut sē cum Germānis coniungerent; quīntō diē multa mīlia illōrum in ūnum locum convēnerant. 8. Diēs continuōs trēs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et hostibus potestātem pūgnandī fēcit. 9. Haeduī reliquaeque item cīvitatēs, cōgnitō Caesaris discessū, eōdem unde pridīē vēnerant, rediērunt. 10. Urbis dēfendendae causā mūrum fēcit in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque novem pedum dūxit.

- 460** 1. He made a ten-foot ditch and a wall twelve feet high. 2. Three cohorts were left as a protection for the baggage, five were sent among the Haeduans. 3. On the eighth day he drew up his army in line across the river. 4. He learned that the enemy were twenty-five miles distant from the camp. 5. On the fifth day twenty thousand men arrived to defend the town. 6. The spears of these people are two feet shorter than those which the Haeduans use. 7. The soldiers worked at building<sup>1</sup> the camp thirty consecutive hours. 8. Two ships were carried out of their course<sup>2</sup> by the wind and were unable to make<sup>3</sup> the harbor.

---

<sup>1</sup> Simply *built*.

<sup>2</sup> *dēferō*.

<sup>3</sup> *caplō*.

*Caesar's First Invasion of Britain* (B. G. IV, 20-36)

*In the late summer of 55 B. C. Caesar, having returned from a brief invasion of Germany, decided to cross to Britain in order to overawe the tribes living there and to put an end to the support given by them to the Gauls*

1. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde  
5 subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mer-  
10 cātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique

---

[The numerals preceding the notes refer to the lines above.]

1. 1. *exiguā . . . reliquā*: abl. abs., 392.
2. *ad septentrionēs*: toward the north.
4. *bellis*: abl. of time when, 176.
5. *subministrāta* (esse): inf. in ind. disc.—*sī*: equivalent to *etsī*.—*ad bellum gerendum*: 450, b.
6. *sibi ūsuī*: 415-418.—*fore*: the subject is contained in the clauses *sī . . . cōgnōvisset*; in translating use the pronoun *it*: *he thought it would be . . . , if*, etc.
- 7 f. *adisset*, *perspēxisset*, *cōgnōvisset*: in ind. disc. representing the fut. perf. of the direct; *adierō*, *perspēxerō*, *cōgnōverō*.
8. *loca*: 132.
9. *incōgnita*; probably the Gauls were not so ignorant as they seemed: but they were unwilling to help Caesar.
10. *illō*: adv., to that place.—*hīs ipsis*: i. e., mercātōribus.
12. *Galliās*: plural with reference to the separate divisions of Gaul.

mercātōribus, neque quanta esset insulae mǎgnitūdō,  
neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem  
15 ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur,  
neque quī essent ad mǎiōrem nāvium multitudinem  
idōneī portūs reperire poterat.

*Volusenus and Commius sent on reconnoitering expeditions*

2. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum face-  
ret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī  
longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus  
rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus  
5 cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus  
in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvis undique ex finitimis  
regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum  
bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō  
ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā  
10 complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt  
quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rō-  
mānī obtemperāre.

Quibus auditīs liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in  
eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum  
15 iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis

13. **quanta esset**, etc.: ind. questions depending on **reperīre**,  
l. 17. What do they represent of the direct discourse?

14. **incolerent**: supply *eam*, i. e., **insulam**.

15. **ūsum**: *skill*.

2, 1. **priusquam . . . faceret**: 368.

2. **idōneum**: he did not, however, succeed in his attempt.—**nāvī longā**: *ship-of-war*.

4. **quam**: p. 100, n. 2.

5. **Morinōs**: this tribe lived nearest Britain.

7. **quam**: agreeing with **classem**, l. 8.—**Veneticum**: the Veneti, who lived in the northwestern part of Gaul, had been conquered in 56 B. c.

11. **polliceantur**: 280.—**dare**: 327.—**imperiō**: 411.

15. **Atrebātibus**: a tribe living south and west of the Morini, conquered in 57 B. c.

rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs hortēturque ut 20 populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, quī nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

*After preparing a fleet of ninety-eight transports besides his men-of-war and receiving assurances of loyalty from the Morini, Caesar crosses the channel*

3. Hīs cōstitutis rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius locī haec.

16. **ibi**: i. e., among the Atrebates.

17. **fidēlem**: yet three years later he turned against Caesar.

18. **māgnī**: gen. of value.—**habēbātur**: *was considered*.

19. **possit**: subordinate clause in ind. disc., 335.—**adeat, hortētur, nūntiet**: 335.

20. **fidem sequantur**: *accept the protection of*.

22. **facultātis**: modifying quantum, 409.

23. **audēret**: 282.

24. **revertitur, renūntiat**: see p. 138, n. 1.

3. 1. **Hīs . . . rēbus**: i. e., his preparations.

2. **tertiā vigiliā**: about midnight, as the night was divided into four watches. The date was very near August 26th, when the tide was high at 7.30 P. M.—**solvit**: *cast off*.

3. **ulteriōrem portum**: a harbor eight Roman miles off, where eighteen transports had been detained by the wind.

4. **paulō tardius**: they did not sail until three days later.

5. **hōrā . . . quartā**: about nine o'clock. The distance across is about thirty miles; the Romans landed not far from Dover.

erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbā-  
 tur utī ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī postes.  
 10 Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbi-  
 trātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent ad hōram  
 nōnam in ancoris exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribū-  
 nisque militum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnō-  
 visset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei mili-  
 15 tāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae  
 celerem atque instābilem mōtum habērent) ad nūtum et  
 ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur. Hīs dimis-  
 sis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum,  
 datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia passuum  
 20 septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvīs  
 cōstituit.

*The Britains resist a landing*

4. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō  
 equitatū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis  
 ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus  
 ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficul-  
 5 tās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōn-

8. **montibus**: the cliffs which come close to the water's edge.

11 f. **dum . . . convenirent**: for the other ships to come up, 370.  
 —**hōram nōnam**: about 3.30 P. M.

14 ff. **monuit**: the object clause depending directly on this is [ut]  
**ad nūtum . . . administrārentur**, charged that everything  
 be done, etc.—**ut . . . postulārent**: as the art of war and  
 especially seamanship required. These clauses have the  
 imperf. subj., representing Caesar's **postulant**, as they are  
 an integral part of the command. Why is the imperf. used?

15. **ut quae . . . habērent**: characterizing clause, since they are  
 things which involve.

18. **aestum**: the tide set to the north and east about 6.30 P. M.

20. **litore**: probably between Walmer Castle and Deal, northeast  
 of Dover.

4, 2. **essedāriis**: fighters in war-chariots.—**quō . . . genere**: both  
 horsemen and chariots.—**cōnsuērunt**: = cōnsuēvērunt.

5. **altō**: deep water.

stitui nōn poterant; militibus autem ignōtis locis, impedī-  
tis manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis  
simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsis-  
tendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut  
10 ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus mem-  
bris expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla cōnicerent et  
equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī per-  
territi atque hūius omninō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn  
eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis  
15 cōsuērant ūtēbantur.

*Caesar manoeuvres for an advantage—Bravery of a centurion*

5. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quā-  
rum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiō et mōtus ad  
ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus  
et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui  
5 atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostis prōpelli ac  
submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit.  
Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō  
genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac  
paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostris militi-  
10 bus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, qui

6. militibus: dat. of agent with dēsiliendum, etc., 443.

7. manibus: abl. abs.—oppressis: agreeing with militibus.

9. cum illi: while the enemy, 376.

12. Insuēfactōs: trained to this action.

13. generis: gen. w. imperitī.

14. pedestribus: on land.

5, 1. nāvis: subject of removērī, incitārī, cōstitui.

2. inūsitiō: less familiar, i. e., than that of the transports.

4. latus apertum: the right, for the enemies' shields protected their left.

5. inde: i. e., from the ships-of-war.

6. quae rēs: a manoeuvre which.

10. qui: i. e., is qui.

decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea  
rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēveniret: “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commi-  
litiōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē  
meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praesti-  
15 terō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prō-  
iēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī  
cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-  
versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus  
cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvē-  
20 runt.

*The Romans land, but for want of cavalry cannot pursue the Britons*

6. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrī tamen,  
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere  
neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī  
quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgno-  
5 pere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadis,  
ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōn-  
spēxerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs  
paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs  
tēla cōniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, sca-

11. **obtestātus**: *appealing to*. The direct form of his appeal was:  
*Quod vōbīs fēliciter ēveniat, dēsilite*, etc.

17. **inter sē**: *one another*.—**tantum dēdecus**: as the loss of the  
legion's eagle would be.

18. **ūniversī**: *with one accord*.

19. **subsecūtī**: i. e., the soldiers, the same as the subject of **cōn-  
spēxissent**.

6, 1. **ab utrisque**: *on both sides*.

2. **firmiter insistere**: *get a firm footing*.

3. **poterant**: notice the number of imperfects describing the  
progress of the battle.—**alius aliā ex nāvī**: *men from  
different ships*.

6 f. **ubi . . . cōspēxerant, adoriēbantur**, etc.: a general state-  
ment, *whenever they saw*, etc.—**singulārīs**: *scattered soldiers*.

9. **scaphās**: *row-boats*.

10 phās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantis cōspēxerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis, in hostis impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequi  
15 potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

*Envoys from the Britons sue for peace*

7. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs esse polliciti sūt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās  
5 vēnit, quem suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in

- 
11. *speculātōria nāvigia*: *scouting boats*, light and swift.—*quōs . . . cōspēxerat . . . submittēbat*: compare l. 6 above.
13. *simul*: = *simul atque, as soon as*.—*suis omnibus cōsecūtis*: *and all their comrades had joined them*. Notice that this is *logically* parallel to the preceding clause, but that by the use of the abl. abs. variety in expression is secured.
- 14 f. *neque*: *and yet . . . not*.—*longius*: *very far*.—*quod equitēs*, etc.: the cavalry were still waiting for a favorable wind. See 3, 2 ff.
16. *capere*: *make*.
17. *fortūnam*: Caesar firmly believed in his own "good luck."
- 7, 3. *datūrōs, factūrōs esse*: the subject of both is the same as that of *polliciti sūt*.—*quae imperāssēt*: ind. disc.; in the direct, *quae imperāveris, faciēmus*.
5. *suprà*: 2, 14 ff.
6. *praemisum* [esse]: perf. inf. pass.—*illī*: i. e., the Britons.—*ēgressum*: *when he had landed*.—*cum*: concessive.
7. *ōrātōris modō*: *in the character of (or as) an envoy*.



10 multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem  
 15 statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

*Caesar's cavalry transports encounter a violent storm*

8. His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēviginti dē quibus suprà dēmōstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum ad  
 5 propinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur;

11. Ignōscerētur: impersonal, sc. sibi, *that their action might be pardoned.*

13. bellum sine causā: the Britons were actually resisting an armed invasion.—Ignōscere: the subject is the same as that of dixit.

15. arcessitam: *when fetched.*

18. convenire: with coepērunt.

8, 1. post diem quartum: *three days after*, according to our reckoning. The Roman counted the day with which he started as the first.

3. suprà: chap. 3.—sustulerant: *had received on board.*

5. Britanniae: 344.

6. tempestās: a northeast wind, blowing from the North Sea.

7. aliae . . . aliae: *some . . . others.*

8. inferiōrem partem: somewhere southwest of Deal.

- 10 quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

*The fleet is almost wrecked by the storm and high tide*

9. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuevīt, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita unō tempore et longās nāvis, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum  
5 cūrāverat quāsque Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent—fūnibus, ancoris reli-  
10 quisque armāmentis āmissis—ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deērant, quae ad

10. complerentur: *began to fill*; the impf. indicates that the action was incomplete.

11. adversā nocte: *in the face of darkness*; concessive, 392.

9, 1. eādem nocte: probably August 30th.—ut esset: 269.

2. aestūs māximōs: in the English Channel the high tides vary from twenty to thirty feet, and these were naturally very strange to the Italians, since the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible.

4. nāvis: obj. of complēbat.—trānsportandum cūrāverat: *had had the army brought*. The gerundive in agreement with the object is thus used with verbs of Giving, Sending, Caring, Permitting, Undertaking, and the like to express purpose. One of the most common verbs in this construction is cūrō. W. 644, 2; B. 337, 7 b, 2; AG. 294 d; H. 622.

8. administrandī: *of handling them*.

9. fūnibus . . . āmissis: abl. abs., giving the reason for the ships' being ad nāvigandum inūtilēs.

11. māgna: with perturbātiō.—id quod: *a thing which, as*.

13. quibus . . . possent: 282.

- reficiendās nāvis erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat  
 15 hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in  
 hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

*The Britons plan to renew hostilities*

10. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, quī  
 post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlo-  
 cūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānīs  
 deesse intellegent, et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum  
 5 exiguitate cōgnōscerent,—quae hōc erant etiam angus-  
 tiōra quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs transpor-  
 tāverat,—optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellione factā,  
 frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in  
 hiemem prōducere; quod hīs superātis aut reditū inter-  
 10 clūsīs nōminem postea belli inferendī causā in Britan-  
 niam transitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūrā-  
 tiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex  
 agris dēducere coepērunt.

*Caesar suspects their purpose*

11. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat,  
 tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs  
 dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.

14. ūsuī: 416.—omnibus cōnstābat: *all were agreed*. The sub-  
 ject is hiemārī . . . oportēre.  
 15 f. in hiemem: *for the winter*.  
 10, 1. principēs: subject of dūxērunt, l. 7.  
 3 ff. cum . . . intellegent, cōgnōscerent: 376.  
 5. quae: referring to castrōrum.—hōc: abl. of cause, expanded  
 in quod . . . transportāverat.  
 7. optimum factū: 451, b.  
 8. rem . . . prōducere: *to prolong the campaign*.  
 9. hīs . . . interclūsīs: *if these should be overcome*, etc. Abl.  
 abs. expressing condition, circumstances, 392.—reditū: 206.  
 11, 2. ex ēventū: *from what had befallen his ships*.—ex eō quod:  
*from the fact that*.  
 3. fore: = futūrum esse.—suspiciābātur: *began to suspect*.

Itaque ad omnis cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et  
5 frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae  
gravissimē adflictāe erant nāvēs, eārum mātēriā atque  
aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eas rēs  
erant ūsuī, ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque cum  
summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim  
10 nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset  
effēcit.

*He plans to thwart them. They attack a foraging party*

12. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā  
frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque  
ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars  
hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-  
5 tāret, ei quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Cae-  
sari nūntiāverunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō  
ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.  
Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs  
initum cōnsili, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum

6. *mātēriā atque aere: timber and metal.* aes means both copper and bronze, which were used for bolts and to sheathe the beaks of the men-of-war, etc.

7. *quae: neuter; the antecedent is the (unexpressed) subject (ea) of comparārī.*

10. *ut . . . posset: 269.—nāvigārī: impersonal, subj. of posset. Translate, so that they could sail.*

12, 1. *geruntur: 370.*

2. *frūmentātum: 452.*

3 f. *cum . . . remanēret, ventitāret: causal.—hominum: i. e., the Britons.—ventitāret: kept coming and going; frequentative verb, W. 273, 2; B. 155, 2; AG. 167 b; H. 364.*

6. *quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: than usual.*

8 f. *id quod erat: the true state of the case, explained by aliquid cōnsili.—novī cōnsili: 409.—initum [esse]: perf. pass. infin.*

9. *cohortēs: belonging to the 10th legion. Four cohorts, being ready, started at once, two took their places on guard, and the remaining four followed as quickly as they could arm.*

- 10 in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duās in statiónem succedere, reliquās armāri et cōfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla cōnici animadvertit.
- 15 Nam quod omnī ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant,
- 20 simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

*The Britons' use of chariots in battle*

13. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Primō per omnīs partēs perequitant et tēla cōniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt,
- 5 ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

11. **armāri**: reflexive, *to arm themselves*.  
 12. **paulō longius**: *some little distance*.  
 13. **sustinēre**: *were holding their own*.—**cōnferta**: *crowded together*.  
 16. **pars ūna**: *only one part*; i. e., as yet uncut.—**suspiciātī**: *supposing*.  
 17 f. **dispersōs . . . occupātōs**: agreeing with **nostrōs**, brought over from the line above.  
 19. **incertīs ordinibus**: *because their ranks were unsteady*, 392.
- 13, 1. **ex essedis**: modifying **pūgnae**. These war-chariots of the Britons were drawn by two horses, and held six fighting men (**essedārii**) besides the driver (**aurīga**).  
 3. **equōrum**: subjective gen., *caused by the horses*.  
 4. **cum . . . insinuāvērunt**: *when they have worked their way in among*, 374.—**equitum turmās**: apparently the Britons' cavalry, so their fighting-line was made up of horse and foot, the dismounted **essedārii**.

conlocant ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac  
 10 tantum usum cotidianum et exercitatione efficiunt uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

*Rescue of the foragers. The Britons gather in great force*

14. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventum hostes constituerunt, nostri se ex timore reciperunt. Quo facto ad lacesendum hostem et com-  
 5 mittendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermissio in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et  
 10 nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohibe-

- 
7. **illi**: the fighting **essedarii**.  
 8. **expeditum**: *ready*.  
 9. **praestant**: *display*.  
 10. **tantum . . . efficiunt**: *become so expert*.  
 11. **incitatos**: *at full speed*.—**sustinere**: *to check*.  
 12. **brevi**: *within a short space*.  
 13. **iugo**: which rested on the necks of the horses and supported the pole (**temon**).  
 14. **consuerint**: shortened form of **consueverint**.  
 14. 1. **perturbatis nostris**: dat. with **auxilium tulit**.  
 5. **alienum**: *unfavorable*.  
 7 f. **nostris . . . occupatis**: with fortifying camp and getting supplies.  
 8. **qui . . . reliqui**: i. e., the Britons. The antecedent of **qui** is the (unexpressed) subject of **discesserunt**; compare 11, 7.  
 9 f. **quae . . . continerent, prohiberent**: *such as to, etc.*,  
 282.

rent. Interim barbari nuntiōs in omnis partēs dīmīsē-  
runt paucitatemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvē-  
runt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum  
sui liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expu-  
15 lissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā  
multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra  
vērērunt.

*They are defeated in battle*

15. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acci-  
derat fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte  
periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter tri-  
gintā, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est)  
5 sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōn-  
stituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum  
impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt.  
Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere  
potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus  
10 longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

*Caesar returns to Gaul*

16. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem  
dē pāce vērērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem  
anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem ad-  
dūcī iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmis nāvi-

---

13 f. **praedae faciendae, sui liberandī**: objective gen. with  
**facultās**, 157; see also 450.—**darētur, expulissent**: what  
do these represent of the direct discourse?

15, 1. **idem**: subject of **fore**, and explained by **ut . . . effugerent**.

3. **equitēs trigintā**: too few to be of service except in pursuit  
of a defeated enemy.

4. **ante**: 2, 15; 7, 4.

8. **tantō spatiō**: *over as much distance*.—**quantum . . . potuē-  
runt**: *as their strength enabled them to run*.

16, 4. **propinquā diē aequinoctī**: abl. abs.; the equinox is still  
thought to be a stormy season.—**infirmis nāvibus**: abl.  
abs.

5 bus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat.  
Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam  
noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continen-  
tem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem por-  
tūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā  
10 dēlātae sunt.

---

5. **hiemī**: *stormy weather*.—**subiciendam**: sc. *esse*.

7. **solvit**: Napoleon III reckoned that the return to Gaul was  
made on September 11th or 12th, so that the stay in Britain  
lasted about three weeks.

9. **capere**: *to make*.—**paulō infrā**: to the southwest.





# APPENDIX

## TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

### NOUNS

462

#### FIRST DECLENSION

##### Stem in ā

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	rosa	rosae
GEN.	rosae	rosarum
DAT.	rosae	rosis
ACCU.	rosam	rosas
ABL.	rosā	rosis

463

#### SECOND DECLENSION

##### Stem in o

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	servus, serve	servi	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	servi	servōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
DAT.	servō	servis	dōnō	dōnis
ACCU.	servum	servōs	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	servō	servis	dōnō	dōnis

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	puer	pueri	ager	agri
GEN.	pueri	puerōrum	agri	agrōrum
DAT.	puerō	pueris	agrō	agris
ACCU.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
ABL.	puerō	pueris	agrō	agris

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACCU.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

## THIRD DECLENSION

## Mute Stems

	SINGULAR		
NOM., Voc.	princeps	rēx	mīles
GEN.	principis	rēgis	militis
DAT.	principi	rēgi	militi
ACCU.	principem	rēgem	militem
ABL.	principe	rēge	militē

	PLURAL		
NOM., Voc.	principēs	rēgēs	militēs
GEN.	principum	rēgum	militum
DAT.	principibus	rēgibus	militibus
ACCU.	principēs	rēgēs	militēs
ABL.	principibus	rēgibus	militibus

	SINGULAR			
NOM., Voc.	vōx	obses	virtūs	caput
GEN.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis	capitis
DAT.	vōci	obsidi	virtūti	capiti
ACCU.	vōcem	obsidem	virtutem	caput
ABL.	vōce	obside	virtute	capite

	PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
GEN.	vōcum	obsidum	virtutum	capitum
DAT.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus	capitibus
ACCU.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
ABL.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus	capitibus

## Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cōnsul	victor	homō
GEN.	cōnsulis	victōris	hominis
DAT.	cōnsuli	victōrī	hominī
ACCU.	cōnsulem	victōrem	hominem
ABL.	cōnsule	victōre	homine

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cōsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōnsulum	victōrum	hominum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus
ACCU.	cōsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
ACCU.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
GEN.	nōminum	honōrum	corporum
DAT.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus
ACCU.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
ABL.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus

## Stems in i

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	civis	hostis	nūbēs
GEN.	civis	hostis	nūbis
DAT.	civī	hostī	nūbi
ACCU.	civem	hostem	nūbem
ABL.	civī, -e	hoste	nūbe

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	civēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	civium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	civibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	civīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs
ABL.	civibus	hostibus	nūbibus

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	mare	animal
GEN.	maris	animālis
DAT.	marī	animālī
ACCU.	mare	animal
ABL.	marī	animālī

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	maria	animālia
GEN.	_____	animālium
DAT.	maribus	animālibus
ACCU.	maria	animālia
ABL.	maribus	animālibus

## Mixed Stems

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	arx	urbs	cliēs
GEN.	arcis	urbis	clientis
DAT.	arci	urbī	clientī
ACCU.	arcem	urbem	clientem
ABL.	arce	urbe	cliente

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
GEN.	arcium	urbium	clientium
DAT.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
ACCU.	arcēs, -is	urbēs, -is	clientēs, -is
ABL.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

465

## FOURTH DECLENSION

## Stem in u

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	manus	cornū	domus
GEN.	manūs	cornūs	domūs
DAT.	manui, -ū	cornū	domui, -ō
ACCU.	manum	cornū	domum
ABL.	manū	cornū	domū, -ō

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	manūs	cornua	domūs
GEN.	manuum	cornuum	domuum, -ōrum
DAT.	manibus	cornibus	domibus
ACCU.	manūs	cornua	domūs, -ōs
ABL.	manibus	cornibus	domibus

466

## FIFTH DECLENSION

## Stem in ē

## SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diēi	rei
DAT.	diēi	rei
ACCU.	diem	rem
ABL.	diē	rē

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus
ACCU.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus

## ADJECTIVES

467

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	bonus, bone	bona	bonum
GEN.	boni	bonae	boni
DAT.	bono	bonae	bono
ACCU.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bono	bona	bono

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	boni	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
DAT.	bonis	bonis	bonis
ACCU.	bonos	bonas	bona
ABL.	bonis	bonis	bonis

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigri	nigrae	nigri
DAT.	nigro	nigrae	nigro
ACCU.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigro	nigra	nigro

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nigri	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrorum	nigrarum	nigrorum
DAT.	nigris	nigris	nigris
ACCU.	nigros	nigras	nigra
ABL.	nigris	nigris	nigris

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miser	miserā	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserāe	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserāe	miserō
ACCU.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō

## PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	miserī	miserāe	miserā
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACCU.	miserōs	miserās	miserā
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

468

## THIRD DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	
DAT.	audāci		audācibus	
ACCU.	audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
ABL.	audāci		audācibus	

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis		amantium	
DAT.	amanti		amantibus	
ACCU.	amantem	amāns	amantis, -ēs	amantia
ABL.	amante, -i		amantibus	



	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortis		fortium	
DAT.	forti		fortibus	
ACCU.	fortem	forte	fortis, -ēs	fortia
ABL.	forti		fortibus	

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACCU.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## 469

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Nine adjectives have *-ius* throughout in the Genitive Singular and *-ī* in the Dative Singular: *ūnus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūllus*, *nūllus*, *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, *neuter*. In the plural they are all declined like *bonus*. The following paradigms show the declension of four in the singular:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utri	utri	utri
ACCU.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
GEN.	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACCU.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

## THE NUMERALS DUO AND TRĒS

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	duo	duæ	duo	trēs	tria
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACCU.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, -is	tria
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

## 470

## DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.		fortiōris		fortiōrum
DAT.		fortiōri		fortiōribus
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
ABL.		fortiōre		fortiōribus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	_____	plūris		plūrium
DAT.	_____	_____		plūribus
ACCU.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	_____	plūre		plūribus

## 471

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	pēior	pessimus
māgnus	māior	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

<b>facilis</b> , <i>easy</i>	<b>facilior</b>	<b>facillimus</b>
<b>difficilis</b> , <i>difficult</i>	<b>difficilior</b>	<b>difficillimus</b>
<b>similis</b> , <i>like</i>	<b>similior</b>	<b>simillimus</b>
<b>dissimilis</b> , <i>unlike</i>	<b>dissimilior</b>	<b>dissimillimus</b>
<b>humilis</b> , <i>low</i>	<b>humilior</b>	<b>humillimus</b>
<b>gracilis</b> , <i>slender</i>	<b>gracilior</b>	<b>gracillimus</b>

(posterī)	posterior, <i>later</i>	{ postrēmus, <i>latest, last</i> postumus, <i>late born</i>
(exterī)	exterior, <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus } { extimus, } <i>outermost</i>
(inferī)	inferior, <i>lower</i>	{ infimus } { imus } <i>lowest</i>
(superī)	superior, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus, <i>last</i> summus, <i>highest</i>

POSITIVE (wanting)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(Compare <b>prae</b> , <i>before</i> )	<b>prior</b> , <i>former</i>	<b>prīmus</b> , <i>first</i>
“ <b>citrā</b> , <i>this side of</i> )	<b>citerior</b> , <i>hither</i>	<b>citimus</b> , <i>hithermost</i>
“ <b>ultrā</b> , <i>beyond</i> )	<b>ulterior</b> , <i>farther</i>	<b>ultimus</b> , <i>farthest, last</i>
“ <b>in</b> , <b>intrā</b> , <i>in, within</i> )	<b>interior</b> , <i>inner</i>	<b>intimus</b> , <i>inmost</i>
“ <b>prope</b> , <i>near</i> )	<b>propior</b> , <i>nearer</i>	<b>proximus</b> , <i>nearest, next</i>

## 472

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>bene</b> , <i>well</i>	<b>melius</b>	<b>optimē</b>
<b>male</b> , <i>ill</i>	<b>pēius</b>	<b>pessimē</b>
<b>multum</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrimum</b>
<b>parum</b> , ( <i>too</i> ) <i>little</i>	<b>minus</b>	<b>minimē</b>
<b>diū</b> , <i>long</i>	<b>diūtius</b>	<b>diūtissimē</b>
<b>saepe</b> , <i>often</i>	<b>saepius</b>	<b>saepissimē</b>
	<b>magis</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>māximē</b>

## NUMERALS

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>	I
2. duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus (alter), <i>second</i>	II
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	IIII or IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII or IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIII or XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	duodēvicēsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	ūndēvicēsimus	XVIII or XIX
20. vigintī	vicēsimus	XX
21. vigintī ūnus (or ūnus et vigintī)	vicēsimus prīmus (ūnus et vicēsimus, etc.)	XXI
30. trigintā	tricēsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	XXXX or XL
50. quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	LXXXX or XC
100. centum	centēsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēsimus prīmus, etc.	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	ID, or D
600. sescentī	sexcentēsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1,000. mille	millēsimus	CIO, or M
5,000. quīque milia	quīquiēns millēsimus	ICD
10,000. decem milia	deciēns millēsimus	CCICD
100,000. centum milia	centiēns millēsimus	CCCCICD

## PRONOUNS

474

## PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

	SINGULAR		
	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM., Voc.	ego	tū	_____
GEN.	mei	tui	sui
DAT.	mihi, mi	tibi	sibi
ACCU.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
ABL.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

	PLURAL		
NOM., Voc.	nōs	vōs	_____
GEN.	nostrum, nostri	vestrum, vestri	sui
DAT.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
ACCU.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
ABL.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

475

## DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	hic	haec	hōc
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius
DAT.	huic	huic	huic
ACCU.	hunc	hanc	hōc
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	his	his	his
ACCU.	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	his	his	his

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi
ACCU.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACCU.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACCU.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	eī, ii	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACCU.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<b>idem</b>	<b>e'adem</b>	<b>idem</b>
GEN.	<b>ōius'dem</b>	<b>ēiusdem</b>	<b>ēiusdem</b>
DAT.	<b>eidem</b>	<b>eidem</b>	<b>eidem</b>
ACCU.	<b>eun'dem</b>	<b>eandem</b>	<b>idem</b>
ABL.	<b>eōdem</b>	<b>eādem</b>	<b>eōdem</b>
PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	<b>eidem</b> <b>iidem</b>	<b>eaodem</b>	<b>e'adem</b>
GEN.	<b>eōrun'dem</b>	<b>eārundem</b>	<b>eōrundem</b>
DAT.	<b>eis'dem</b> <b>iis'dem</b>	<b>eisdem</b> <b>iisdem</b>	<b>eisdem</b> <b>iisdem</b>
ACCU.	<b>eōs'dem</b>	<b>eāsdem</b>	<b>e'adem</b>
ABL.	<b>eisdem</b> <b>iisdem</b>	<b>eisdem</b> <b>iisdem</b>	<b>eisdem</b> <b>iisdem</b>

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<b>iste</b>	<b>ista</b>	<b>istud</b>
GEN.	<b>istius</b>	<b>istius</b>	<b>istius</b>
DAT.	<b>isti</b>	<b>isti</b>	<b>isti</b>
ACCU.	<b>istum</b>	<b>istam</b>	<b>istud</b>
ABL.	<b>istō</b>	<b>istā</b>	<b>istō</b>
PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	<b>isti</b>	<b>istae</b>	<b>ista</b>
GEN.	<b>istōrum</b>	<b>istārum</b>	<b>istōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>istis</b>	<b>istis</b>	<b>istis</b>
ACCU.	<b>istōs</b>	<b>istās</b>	<b>ista</b>
ABL.	<b>istis</b>	<b>istis</b>	<b>istis</b>

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<b>ipse</b>	<b>ipsa</b>	<b>ipsum</b>
GEN.	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>ipsius</b>
DAT.	<b>ipsi</b>	<b>ipsi</b>	<b>ipsi</b>
ACCU.	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>ipsam</b>	<b>ipsum</b>
ABL.	<b>ipsō</b>	<b>ipsā</b>	<b>ipsō</b>

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<b>ipsi</b>	<b>ipsae</b>	<b>ipsa</b>
GEN.	<b>ipsōrum</b>	<b>ipsārum</b>	<b>ipsōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>
ACCU.	<b>ipsōs</b>	<b>ipsās</b>	<b>ipsa</b>
ABL.	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>

476

RELATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<b>quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>
GEN.	<b>cūius</b>	<b>cūius</b>	<b>cūius</b>
DAT.	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>
ACCU.	<b>quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>
ABL.	<b>quō</b>	<b>quā</b>	<b>quō</b>

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<b>quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
GEN.	<b>quōrum</b>	<b>quārum</b>	<b>quōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
ABL.	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>

477

INTERROGATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<b>quis</b>	<b>quid</b>
GEN.	<b>cūius</b>	<b>cūius</b>
DAT.	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>
ACCU.	<b>quem</b>	<b>quid</b>
ABL.	<b>quō</b>	<b>quō</b>

PLURAL

Like **quī** relative

(a) When the adjective form **quī** is used, the declension throughout coincides with that of the relative



478

## INDEFINITE

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<b>aliquis (-quī)</b>	<b>aliqua</b>	<b>aliquid (aliquod)</b>
GEN.	<b>alicū'ius</b>	<b>alicūius</b>	<b>alicūius</b>
DAT.	<b>alicui</b>	<b>alicui</b>	<b>alicui</b>
ACCU.	<b>aliquem</b>	<b>aliquam</b>	<b>aliquid (aliquod)</b>
ABL.	<b>aliquō</b>	<b>aliquā</b>	<b>aliquō</b>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<b>aliqui</b>	<b>aliquae</b>	<b>aliqua</b>
GEN.	<b>aliquōrum</b>	<b>aliquārum</b>	<b>aliquōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>ali'quibus</b>	<b>aliquibus</b>	<b>aliquibus</b>
ACCU.	<b>aliquōs</b>	<b>aliquās</b>	<b>aliqua</b>
ABL.	<b>aliquibus</b>	<b>aliquibus</b>	<b>aliquibus</b>

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quiddam (quoddam)</b>
GEN.	<b>cūius'dam</b>	<b>cūiusdam</b>	<b>cūiusdam</b>
DAT.	<b>cuidam</b>	<b>cuidam</b>	<b>cuidam</b>
ACCU.	<b>quendam</b>	<b>quandam</b>	<b>quiddam (quoddam)</b>
ABL.	<b>quōdam</b>	<b>quādam</b>	<b>quōdam</b>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>
GEN.	<b>quōrundam</b>	<b>quārundam</b>	<b>quōrundam</b>
DAT.	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>
ACCU.	<b>quōsdam</b>	<b>quāsdam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>
ABL.	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>

(a) *quisque, each, quisquam, any at all; si quis, if any, nō quis, that not (lest) any are all declined like quis (quī) interrogative.*

## REGULAR VERBS

479

## FIRST CONJUGATION

Stem in *ā***amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## ACTIVE

*amō, I love*  
*amāa, thou lovest (you love)*  
*amat, he (she, it) loves*  
*amāmus, we love*  
*amātis, you love*  
*amant, they love*

## PASSIVE

*amor, I am loved*  
*amāris (-re), you are loved*  
*amātur, he is loved*  
*amāmur, we are loved*  
*amāmini, you are loved*  
*amantur, they are loved*

## IMPERFECT

*amābam, I loved, was loving*  
*amābās, you loved*  
*amābat, he loved*  
*amābāmus, we loved*  
*amābātis, you loved*  
*amābant, they loved*

*amābar, I was loved*  
*amābāris (-re), you were loved*  
*amābātur, he was loved*  
*amābāmur, we were loved*  
*amābāmini, you were loved*  
*amābantur, they were loved*

## FUTURE

*amābō, I shall love*  
*amābis, you will love*  
*amābit, he will love*  
*amābimus, we shall love*  
*amābitis, you will love*  
*amābunt, they will love*

*amābor, I shall be loved*  
*amāberis (-re), you will be loved*  
*amābitur, he will be loved*  
*amābimur, we shall be loved*  
*amābimini, you will be loved*  
*amābuntur, they will be loved*

## PERFECT

## ACTIVE

*amāvī, I loved*  
*amāvisti, you loved*  
*amāvit, he loved*  
*amāvimus, we loved*  
*amāvistis, you loved*  
*amāverunt (-ēre), they loved*

## PASSIVE

*amātus sum, I was loved*  
*amātus es, you were loved*  
*amātus est, he was loved*  
*amāti sumus, we were loved*  
*amāti estis, you were loved*  
*amāti sunt, they were loved*

## PLUPERFECT

*amāveram, I had loved*  
*amāverās, you had loved*  
*amāverat, he had loved*  
*amāverāmus, we had loved*  
*amāverātis, you had loved*  
*amāverant, they had loved*

*amātus eram, I had been loved*  
*amātus erās, you had been loved*  
*amātus erat, he had been loved*  
*amāti erāmus, we had been loved*  
*amāti erātis, you had been loved*  
*amāti erant, they had been loved*

## FUTURE PERFECT

*amāverō, I shall have loved*  
*amāveris, you will have loved*  
*amāverit, he will have loved*  
*amāverimus, we shall have loved*  
*amāveritis, you will have loved*  
*amāverint, they will have loved*

*amātus erō, I shall have been loved*  
*amātus eris, you will have, etc.*  
*amātus erit, he will have, etc.*  
*amāti erimus, we shall have, etc.*  
*amāti eritis, you will have, etc.*  
*amāti erunt, they will have, etc.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*amem**amēs**amet**amēmus**amētis**ament**amer**amēris (-re)**amētur**amēmur**amēmini**amentur*

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE

amārem  
amārēs  
amāret  
  
amārēmus  
amārētis  
amārent

PASSIVE

amārer  
amārēris (-re)  
amārētur  
  
amārēmur  
amārēmini  
amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim  
amāveris  
amāverit  
  
amāverimus  
amāveritis  
amāverint

amātus { sim  
          { sis  
          { sit  
  
amāti { simus  
          { sitis  
          { sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem  
amāvissēs  
amāvisset  
  
amāvissēmus  
amāvissētis  
amāvissent

amātus { essem  
          { essēs  
          { esset  
  
amāti { essēmus  
          { essētis  
          { essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, love (thou)  
amāte, love (ye)

amāre, be (thou) loved  
amāmini, be (ye) loved

FUTURE

amātō, thou shalt love  
amātō, he shall love  
amātōte, ye shall love  
amantō, they shall love

amātor, thou shalt be loved  
amātor, he shall be loved  
———  
amantor, they shall be loved

## INFINITIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	<b>amāre</b> , <i>to love</i>	<b>amāri</b> , <i>to be loved</i>	
PERF.	<b>amāvisse</b> , <i>to have loved</i>	<b>amātus esse</b> , <i>to have been loved</i>	
FUT.	<b>amātūrus esse</b> , <i>to be about to love</i>	<b>amātum iri</b> , <i>to be about to be loved</i>	

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<b>amāns, -antis</b> , <i>loving</i>	GER.	<b>amandus, -a, -um</b> , <i>to be loved</i>
FUT.	<b>amātūrus, -a, -um</b> , <i>about to love</i>	PERF.	<b>amātus, -a, -um</b> , <i>loved, having been loved</i>

GERUND		SUPINE	
NOM.	_____	ACCU.	<b>amātum</b> , <i>to love</i> .
GEN.	<b>amandi</b> , <i>of loving</i>	ABL.	<b>amātū</b> , <i>to love, to be loved</i>
DAT.	<b>amandō</b> , <i>for loving</i>		
ACCU.	<b>amandum</b> , <i>loving</i>		
ABL.	<b>amandō</b> , <i>by loving</i>		

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE			
INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<b>amātūrus sum</b> ,	{ <i>I am about to love</i>	<b>amātūrus sim</b>
IMPERF.	“ <b>eram</b>		“ <b>essem</b>
FUT.	“ <b>erō</b>		
PERF.	“ <b>fui</b>		“ <b>fuerim</b>
PLUP.	“ <b>fueram</b>		“ <b>fuissem</b>
FUT. PERF.	“ <b>fuerō</b>		

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<b>amātūrus esse</b> , <i>to be about to love</i>
PERF.	“ <b>fuisse</b> , <i>to have been about to love</i>

## PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<b>amandus sum,</b>	{ <i>I have to (must)</i> <i>be loved</i>	<b>amandus sim</b>
IMPERF.	“ <b>eram</b>		“ <b>essem</b>
FUT.	“ <b>erō</b>		
PERF.	“ <b>fui</b>		“ <b>fuerim</b>
PLUP.	“ <b>fueram</b>		“ <b>fuissem</b>
FUT. PERF.	“ <b>fuerō</b>		

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<b>amandus esse,</b>	<i>to have to be loved</i>
PERF.	“ <b>fuisse,</b>	<i>to have had to be loved</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## Stem in ē

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PRESENT	PASSIVE
<b>habeō, I have, etc.</b>	<b>habeor, I am had, held</b>	
<b>habēs</b>	<b>habēris (-re)</b>	
<b>habet</b>	<b>habētur</b>	
<b>habēmus</b>	<b>habēmur</b>	
<b>habētis</b>	<b>habēmini</b>	
<b>habent</b>	<b>habentur</b>	

## IMPERFECT

<b>habēbam, I was having, etc.</b>	<b>habēbar, I was had, held</b>
<b>habēbās</b>	<b>habēbāris (-re)</b>
<b>habēbat</b>	<b>habēbātur</b>
<b>habēbāmus</b>	<b>habēbāmur</b>
<b>habēbātis</b>	<b>habēbāmini</b>
<b>habēbant</b>	<b>habēbantur</b>

## FUTURE

## ACTIVE

habēbō, *I shall have*, etc.  
 habēbis  
 habēbit  
 habēbimus  
 habēbitis  
 habēbunt

## PASSIVE

habēbor, *I shall be had, held*  
 habēberis (-re)  
 habēbitur  
 habēbimur  
 habēbimini  
 habēbuntur

## PERFECT

habuī, *I have had*, etc.  
 habuisti  
 habuit

habitus { sum, *I have been*  
           { es [had, held]  
           { est

habuimus  
 habuistis  
 habuērunt (-ēre)

habiti { sumus  
           { estis  
           { sunt

## PLUPERFECT

habueram, *I had had*, etc.  
 habuerās  
 habuerat

habitus { eram, *I had been*  
           { erās [had, held]  
           { erat

habuerāmus  
 habuerātis  
 habuerant

habiti { erāmus  
           { erātis  
           { erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

habuerō, *I shall have had*, etc.  
 habueris  
 habuerit

habitus { erō, *I shall have been*  
           { eris [had, held]  
           { erit

habuerimus  
 habueritis  
 habuerint

habiti { erimus  
           { eritis  
           { erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
habeam	habear
habeās	habeāris (-re)
habeat	habeātur
habeāmus	habeāmur
habeātis	habeāmini
habeant	habeantur

## IMPERFECT

habērem	habērer
habērēs	habērēris (-re)
habēret	habērētur
habērēmus	habērēmur
habērētis	habērēmini
habērent	habērentur

## PERFECT

habuerim	habitus	sim
habueris		sis
habuerit		sit
habuerimus	habitī	simus
habueritis		sitis
habuerint		sint

## PLUPERFECT

habuissē	habitus	essem
habuissēs		essēs
habuisset		esset
habuissēmus	habitī	essēmus
habuissētis		essētis
habuissent		essent



## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

habē, *have (thou)*habēte, *have (ye)*habēre, *be (thou) had, held*habēmini, *be (ye) had, held*

## FUTURE

habētō, *thou shalt have*habētō, *he shall have*habētōte, *ye shall have*habentō, *they shall have*habētor, *thou shalt be had,*habētor, *he shall, etc. [held*

—————

habentor, *they shall be had,*  
[held

## INFINITIVE

PRES. habēre, *to have*PERF. habuisse, *to have had*FUT. habitūrus esse, *to be*  
*about to have*habēri, *to be had*habitus esse, *to have been had*habitum iri, *to be about to*  
*be had*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. habēns, -entis, *having*FUT. habitūrus, -a, -um,  
*about to have*GER. habendus, -a, -um, *to*  
*be had*PERF. habitus, -a, -um, *had,*  
*having been had*

## GERUND

NOM. ———

GEN. habendi

DAT. habendō

ACCU. habendum

ABL. habendō

## SUPINE

ACCU. habitum

ABL. habitū

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

PRES. habitūrus sum, *I am about to have.* Etc.

## PASSIVE

PRES. habendus sum, *I must be had.* Etc.

481

## THIRD CONJUGATION

**Stem in ĕ**  
**regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PRESENT	PASSIVE
regō, <i>I rule, etc.</i>	regor, <i>I am ruled, etc.</i>	
regis	regeris (-re)	
regit	regitur	
regimus	regimur	
regitis	regimini	
regunt	reguntur	

## IMPERFECT

regēbam, <i>I was ruling, etc.</i>	regēbar, <i>I was ruled, etc.</i>
regēbās	regēbāris (-re)
regēbat	regēbātur
regēbāmus	regēbāmur
regēbātis	regēbāmini
regēbant	regēbantur

## FUTURE

regam, <i>I shall rule, etc.</i>	regar, <i>I shall be ruled, etc.</i>
regēs	regēris (-re)
reget	regētur
regēm̄is	regēm̄ur
regētis	regēmini
regent	regentur

## PERFECT

rēxī, <i>I have ruled, etc.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum, } I \text{ have been} \\ \text{es} \quad \quad \quad [ruled, etc.] \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$
rēxisti	
rēxit	
rēximus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
rēxistis	
rēxērunt (-re)	

## PLUPERFECT

## ACTIVE

rēxeram, *I had ruled*, etc.

rēxerās

rēxerat

rēxerāmus

rēxerātis

rēxerant

## PASSIVE

rēctus	{	eram, <i>I had been</i>
		erās [ <i>ruled</i> , etc.]
		erat

rēcti	{	erāmus
		erātis
		erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

rēxerō, *I shall have ruled*,

rēxeris

rēxerit

[etc.]

rēctus	{	erō, <i>I shall have been</i>
		eris [ <i>ruled</i> , etc.]
		erit

rēxerimus

rēxeritis

rēxerint

rēcti	{	erimus
		eritis
		erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

regam

regās

regat

regāmus

regātis

regant

regar

regāris (-re)

regātur

regāmur

regāmini

regantur

## IMPERFECT

regerem

regerēs

regeret

regerēmus

regerētis

regerent

regerer

regerēris (-re)

regerētur

regerēmur

regerēmini

regerentur

PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
rēxerim		sim
rēxeris	rēctus	sis
rēxerit		sit
rēxerimus		simus
rēxeritis	rēcti	sitis
rēxerint		sint

PLUPERFECT

rēxissem		essem
rēxissēs	rēctus	essēs
rēxisset		esset
rēxissēmus		essēmus
rēxissētis	rēcti	essētis
rēxissent		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
rege, <i>rule (thou)</i>	regere, <i>be (thou) ruled</i>
regite, <i>rule (ye)</i>	regimini, <i>be (ye) ruled</i>

FUTURE

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule</i>	_____
reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. regere, <i>to rule</i>	regi, <i>to be ruled</i>
PERF. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	rēctus esse, <i>to have been ruled</i>
FUT. rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	rēctum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled</i>

## PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	regēns, <i>ruling</i>	GER.	regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule</i>	PERF.	rēctus, -a, -um, <i>ruled, having been ruled</i>
GERUND		SUPINE	
NOM.	_____	ACCU.	rēctum
GEN.	regendi	ABL.	rēctū
DAT.	regendō		
ACCU.	regendum		
ABL.	regendō		

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

PRES. rectūrus sum, *I am about to rule.* Etc.

## PASSIVE

PRES. regendus sum, *I must be ruled.* Etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION (*Continued*)

## Verbs in -iō

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
capiō, <i>I take, etc.</i>	capior, <i>I am taken, etc.</i>
capis	caperis (-re)
capit	capitur
capimus	capimur
capitis	capimini
capiunt	capiuntur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE  
capiēbam

PASSIVE  
capiēbar

FUTURE

capiam  
capiēs  
capiet, etc.

capiar  
capiēris (-re)  
capiētur, etc.

PERFECT

cēpī

captus sum

PLUPERFECT

cēperam

captus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō

captus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam  
capiās  
capiat  
capiāmus  
capiātis  
capiant

capiar  
capiāris (-re)  
capiātur  
capiāmur  
capiāmini  
capiantur

IMPERFECT

caperem

caperer

PERFECT

cēperim

captus sim

PLUPERFECT

cēpissem

captus essem

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

## ACTIVE

cape, *take (thou)*  
capite, *take (ye)*

## PASSIVE

capere, *be (thou) taken*  
capimini, *be (ye) taken*

## FUTURE

capitō, *thou shalt take,*  
etc.

capitor, *thou shalt be taken,*  
etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRES. capere, *to take*

capi, *to be taken*

PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken*

captus esse, *to have been taken*

FUT. captūrus esse, *to be about to take*

captum iri, *to be about to be taken*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns, *taking*

GER. capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken*

FUT. captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take*

PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken*

## GERUND

GEN. capiendī, etc.

## SUPINE

captum                  captū

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

PRES. captūrus sum, *I am about to take.* Etc.

## PASSIVE

PRES. capiendus sum, *I must be taken.* Etc.

483

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## Stem in ī

audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## ACTIVE

audiō, *I hear*, etc.

audis

audit

audimus

auditis

audiunt

## PASSIVE

audior, *I am heard*, etc.

audiris (-re)

auditur

audimur

audimini

audiuntur

## IMPERFECT

audiēbam, *I was hearing*, audiēbar, *I was heard*, etc.

audiēbās [etc. audiēbāris (-re)]

audiēbat audiēbātur

audiēbāmus audiēbāmur

audiēbātis audiēbāmini

audiēbant audiēbantur

## FUTURE

audiam, *I shall hear*, etc. audiar, *I shall be heard*, etc.

audies audiēris (-re)

audiet audiētur

audiēmus audiēmur

audiētis audiēmini

audient audientur



## PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
audīvī, <i>I have heard</i> , etc.	audītus	sum, <i>I have been</i>	[ <i>heard</i> , etc.]
audivisti		es	
audivit		est	
audivimus	audīti	sumus	.
audivistis		estis	
audiverunt (-re)		sunt	

## PLUPERFECT

audiveram, <i>I had heard</i> , etc.	audītus	eram, <i>I had been</i>	[ <i>heard</i> , etc.]
audiverās		erās	
audiverat		erat	
audiverāmus	audīti	erāmus	
audiverātis		erātis	
audiverant		erant	

## FUTURE PERFECT

audiverō, <i>I shall have heard</i> ,	audītus	erō, <i>I shall have</i>	[ <i>been heard</i> ,
audiveris [etc.]		eris	
audiverit		erit	
audiverimus	audīti	erimus	
audiveritis		eritis	
audiverint		erunt	

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

audiam	audiar
audiās	audiāris (-re)
audiat	audiātur
audiāmus	audiāmur
audiātis	audiāmini
audiant	audiantur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE

audirem  
audirēs  
audiret  
  
audirēmus  
audirētis  
audirent

PASSIVE

audīrer  
audirēris (-re)  
audirētur  
  
audirēmur  
audirēmini  
audirentur

PERFECT

audiverim  
audiveris  
audiverit  
  
audiverimus  
audiveritis  
audiverint

audītus { *sim*  
          *sīs*  
          *sit*  
  
audīti { *simus*  
          *sītis*  
          *sint*

PLUPERFECT

audivissem  
audivissēs  
audivisset  
  
audivissēmus  
audivissētis  
audivissent

audītus { *essem*  
          *essēs*  
          *esset*  
  
audīti { *essēmus*  
          *essētis*  
          *essent*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, *hear (thou)*  
audīte, *hear (ye)*

audīre, *be (thou) heard*  
audīmini, *be (ye) heard*

FUTURE

audītō, *thou shalt hear, etc.*  
audītō  
audītōte  
audiuntō

audītor, *thou shalt be heard,*  
audītor [etc.]  

---

audiuntor

## INFINITIVE

## ACTIVE

PRES. **audire**, *to hear*  
 PERF. **audivisse**, *to have*  
       *heard*  
 FUT. **audītūrus esse**, *to be*  
       *about to hear*

## PASSIVE

**audiri**, *to be heard*  
**auditus esse**, *to have been*  
       *heard*  
**auditum iri**, *to be about to*  
       *be heard*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. **audiēns**, *hearing*

GER. **audiendus, -a, -um**, *to be*  
       *heard*

FUT. **audītūrus, -a, -um**,  
       *about to hear*

PERF. **auditus, -a, -um**, *heard*,  
       *having been heard*

## GERUND

**audiendi, -dō, -dum, -dō**

## SUPINE

**auditum, auditū**

## (a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

PRES. **audītūrus sum**, *I am about to hear.* Etc.

## PASSIVE

PRES. **audiendus sum**, *I must be heard.* Etc.

## DEPONENT VERBS

CONJ. I	<b>hortor</b> ,	<b>hortāri</b> ,	<b>hortātus</b> ,	<i>to urge</i>
CONJ. II	<b>vereor</b> ,	<b>verēri</b> ,	<b>veritus</b> ,	<i>to fear</i>
CONJ. III	<b>sequor</b> ,	<b>sequi</b> ,	<b>secūtus</b>	<i>to follow</i>
CONJ. IV	<b>potior</b> ,	<b>potiri</b> ,	<b>potitus</b> ,	<i>to get possession</i>

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	potiris (-re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāmini	verēmini	sequimini	potimini
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
	eram	eram	eram	eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secutus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus	veritus	secutus	potītus
	essem	essem	essem	essem

## IMPERATIVE

hortāre, etc. verēre, etc. sequere, etc. potire, etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortāri	verēri	sequi	potiri
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potitūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potitūrus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus

## GERUND

<b>hortandi,</b>	<b>verendi,</b>	<b>sequendi,</b>	<b>potiendi,</b>
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

## SUPINE

**hortatum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū potitum, -tū**

(a) Notice that Deponent Verbs have the Active form of the Future Infinitive and the Participles of both voices.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

485

**Sum, esse, fui**

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## SINGULAR

**sum, I am**  
**es, you are**  
**est, he (she, it) is**

## PLURAL

**sumus, we are**  
**estis, you are**  
**sunt, they are**

## IMPERFECT

**eram, I was**  
**erās, you were**  
**erat, he was**

**erāmus, we were**  
**erātis, you were**  
**erant, they were**

## FUTURE

**erō, I shall be**  
**eris, you will be**  
**erit, he will be**

**erimus, we shall be**  
**eritis, you will be**  
**erunt, they will be**

## PERFECT

**fui, I have been, was**  
**fuisti, you have been, were**  
**fuit, he has been, was**

**fuimus, we have been, were**  
**fuistis, you have been, were**  
**fuērunt (-ēre), they have been, were**

PLUPERFECT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>fuera</b> <i>m</i> , <i>I had been</i>	<b>fuera</b> <i>m</i> <i>us</i> , <i>we had been</i>
<b>fuera</b> <i>s</i> , <i>you had been</i>	<b>fuera</b> <i>tis</i> , <i>you had been</i>
<b>fuera</b> <i>t</i> , <i>he had been</i>	<b>fuera</b> <i>nt</i> , <i>they had been</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	
<b>fuero</b> , <i>I shall have been</i>	<b>fuero</b> <i>m</i> <i>us</i> , <i>we shall have been</i>
<b>fuero</b> <i>s</i> , <i>you will have been</i>	<b>fuero</b> <i>tis</i> , <i>you will have been</i>
<b>fuero</b> <i>t</i> , <i>he will have been</i>	<b>fuero</b> <i>int</i> , <i>they will have been</i>

# SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	
<b>sim</b>	<b>sim</b> <i>us</i>
<b>sis</b>	<b>sis</b> <i>tis</i>
<b>sit</b>	<b>sit</b>
IMPERFECT	
<b>essem</b>	<b>essem</b> <i>us</i>
<b>esset</b>	<b>esset</b> <i>tis</i>
<b>esset</b>	<b>esset</b>
PERFECT	
<b>fuero</b> <i>m</i>	<b>fuero</b> <i>m</i> <i>us</i>
<b>fuero</b> <i>s</i>	<b>fuero</b> <i>tis</i>
<b>fuero</b> <i>t</i>	<b>fuero</b> <i>int</i>
PLUPERFECT	
<b>fuissem</b>	<b>fuissem</b> <i>us</i>
<b>fuisset</b>	<b>fuisset</b> <i>tis</i>
<b>fuisset</b>	<b>fuisset</b>

# IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	
<b>es</b> , <i>be (thou)</i>	<b>este</b> , <i>be (ye)</i>
FUTURE	
<b>esto</b> , <i>thou shalt be</i>	<b>esto</b> <i>te</i> , <i>ye shall be</i>
<b>esto</b> , <i>he shall be</i>	<b>sunto</b> , <i>they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
PRES.	<i>esse, to be</i>	FUT.	<i>futūrus, -a, -um, about to be</i>
PERF.	<i>fuisse, to have been</i>		
FUT.	<i>futūrus, esse (fore), to be about to be</i>		

(a) *possum, posse, potui, to be able, can*

		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.		<i>possum, I can</i>	<i>possim</i>
		<i>potes, you can</i>	<i>possis</i>
		<i>potest, he can</i>	<i>possit</i>
		<i>possumus, we can</i>	<i>possimus</i>
		<i>potestis, you can</i>	<i>possitis</i>
		<i>possunt, they can</i>	<i>possint</i>
IMPF.		<i>poteram, I could</i>	<i>possem</i>
FUT.		<i>poterō, I shall be able</i>	
PERF.		<i>potui, I could</i>	<i>potuerim</i>
PLUP.		<i>potueram, I had been able</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
F. P.		<i>potuerō, I shall have been able</i>	
INFIN. PRES.		<i>posse, to be able</i>	PERF. <i>potuisse, to have been able</i>
PART.		<i>potēns (adj.), powerful</i>	

(b) *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, to help*

		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.		<i>prōsum, I help</i>	<i>prōsim</i>
		<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōsis</i>
		<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsit</i>
		<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
		<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
		<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPF.	<b>pröderam</b> , <i>I was helping</i>	<b>pröderessem</b>
FUT.	<b>pröderō</b> , <i>I shall help</i>	
PERF.	<b>prōfui</b> , <i>I helped</i>	<b>prōfuerim</b>
PLUP.	<b>prōfueram</b> , <i>I had helped</i>	<b>prōfuissem</b>
F. P.	<b>prōfuerō</b> , <i>I shall have helped</i>	
IMPER.	<b>prōdes</b> , <b>prōdestō</b> , etc.	
INFIN. PRES.	<b>prōdesse</b>	PERF. <b>prōfuisse</b> FUT. <b>prōfutūrus esse</b>
PART.	<b>prōfutūrus</b> , <i>about to help</i>	

- 487      **volō, velle, volui**, —, *to be willing, will, wish*  
           **nōlō, nolle, nōlui**, —, *to be unwilling, will not*  
           **mālō, malle, mālui**, —, *to be more willing, prefer*

	INDICATIVE		
PRES.	<b>volō</b> , <i>I wish</i>	<b>nōlō</b> , <i>I will not</i>	<b>mālō</b> , <i>I prefer</i>
	<b>vis</b>	<b>nōn vis</b>	<b>māvis</b>
	<b>vult</b>	<b>nōn vult</b>	<b>māvult</b>
	<b>volumus</b>	<b>nolumus</b>	<b>mālumus</b>
	<b>vultis</b>	<b>nōn vultis</b>	<b>māvultis</b>
	<b>volunt</b>	<b>nōlunt</b>	<b>mālunt</b>
IMPF.	<b>volēbam</b>	<b>nōlēbam</b>	<b>mālēbam</b>
FUT.	<b>volam, volēs</b> , etc.	<b>nōlam, nōlēs</b> , etc.	<b>mālam, mālēs</b> , etc.
PERF.	<b>volui</b>	<b>nōlui</b>	<b>mālui</b>
PLUP.	<b>volueram</b>	<b>nōlueram</b>	<b>mālueram</b>
F. P.	<b>voluerō</b>	<b>nōluerō</b>	<b>māluerō</b>

	SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRES.	<b>velim</b>	<b>nōlim</b>	<b>mālim</b>
	<b>velis</b>	<b>nōlis</b>	<b>mālis</b>
	<b>velit</b>	<b>nōlit</b>	<b>mālit</b>
	<b>velimus</b>	<b>nōlimus</b>	<b>mālimus</b>
	<b>velitis</b>	<b>nōlitis</b>	<b>mālitis</b>
	<b>velint</b>	<b>nōlint</b>	<b>mālint</b>



SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*)

IMPF.	<b>vellem</b>	<b>nöllem</b>	<b>mällem</b>
PERF.	<b>voluerim</b>	<b>nöluerim</b>	<b>mäluerim</b>
PLUP.	<b>voluissem</b>	<b>nöluissem</b>	<b>mäluissem</b>

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	_____	<b>nöli</b>	_____
		<b>nölite</b>	
FUT.	_____	<b>nölitö, etc.</b>	_____

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<b>velle</b>	<b>nölle</b>	<b>mälle</b>
PERF.	<b>voluisse</b>	<b>nöluisse</b>	<b>mäluisse</b>

## PARTICIPLE

PRES.	<b>volëns</b>	<b>nölëns</b>	_____
-------	---------------	---------------	-------

488

1 eö, ire, (ivl) ii, itürus, go

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	<b>eö, is, it</b> <b>imus, itis, eunt</b>
IMPF.	<b>ibam, ibäs, ibat</b> <b>ibämus, ibätis, ibant</b>
FUT.	<b>ibö, ibis, ibit</b> <b>ibimus, ibitis, ibunt</b>
PERF.	<b>(ivl), ii</b>
PLUP.	<b>(iveram) ieram</b>
F. P.	<b>(iverö) ierö</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<b>eam, eäs, eat</b> <b>eämus, eätis, eant</b> <b>irem, iräs, iret</b> <b>irëmus, irëtis, irent</b>
<b>(iverim) ierim</b> <b>(ivissem) issem</b>

## IMPERATIVE

i, ite, itö, itö, itöte, euntö

## INFINITIVE

PRES. <b>ire</b>	PERF. <b>(ivisse) isse</b>	FUT. <b>itürus esse</b>
------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

PARTICIPLES

PRES. iēns, euntis	FUT. itūrus	GER. eundum
GERUND : eundi, -dō, -dum, -dō	SUPINE : itum, itū	

(a) The compounds adeō, *approach*, ineō, *enter*, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive :

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES. adeor	IMPF. adībar	PRES. adear
adiris	FUT. adibor	IMPF. adirer
aditur	PERF. aditus sum	PERF. aditus sim
adimur	PLUP. aditus eram	PLUP. aditus essem
adimini	F. P. aditus erō	INFIN. adiri, aditus esse
adeuntur		PART. aditus adeundus

(b) In the perfect system of eō and its compounds the forms with *v* are extremely rare.

2 fiō, fieri, factus sum, *to be made, become*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES. fiō		fiam
fīs		fiās
fiť		fiat
fīmus		fiāmus
fītis		fiātis
fiunt		fiant
IMPF. fiēbam		fierem
FUT. fiam		
PERF. factus sum		factus sim
PLUP. factus eram		factus essem
F. P. factus erō		

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE
PRES. fi	fite	PRES. fieri
FUT. fitō	fitōte	PERF. factus esse
fitō	fiuntō	FUT. factum iri

## PARTICIPLES

PERF. **factus, -a, -um**GER. **faciendus, -a, -um**

489

**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear****ACTIVE****PASSIVE**

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES.	<b>ferō</b>	<b>feram</b>	<b>feror</b>	<b>ferar</b>
	<b>fers</b>	<b>ferās</b>	<b>ferris</b>	<b>ferāris (-re)</b>
	<b>fert</b>	<b>ferat</b>	<b>fertur</b>	<b>ferātur</b>
	<b>ferimus</b>	<b>ferāmus</b>	<b>ferimur</b>	<b>ferāmur</b>
	<b>fertis</b>	<b>ferātis</b>	<b>ferimini</b>	<b>ferāmini</b>
	<b>ferunt</b>	<b>ferant</b>	<b>feruntur</b>	<b>ferantur</b>
IMPF.	<b>ferēbam</b>	<b>ferrem</b>	<b>ferēbar</b>	<b>ferrer</b>
FUT.	<b>feram</b>		<b>ferar</b>	
PERF.	<b>tuli</b>	<b>tulerim</b>	<b>lātus sum</b>	<b>lātus sim</b>
PLUP.	<b>tuleram</b>	<b>tulisse</b>	<b>lātus eram</b>	<b>lātus essem</b>
F. P.	<b>tulerō</b>		<b>lātus erō</b>	

**IMPERATIVE**

PRES.	<b>fer</b>	<b>ferite</b>	<b>ferre</b>	<b>ferimini</b>
FUT.	<b>fertō</b>	<b>fertōte</b>	<b>fertor</b>	—
	<b>fertō</b>	<b>feruntō</b>	<b>fertor</b>	<b>feruntor</b>

**INFINITIVE**

PRES.	<b>ferre</b>	<b>ferri</b>
PERF.	<b>tulisse</b>	<b>lātus esse</b>
FUT.	<b>lāturus esse</b>	<b>lātum iri</b>

**PARTICIPLES**

PRES.	<b>ferēns</b>	PERF.	<b>lātus</b>
FUT.	<b>lāturus</b>	GER.	<b>ferendus</b>

GERUND : **ferendi, -dō, -dum, -dō**      SUPINE : **lātum, -tū**

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

THE following vocabulary contains all the words used in the preceding lessons and in the account of Caesar's Invasion of Britain given in § 461; but the words given in the special vocabularies to the reading exercises are not repeated here. The present infinitive only is given of verbs conjugated like *amō*. The component parts of compound verbs are shown in parentheses immediately after the verbs; allied words follow the meanings as in the vocabularies to the lessons. A numeral after the meanings refers to the lesson in which the word is first used, unless preceded by the sign of a section. The few abbreviations will be readily understood.

### A

**ā, ab**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. abl., *from, by*, 9.

**abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (ab + dō), *to put away, to hide*; **sē abdere**, *to hide one's self*; **abditus, -a, -um**, *hidden*, 51.

**abeō, -īre, -īī, -itūrus** (ab + eō), *to go off, go away*, 47.

**absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus** (ab + sum), *to be away, absent*, 13.

**āc, conj.**, see *atque*.

**accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus** (ad + cēdō), *to approach, draw near*, 49.

**accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, to fall, happen**, 51.

**accipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (ad + capiō), *to receive, accept, get*, 37.

**ācer, ācris, ācre**. adj., *sharp, keen, active*, 21.

**aciēs, -ēī, f.**, *line of battle*, 26.

**ācriter**, adv., *sharply, eagerly* (ācer), 25.

**ad**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *to, toward*; w. names of towns, *in the vicinity of*, 13.

**addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (ad + dūcō), *to lead to, bring, induce*, 50.

**adeō, -īre, -īī, -itūrus** (ad + eō), *to go to, approach*, 53.

**adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** (ad + ferō), *to bear to, bring up*, 51.

**adflīctō, -āre, to dash against, wreck, shatter**, § 461.

**adflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, to shatter, injure**, § 461.

**adgregō, -āre, to gather, join**, § 461.

**adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus** (ad + agō), *to drive to, hurl, cast*, § 461.

**aditus**, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival, access* (adeō), 53.

**adiungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnetus, *to join to, attach, unite*, 55.

**adiuvō**, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *to help, aid*, 28.

**administrō**, -āre, *to manage, carry on*, 15.

**admittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ad + mitto), *to commit, allow, bring on one's self*, § 461.

**adorior**, -īrī, -ortus (ad + orior), *to rise up against, attack*, 44.

**adpropinquō**, -āre, *to approach* (propinquus), 17.

**adsum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (ad + sum), *to be present*, 25.

**adulēscēns**, -ntis, adj., *young*; as a substantive, *young man*, 46.

**adventus**, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach*, 31.

**adversus**, -a, -um, adj., *opposite, unfavorable*, 51.

**aedificium**, -ī, n., *building* (aedificō), 27.

**aedificō**, -āre, *to build*, 9.

**aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, adj., *sick, feeble*, 7.

**aegrē**, adv., *feebly, with difficulty*, § 461.

**Aemilius**, -ī, m., *Aemilius*, 37.

**aequinoctium**, -ī, n., *equinox* (aequus, nox), § 461.

**aequus**, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal, fair*, 39.

**aes**, **aeris**, n., *metal, copper, bronze*, § 461.

**aestās**, -ātis, f., *summer*, 20.

**aestus**, -ūs, m., *tide*, § 461.

**aetās**, -ātis, f., *age, time of life*, 39.

**Africa**, -ae, f., *Africa*, 32.

**ager**, **agri**, m., *field, land*, 6.

**agmen**, -inis, n., *line of march* (agō), 26.

**agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, do, discuss*; **grātiās agere**, *to express thanks*, 32.

**agricola**, -ae, m., *farmer* (ager), 4.

**alacritās**, -ātis, f., *eagerness, zeal*, § 461.

**Alcibiadēs**, -is, m., *Alcibiades*, 35.

**aliēnus**, -a, -um, adj., *another's, others', foreign* (alius), 56.

**aliquis**, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, some, any* (declined, § 478), 52.

**alius**, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other*; **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another* (decl. § 469), 41.

**alter**, -era, -erum, adj., *the other of two* (declined, § 469), 44.

**altitūdō**, -inis, f., *height* (altus), 24.

**altum**, -ī, n., *the deep* (altus), § 461.

**altus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep*, 22.

**amīcitiā**, -ae, f., *friendship, alliance, friendly relations* (amīcus), 11.

**amīcus**, -ī, m., *friend* (amō), 4.

**āmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ā + mittō), *to let go, lose*, 31.

**amō**, -āre, *to love* (conj. § 479), 1.

**amor**, -ōris, m., *love, affection* (amō), 17.

**ancilla**, -ae, f., *maid-servant*, 1.

**ancora**, -ae, f., *anchor*, § 461.

**angustē**, adv., *narrowly, closely* (angustus), § 461.

**angustus**, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, close, confined*, § 461.

**animadvertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versus (animus + advertō), *to turn the mind to, notice*, 52.

**animal**, -ālis, n., *living being, animal*, 18.

**animus**, -ī, m., *mind, courage, soul*, 11.

**annus**, -ī, m., *year*, 20.

**ante**, adv. and prep. w. accu., *before*, 15.

**antequam** (ante + quam), conj., *before* (see § 367, n. 1), 47.

**anteā**, adv., *before, previously* (ante), 34.

**Antiochus**, -ī, m., *Antiochus*, 34.

**antīquus**, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old* (ante), 6.

**apertus**, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed, unprotected*, § 461.

**appellō**, -āre, *address, call, name*, 9.

**Appius**, -ī, m., *Appius*, 31.

**apud**, prep. w. accu., *with, before, by, near, among*, 17.

**Āpūlia**, -ae, f., *Apulia*, 37.

**aqua**, -ae, f., *water*, 27.

**aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle, standard*, of a legion, § 461.

**āra**, -ae, f., *altar*, 3.

**arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to think, suppose*, 41.

**arbor**, -oris, f., *tree*, 17.

**arcessō**, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *to summon, send for*, § 461.

**argentum**, -ī, n., *silver, money*, 5.

**āridus**, -a, -um, adj., *dry*; neut. as substantive, **āridum**, -ī, *dry land, beach*, § 461.

**arma**, -ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons* (armō), 10.

**armāmenta**, -ōrum, n. plur., *equipment, tackle, rigging* (armō), § 461.

**armō**, -āre, *to arm, equip*, 21.

**arx**, arcis, f., *citadel*, 19.

**Asia**, -ae, f., *Asia*, 28.

**Athēniēnsis**, -e, adj., *Athenian*; as subst., *an Athenian*, 28.

**atque**, -āc, conj., *and, and also*, 31.

**Atrebās**, -ātis, adj., *Atrebatian*; **Atrebātēs**, -um, m. plur., *the Atrebates, a people of Belgic Gaul*, § 461.

**atrōx**, -ōcis, adj., *savage, frightful*, 22.

**attingō**, -ere, -tigī, -tactus, *to touch, reach*, § 461.

**auctōritās**, -ātis, f., *influence, authority*, 28.

**audācia**, -ae, f., *boldness, daring* (audāx), 16.

**audācter**, adv., *boldly* (audāx), 25.

**audāx**, -ācis, adj., *bold, daring* 21.

**audeō**, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep. v., *to dare* (see § 295), 38.

**audiō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus, *to hear* (conj. § 483), 34.

**augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, enlarge, magnify*, 28.

**aurīga**, -ae, m., *a charioteer, driver*, § 461.

**aut**, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, 40.

**autem**, conj., *but, moreover, however*, 49.

**auxillor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to help, aid* (auxilium), § 461.

**auxilium**, -ī, n., *help, assistance*, 7.

**Avaricum**, -ī, n., *Avaricum*, now  
Bourges, 54.  
**avidus**, -a, -um, adj., *eager*, 17.

## B

**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *foreign*,  
*barbarian*, 28.  
**beātus**, -a, -um, adj., *happy*, *for-*  
*tunate*, 23.  
**Belgae**, -ārum, m. plur., *the Bel-*  
*gians*, 12.  
**bellum**, -ī, n., *war*, 6.  
**bene**, adv., *well* (*bonus*), 25.  
**beneficium**, -ī, n., *kindness*, *favor*  
(*bene*, *faciō*), 50.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, adj., *good* (decl.  
§§ 62, 467), 1 ff.  
**brevī**, adv., *in a short time* (*brev-*  
*is*), § 461.  
**brevis**, -e, adj., *brief*, *short*, 21.  
**Britannī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the*  
*Britons*, 6.  
**Britannia**, -ae, f., *Britain*, *Eng-*  
*land*, 3.

## C

**caedēs**, -is, f., *slaughter*, *massacre*,  
18.  
**caelum**, -ī, n., *sky*, *heaven*, 27.  
**Caesar**, -aris, m., (*Caius Julius*)  
*Caesar*, 12.  
**campus**, -ī, m., *field*, *plain*, 4.  
**capīō**, -ere, cēpī, *captus*, *to take*,  
*seize*, *capture* (conj. § 482), 33.  
**captīvus**, -ī, m., *captive* (*capīō*),  
27.  
**caput**, -itis, n., *head*, 16.  
**Carthāginiēnsis**, -e, adj., *Car-*  
*thaginian*; as substantive, *a*  
*Carthaginian*, 32.  
**cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear*, 2 ff.

**Cassivelaunus**, -ī, m., *Cassivelaun-*  
*us*, a leader of the Britons, 49.  
**castra**, -ōrum, n. plur., *a forti-*  
*fied camp*, 18.  
**cāsus**, -ūs, m., *accident*, *event*, *oc-*  
*currence*, 49.  
**causa**, -ae, f., *cause*, *reason*; abl.  
*causā* w. gen., *for the sake of*,  
10.  
**caveō**, -ēre, cāvī, *cautus*, *to be*  
*on one's guard*, *take care*, 45.  
**cēdō**, -ere, cessī, *cessūrus*, *to*  
*withdraw*, *yield*, 42.  
**celer**, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift*,  
*quick*, 23.  
**celeritās**, -ātis, f., *swiftness*,  
*speed* (*celer*), 30.  
**celeriter**, adv., *swiftly*, *quickly*  
(*celer*), 16.  
**centuriō**, -ōnis, m., *centurion*, 41.  
**certē**, adv., *certainly*, *at least*  
(*certus*), § 461.  
**certus**, -a, -um, adj., *fixed*, *deter-*  
*mined*, *certain*; *aliquem cer-*  
*tiōrem facere*, *to inform one*,  
22.  
**cēterī**, -ae, -a, adj., *all the rest*,  
*the others*, 7.  
**Chersonēsus**, -ī, f., *the Chersone-*  
*sus*, a peninsula of Thrace, 28.  
**Cīneas**, -ae, m., *Cīneas*, a friend  
and envoy of king Pyrrhus, 31.  
**circiter**, adv., *about* (with nu-  
merals; *circum*), § 461.  
**circum**, adverbial prefix and  
prep. w. accu., *around*, 41.  
**circumdō**, -āre, -dedī, -datus  
(*circum* + *dō*), *to put around*,  
*surround*, § 461.  
**circumsistō**, -ere, -stetī, —, *to*  
*surround*, *beset*, § 461.  
**circumvenīō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-

- tus** (circum + veniō), *to come around, surround, invest*, 46.
- citō**, adv., *rapidly, quickly*; superl. **citissimō**, *with the greatest speed*, § 461.
- citerior**, -ius, adj. comp., *hither, nearer* (comp. § 471), 24.
- cīvis**, -is, m. and f., *citizen*, 18.
- cīvitās**, -ātis, f., *citizenship, state* (cīvis), 19.
- clādēs**, -is, m., *loss, disaster*, 18.
- clam**, adv., *secretly*, 33.
- clāmor**, -ōris, m., *shout*, 17.
- clārus**, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear, famous*, 3 ff.
- classis**, -is, f., *fleet*, 31.
- Claudius**, -i, m., *Claudius*, 31.
- cliēns**, -entis, m., *dependent, client*, 19.
- coepī**, **coepisse**, **coeptus**, defect. v., *to begin*; the present system is supplied by **incipiō**, -ere, 46.
- cōgitō**, -āre, *to think, consider, plan*, 53.
- cōgnōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognise*, 34.
- cōgō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (cum + agō), *to compel, force, collect*, 32.
- cohors**, -hortis, f., *a cohort, one tenth of a legion*, 19.
- cohortor**, -ārī, -ātus (cum + hortor), dep. v., *to encourage*, § 461.
- collis**, -is, m., *a hill*, 18.
- com**-, **con**-, **co**-, adverbial prefix = cum, *with, together*.
- comes**, -itis, m. and f., *a companion*, 15.
- commeātus**, -ūs, m., *transportation, supplies*, § 461.
- commendō**, -āre, *commit, entrust*, § 461.
- commilitō**, -ōnis, m.,  *fellow-soldier* (mīles), § 461.
- committō**, -ere, -mīsi, -missus (cum + mittō), *to engage in battle*, 31.
- Commius**, -ī, m., *Commius, a chief of the Atrebrates*, § 461.
- commodō**, adv., *conveniently, fitly, easily*, § 461.
- commūnis**, -e, adj., *common*, 50.
- comparō**, -āre (cum + parō), *to get ready, prepare*, 14.
- compleō**, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *to fill, cover*, 47.
- complūrēs**, -a or -ia, adj. plur., *several, a good many*, 45.
- comprehendō**, -ere, **prehendī**, **prehensus**, *to arrest, seize*, 53.
- concēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (cum + cēdō), *to yield, withdraw*, 47.
- concilium**, -ī, n., *council, conference*, 14.
- concurrō**, -ere, -currī or -ecurrī, -cursūrus, *to run together*, 54.
- condiciō**, -ōnis, f., *terms*, 32.
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, adj., *crowded, close*, § 461.
- cōnferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (cum + ferō), *to bring together*, 53.
- cōnfestim**, adv., *promptly, hastily*, § 461.
- cōnficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (cum + faciō), *to finish, perform, wear out*, 45.
- cōnfidō**, -ere, -fīsus (cum + fidō), *to trust, be confident*, 38.



**cōnfirmō, -āre, to strengthen, establish, 20.**

**cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw together, cast, hurl, § 461.**

**coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūncus, to join together, unite, 54.**

**coniūnx, -iugis, m. or f., husband or wife (coniungō), 15.**

**coniūratiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, plot (coniūrō), § 461.**

**coniūrō, -āre, to swear together, plot, conspire, 12.**

**conlocō, -āre, to station, place, 18.**

**conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, dep. v., to converse, 54.**

**cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to attempt, 38.**

**cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, to mount, go on board ship, § 461.**

**cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus (cum + sequor), dep. v., to overtake, 37.**

**cōnsilium, -ī, n., plan, design, counsel, 18.**

**cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to take a position, stand, halt, 43.**

**cōnspiciō, -ōre, -spexī, -spectus, to see, make out, observe, § 461.**

**cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, to establish, place, station, 41.**

**cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, to agree; impers., it is agreed, is an established fact, 51.**

**cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, to become accustomed, 51.**

**cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., custom, habit, 51.**

**cōnsul, -is, m., consul, 17.**

**cōnsulō, -ere, cōnsulnī, cōnsultus, to have regard for, care**

**for, consult; aliquem cōnsulere, to consult a person; alicui cōnsulere, to look out for a person's interests, 49.**

**contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, to exert one's self, hasten, 32.**

**continēns, -ntis, m., mainland, continent, § 461.**

**contineō, -ere, -tinnī, -tentus (cum + teneō), to hold back, keep in check, 27.**

**continuus, -a, -um, adj., consecutive, successive, 20.**

**contrā, prep. w. accu., against, 12.**

**conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (cum + veniō), to come together, assemble, 42.**

**convocō, -āre (cum + vocō), to call together, assemble, 13.**

**coōrior, -īrī, -ortus (cum + orior), arise, spring up, § 461.**

**cōpia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance; plur. cōpliae, troops, forces, 11.**

**cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing of an army, 26.**

**corpus, -oris, n., body, 17.**

**cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily (cotīdiē), 38.**

**cotīdiē, adv., every day, daily, 36.**

**crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent, numerous, 51.**

**culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame, § 461.**

**cum, conj., when, because, since, although (see §§ 374–376), 48.**

**cum, prep. w. abl., with, 6.**

**cunctātor, -ōris, m., the Delayer. a term applied to Quintus Fabius Maximus (cunctor), 33.**

**cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to delay, § 461.**

**cupiō, -ere, -ivī (-lī), -ītus**, to desire, be eager, 33.

**cūr**, adv., why? 30.

**cūra, -ae**, f., care (cūrō), 2.

**cūrō, -āre**, to care for; w. gerundive, to have a thing done, 4.

**currus, -ūs**, m., chariot, § 461.

**cursus, -ūs**, m., running, speed, 54.

**custōs, -ōdis**, m., a guard, 15.

## D

**dē**, prep. w. abl., from, about, concerning, 9.

**dē-**, adverbial prefix, down from, away from.

**dea, -ae**, f., goddess (deus); dat. and abl. plur., deābus, 8.

**dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus**, owe, ought, 44.

**decem**, adj. indeclin., ten, 23.

**dēcertō, -āre**, to fight, 13.

**decimus, -a, -um**, adj., tenth (decem), § 461.

**dēclivis, -e**, adj., sloping down, down hill, § 461.

**dedecus, -oris**, n., disgrace, § 461.

**dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus** (dē + dō), give up, surrender, 34.

**dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (dē + dūcō), to lead away, withdraw, 33.

**dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus**, to defend, 33.

**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** (dē + ferō), to bring down, report, 55.

**dēfessus, -a, -um**, tired out, wearied, 45.

**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (dē + faciō), to fail, be wanting, 48.

**dēiciō, -ere, -lēcī, -lectus** (dē + iaciō), to throw down, cast, § 461.

**deinde**, adv., then, secondly, next, 32.

**dēligō, -āre**, to bind fast, moor, § 461.

**dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī, —**, to hide, conceal, § 461.

**dēmessus, -a, -um**, perf. part. of the following verb.

**dēmetō, -ere, -messuī, -messus**, to reap, cut down, § 461.

**dēmōnstrō, -āre**, to point out, show, 53.

**dēnique**, adv., finally, 33.

**dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (dē + pōnō), to put off, lay aside, § 461.

**dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultus**, to leap down, jump overboard, § 461.

**dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, —**, to cease, cease from, give up, 40.

**dēspērō, -āre** (dē + spērō), to give up hope, despair, 38.

**dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus** (dē + sum), to fail, 38.

**dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus** (dē + terreō), to frighten off, deter, 33.

**deus, -i**, m., god, 10.

**dexter, -tra, -trum**, adj., right, on the right hand, 26.

**dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictus**, to say, tell, speak, 31.

**dīēs, -ēī**, m., a day, time, 26.

**differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus** (dis + ferō), to spread, scatter; in the pres. system, to differ, 54.

**difficilis, -e**, adj., difficult (facilis; compared, § 471), 23.

**difficultās**, -ātis, f., *difficulty, trouble* (*difficilis*), 41.  
**dignus**, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*; w. abl., *worthy of*, 40.  
**diligentia**, -ae, f., *care, pains, attention*, 11.  
**dīmicō**, -āre, *to fight*, 21.  
**dīmīttō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (dis + mittō), *to send away, let go*, 39.  
**dis**, **dī**, **dis-**, adverbial prefix, *apart, away*.  
**discēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis + cēdō), *to go away, depart*, 42.  
**discessus**, -ūs, m., *departure* (*discēdō*), 55.  
**dispersus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **dispergō**, *to scatter*, § 461.  
**dissimilis**, -e, adj., *unlike* (*similis*; compared § 471), 23.  
**diū**, adv., *long*, 10.  
**diūtius**, adv., comp. of **diū**.  
**dīvidō**, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *to divide, separate*, 50.  
**dō**, **dāre**, **dēdī**, **dātus**, *to give*, 2 ff.  
**dolor**, -ōris, m., *pain, grief*, 37.  
**dominus**, -ī, m., *master, owner*, 4.  
**domus**, -ūs, f., *house, home* (decl. § 465), 42.  
**dōnum**, -ī, n., *gift* (**dō**), 5.  
**dubitō**, -āre, *to doubt, hesitate* (*dubius*), 33.  
**dubius**, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful*, 10.  
**dūcō**, -ere, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *to lead* (**dux**), 32.  
**dum**, conj., *while, so long as, until*, 47.  
**duodecim**, adj. indeclin., *twelve*, § 461.

**duodēvigintī**, adj. indeclin., *eighteen*, § 461.  
**duplicō**, -āre, *to double* (**duo**), § 461.  
**dūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *hard*, 22.  
**dux**, **ducis**, m. or f., *leader*, 15.

## E

**ē**, ex, prep. w. abl., *out of, from*, 18.  
**ē**, ex-, ef-, adverbial prefix, *out of, out, completely*.  
**ēdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (**ē** + **dūcō**), *to lead forth, lead out*, 46.  
**efficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**ex** + **faciō**), *to accomplish*, 33.  
**effugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (**ex** + **fugiō**), *to escape*, § 461.  
**ēius modi**, adj. phrase, *of that sort, such*, 37.  
**egēns**, -ntis, adj., *needy, poor*, 22.  
**egō**, -meī, pers. pron., *I* (declined § 474), 40.  
**ēgredior**, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., *to go out, depart*, 49.  
**Ēlis**, -īdis, f., *Elis*, a district in the western Peloponnesus, 36.  
**enim**, conj., *for* (compare **nam**), 30.  
**eō**, -ire, (**ivī**) **īī**, **itūrus**, *to go* (conjugated § 488), 46.  
**eō**, adv., *to that place* (**is**), 49.  
**eōdem**, adv., *to the same place* (**īdem**), 55.  
**Ēpīrus**, -ī, f., *Epirus*, a district in northwestern Greece, 31.  
**epistula**, -ae, f., *letter, epistle* (compare *littera*), 2.  
**eques**, -itis, m., *horseman, knight* (*equus*), 19.

**equester**, -tris, -tre, adj., *belonging to the cavalry, equestrian (eques)*, 21.

**equitātus**, -ūs, m., *horsemen, cavalry (eques)*, 26.

**equis**, -ī, m., *horse*, 7.

**errō**, -āre, *to wander, stroll*, 4 ff.

**ēruptiō**, -ōnis, f., *sally, sortie*, 47.

**essedā**, -ae, f., or **essedum**, -ī, n., *a war-chariot*, § 461.

**essedārius**, -a, -um, *one who fights from a chariot, a charioteer (essedā)*, § 461.

**et**, conj., *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*, 1.

**etiam**, adv. and conj., *also, even*, 19.

**etsī** (**et + sī**), conj., *even if, although*, 39.

**Eurōpa**, -ae, f., *Europe*, 28.

**ēveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (**ē + veniō**), *to result*, § 461.

**ēventus**, -ūs, m., *outcome, event*, § 461.

**excēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (**ex + cēdō**), *to go out from, depart*, 55.

**excitō**, -āre, *to arouse*, 45.

**exeō**, -īre, -īī, -itūrus (**ex + eō**), *to go out, leave, depart*, 50.

**exercitātiō**, -ōnis, *practice, training*, § 461.

**exercitus**, -ūs, m., *army*, 26.

**exiguitās**, -ātis, f., *scantiness, shortness (exiguus)*, § 461.

**exiguus**, -a, -um, adj., *small, scanty, short*, § 461.

**existimō**, -āre, *to reckon, think*, 42.

**expediō**, -īre, -īvī (īī), -ītus, *to get ready, arrange (compare impediō)*, 35.

**expeditus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **expediō**, *unencumbered, lightly burdened*, 46.

**expellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (**ex + pellō**), *to drive out*, 36.

**experior**, -īrī, -pertus, dep. v., *to try, prove, experience*, 37.

**explōrō**, -āre, *to seek, search out, investigate*, § 461.

**expōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus (**ex + pōnō**), *to set forth, display*, § 461.

**expūgnō**, -āre (**ex + pūgnō**), *to capture by storm (compare oppūgnō)*, 11.

**exspectō**, -āre, *to look out for, wait for, expect*, 13.

**exterior**, -ius, comp. of **exterus**.

**exterus**, -a, -um, adj., *outer, foreign (rare in positive; compared, § 471)*, 24.

**extrā**, prep. w. accu., *outside of*, 47.

**extrēmus**, -a, -um, super. of **exterus**, *last, farthest*, 24.

## F

**Fabius**, -ī, m., *Fabius, a famous Roman general*, 33.

**fābula**, -ae, f., *story*, 1.

**facile**, adv., *easily (facilis)*, 25.

**facilis**, -e, adj., *easy (compared § 471)*, 23.

**faciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *to do, make*; pass., **fīō**, **fieri**, **factus** (§ 488), 33.

**facultās**, -ātis, f., *opportunity*, 45.

**fāma**, -ae, f., *fame, reputation, report*, 3.

**fēliciter**, adv., *happily, luckily, successfully*, 25.

**ferō**, adv., *nearly, about, almost*, 44.  
**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *to bear, carry* (conjugated § 489), 51.  
**fidēlis**, -e, adj., *faithful*, § 461.  
**fidēs**, -ei, f., *faith, pledge* (**fidō**), 29.  
**fidō**, -ere, **fisus**, semi-dep. v., *to trust*, 37.  
**figūra**, -ae, f., *shape*, § 461.  
**filia**, -ae, f., *daughter*; dat. and abl. plur., **filiabus** (**filius**), 2.  
**filius**, -ī, m., *son*; voc. sing., **fili**, 5.  
**fīnis**, -is, m., *end, limit*; plur., *boundaries, territory*, 18.  
**finitimus**, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, bordering on*; m. plur. as subst., *neighbors* (**fīnis**), 11.  
**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus**, pass. of **faciō**, *to be made, happen, result* (conjugated, § 488), 46.  
**firmiter**, adv., *firmly, steadily*, § 461.  
**flectō**, -ere, **flexī**, **flexus**, *to turn, direct, guide*, § 461.  
**fluctus**, -ūs, m., *wave*, § 461.  
**flūmen**, -inis, n., *river*, 19.  
**fore**, fut. inf. of **sum**, = **futūrum esse**, § 461.  
**fortis**, -e, adj., *brave*, 21.  
**fortiter**, adv., *bravely* (**fortis**), 10.  
**fortitūdō**, -inis, f., *bravery* (**fortis**), 28.  
**fortūna**, -ae, f., *fortune*, 42.  
**fossa**, -ae, f., *ditch*; **fossam dūcere**, *to dig a ditch*, 43.  
**frangō**, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **fractus**, *to break*, § 461.

**frāter**, -tris, m., *brother*, 18.  
**frumentor**, -ārī, -ātus, *to get grain, forage* (**frumentum**), § 461.  
**frumentum**, -ī, n., *grain, supplies*, 11.  
**fruor**, **frui**, **fructus**, dep. v., *to enjoy*, 38.  
**frustrā**, adv., *in vain*, 49.  
**fuga**, -ae, f., *flight* (**fugō**, **fugiō**), 19.  
**fugiō**, -ere, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus**, *to flee* (**fuga**, **fugō**), 33.  
**fugō**, -āre, *to put to flight* (**fuga**, **fugiō**), 5.  
**funda**, -ae, f., *sling*, § 461.  
**fūnis**, -is, m., *a rope, cable*, § 461.

## G

**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*, 10.  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic* (**Gallus**), § 461.  
**Gallus**, -a, -um, adj., *of Gaul, Gallic*; as subst., *a Gaul* (**Gallia**), 10.  
**gaudeō**, -ēre, **gavisus**, semi-dep. v., *to rejoice*, 37.  
**gēns**, **gentis**, f., *family, tribe, clan*, 19.  
**genus**, -eris, n., *kind, family, race*, § 461.  
**Germānus**, -a, -um, adj., *German*; as subst., *a German*, 16.  
**gerō**, -ere, **gessi**, **gestus**, *to carry on, perform*, 31.  
**gladius**, -ī, m., *sword*, 5.  
**Graecia**, -ae, f., *Greece*, 3.  
**Graecus**, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*; as a subst., *a Greek*, 28.  
**grātia**, -ae, f., *gratitude, favor, kindness*; **grātiās agere**, *to thank*; **grātiām habēre**, *to feel*

*grateful*; **grātiām referre**, to repay a favor, 5.  
**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, grateful* (**grātia**), 3.  
**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy, severe, serious*, 22.  
**graviter**, adv., *severely, seriously* (**gravis**), 39.  
**grex, gregis**, m., *flock, herd*, 15.

## H

**habeō**, -ere, **habuī**, **habitus**, to have, hold; **grātiām habēre**, to feel grateful; **ōrātiōnem habēre**, to deliver a speech, 2 ff.  
**habitō**, -āre, to live, dwell (**habēō**), 3 ff.  
**Haeduī**, -ōrum, m. plur., the *Haeduwans*, an important people of Gaul, living between the Loire and the Saône, 12.  
**Hannibal**, -alis, m., *Hannibal*, the famous leader of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War, 33.  
**Hasdrubal**, -alis, m., *Hasdrubal*, brother of Hannibal, 40.  
**hasta**, -ae, f., *spear*, 10.  
**herba**, -ae, f., *grass*, 7.  
**hiberna**, -ōrum, n. plur., *winter quarters*, 27.  
**hic**, **haec**, **hōc**, demonstr. pron., *this*; **hic** . . . **ille**, *the latter*, . . . *the former* (declined § 475), 12.  
**hic**, adv., *here, in this place*, 13.  
**hiemō**, -ōre, to spend the winter, *winter* (**hiems**), 20.  
**hiems**, **hiemis**, f., *winter*, 20.  
**Hispānia**, -ae, f., *Spain* (**Hispānus**), 34.

**Hispānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish*; as a subst., a *Spaniard* (**Hispānia**), 39.  
**hodiē**, adv. (**hoc** + **diē**), *to-day*, 29.  
**homō**, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man* (compare **vir**), 17.  
**honor**, -ōris, m., *honor*, 17.  
**hōra**, -ae, f., *hour, season*, 20.  
**Horātius**, -ī, m., *Horace*, a famous Latin poet, 5.  
**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to encourage, urge, exhort, 36.  
**hortus**, -ī, m., *garden*, 4.  
**hostis**, -is, m., *enemy*, 18.  
**hūc**, adv., to this place, *hither* (**hīc**), 53.  
**humilis**, -e, adj., *low* (compared § 471), 23.

## I

**iam**, adv., *already, now*, 13.  
**ibi**, adv., *there, in that place* (**is**), 3.  
**idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, demons. pron., *the same* (decl. § 475; **is**), 40.  
**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., *suitable*, 13.  
**ignis**, -is, m., *fire*, 18.  
**ignōscō**, -ere, **ignōvī**, **ignōtus**, to pardon (see § 411), § 461.  
**ignōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *unknown*, § 461.  
**ille**, **illa**, **illud**, demons. pron., *that*; **ille** . . . **hic**, *the former* . . . *the latter* (decl. § 475), 12.  
**illō**, adv., to that place (**ille**) § 461.  
**impedimentum**, -ī, n., *hindrance*; plur., *baggage* (**impediō**), 25.

- impediō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itus, to hinder, 34.**
- impeditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of impediō, hindered, entangled, embarrassed, § 461.**
- imperātor, -ōris, m., general (imperō), 27.**
- imperitus, -a, -um, adj., unskilled (peritus), 41.**
- imperium, -ī, n., a command (imperō), 27.**
- imperō, -āre, to command, order, 22.**
- impetrō, -āre, to obtain one's request, 18.**
- impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset, 27.**
- imprōvisō, adv., unexpectedly, 44.**
- imprudentia, -ae, f., lack of foresight, thoughtlessness, indiscretion, § 461.**
- imus, -a, -um, superlative of inferus, lowest (see § 471), 24.**
- in, prep. w. accu. and abl., into, in, within, 4 and 14.**
- in-, adverbial prefix w. verbs, in, upon, towards; negative prefix w. adjectives, not.**
- incendō, -ere, -cendi. -census, to set fire to, burn, kindle, 35.**
- incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain (certus), 45.**
- incitō, -āre, to urge on, arouse, incite, 11.**
- incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown (compare cognōscō), § 461.**
- incola, -ae, m., inhabitant (incolō), 9.**
- incolō, -ere, -colui, —, to dwell, inhabit, 49.**
- incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, 36.**
- inde, adv., from that place, thence, then, 54.**
- indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy; w. abl., unworthy of (dignus), 32.**
- ineō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (in + eō), to go into, enter, begin, 49.**
- inferior, -ius, comp. of inferus, lower (§ 471), 24.**
- inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (in + ferō), to carry, bring upon, 51.**
- inferus, -a, -um, adj., low (compared § 471), 24.**
- infimus, -a, -um, superl. of inferus, lowest, 24.**
- infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, infirm, § 461.**
- infrā, prep. w. accu., below, 54.**
- ingēns, -ntis, adj., great, huge, serious, 32.**
- inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly; as subst., private enemy (amīcus), 10.**
- iniquus, -a, -um, adj., unequal, unfair (aequus), 41.**
- iniūria, -ae, f., wrong, injury, outrage, 34.**
- inopia, -ae, f., want, lack, need, dearth, 11.**
- inquit, defect. v., said he, used in direct quotations, 36.**
- insignis, -e, adj., marked, remarkable, notable, 23.**
- insinuo, -āre, to thrust in, make way into, § 461.**
- insistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to stand upon, keep one's footing, § 461.**
- instābilis, -e, adj., unsteady, uncertain, § 461.**

**Institūtum**, -ī, n., *practice, custom, institutions* (institūō), § 461.

**Instituō**, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to begin, establish*, 45.

**Instruō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *arrange, draw up*, 48.

**Insuēfactus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **insuēfaciō**, *trained, accustomed*, § 461.

**Insula**, -ae, f., *island*, § 461.

**integer**, -gra, -grum, adj., *whole, fresh*, 51.

**intellegō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to understand*, 42.

**inter**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *between, among*, 12.

**interclūdō**, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to cut off*, 47.

**interea**, adv., *meanwhile* (inter), 12.

**interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + faciō), *to kill*, 35.

**interim**, adv., *in the meantime* (inter), 43.

**interior**, -ius, comp. adj., *inner* (compared § 471; inter), 24.

**intermittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (inter + mittō), *to stop, interrupt, let pass*, 44.

**interpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus (inter + pōnō), *to put between, interpose*, § 461.

**intimus**, -a, -um, superl. of **interior**, *innermost* (compared § 471), 24.

**intrō**, -āre, *to enter*, 12.

**inūstātus**, -a, -um, adj., *unaccustomed*, § 461.

**inūtilis**, -e, adj., *useless*, § 461.

**invitus**, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*, 36.

**ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, intens. demons. pron., *self, very* (declined § 475), 40.

**is**, **ea**, **id**, demons. pron., *that; he, she, it* (declined § 475), 14.

**iste**, **ista**, **istud**, demons. pron., *that, that of yours* (declined § 475), 40.

**Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*, 3.

**ita**, adv., *thus, in that way* (is), 21.

**itaque**, adv., *therefore* (ita), 4.

**item**, adv., *likewise, also* (is), 54.

**iter**, **itineris**, n., *journey, march*, 17.

**iterum**, adv., *again, a second time*, 31.

**iubeō**, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, *to command, order*, 40.

**iūdex**, -icis, m., *judge* (iūs), 15.

**iūdicō**, -āre, *to judge* (iūdex, iūs), 40.

**iugum**, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge*, 50.

**Iūlia**, -ae, f., *Julia*, 1.

**iūs**, **iūris**, n., *right, justice, law*, 56.

**iuvenis**, -is, m., *a youth* (iuventus), 28.

**iuventus**, -ūtis, f., *youth; collectively, young men, the youth*, 21.

**iuvō**, -āre, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, *to help, aid*, 13.

## L

**labor**, -ōris, m., *work, labor*, 17.

**labōrō**, -āre, *to work, toil* (labor), 4.

**Lacedaemōn**, -onis, f., *Lacedaemon, Sparta*, 36.

**Lacedaemonius**, -a, -um, adj., *Lacedaemonian, Spartan*, 32.



**laccessō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, to**  
*provoke, challenge, harass*, 49.  
**laetō, adv., gladly**, 25.  
**lātō, adv., broadly, widely** (lātus), 55.  
**lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad,**  
*wide*, 1.  
**latus, -eris, n., side, flank**, 46.  
**laudō, -āre, to praise** (laus), 3 ff.  
**laus, laudis, f., praise, glory**,  
 16.  
**lĕgātīō, -ōnis, f., embassy, lega-**  
*tion* (lĕgātus), 31.  
**lĕgātus, -ī, m., envoy, ambassa-**  
*dor, lieutenant* (lĕgātīō), 14.  
**legiō, -ōnis, f., legion**, 19.  
**legō, -ere, lĕgī, lectus, to read**,  
 48.  
**lenis, -e, adj., gentle, mild**, § 461.  
**levis, -e, adj., light, slight**, 24.  
**leviter, adv., lightly**, 25.  
**līber, -era, -erum, adj., free**, 7.  
**liber, librī, m., a book**, 6.  
**līberālīter, adv., generously,**  
*kindly* (līber), § 461.  
**līberī, -ōrum, m. plur., freeborn**  
*children* (līber), 6.  
**līberō, -āre, to free** (līber), 7.  
**lībertās, -ātis, f., liberty, free-**  
*dom* (līber), 36.  
**licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum**  
*est, impers. v., it is permitted,*  
*one may*, 33.  
**lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language**,  
 54.  
**littera, -ae, f., letter, of the al-**  
*phabet*; plur., *a letter, an*  
*epistle*, 48.  
**lītus, -oris, n., shore**, § 461.  
**locus, -ī, m., place, spot**; plur.  
*loca, n., places, situation*; locī,  
*m., topics*, 13.

**longē, adv., far off, at a distance,**  
*by far* (longus), 13.  
**longinquus, -a, -um, adj., long,**  
*far, remote* (longus), 54.  
**longus, -a, -um, adj., long, dis-**  
*tant*, 1 ff.  
**loquor, -ī, locūtus, dep. v., to**  
*speak, talk*, 38.  
**lūna, -ae, f., the moon**, § 461.  
**lupa, -ae, f., she-wolf**, 9.  
**lupus, -ī, m., wolf**, 5.  
**lūx, lūcis, f., light**, 15.

## M

**magis, adv. comp., more**; superl.  
**māximē, most** (compared § 472;  
**māgnus**), 25.  
**magister, -trī, m., master, teach-**  
*er*, 6.  
**magistrātus, -ūs, m., magis-**  
*tracy, office, a magistrate* (ma-  
 gister), 35.  
**māgnitūdō, -inis, f., size, great-**  
*ness* (māgnus), 40.  
**māgnoperē, adv., greatly**, 16.  
**māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great,**  
*large, loud* (compared § 471),  
 1 ff.  
**māior, -ius, adj., comp. of**  
**māgnus, larger, elder**; māiō-  
 rēs, *elders, ancestors*, 29.  
**male, adv., badly, ill, unsucces-**  
*sfully* (malus), 25.  
**mālō, mālīe, mālūī (magis +**  
**volō), to prefer**, 44.  
**malus, -a, -um, adj., bad, ill**, 2 ff.  
**mandāta, -ōrum, n. plur., orders,**  
*commands* (mandō), § 461.  
**mandō, -āre, entrust, commit,**  
*command*, § 461.  
**māne, adv., in the morning.**  
*early*, 39.

**maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus**,  
to remain, 27.  
**manus, -ūs, f.**, band, company,  
troop, 26.  
**Marcus, -ī, m.**, *Marcus*, 4.  
**mare, maris, n.**, sea, 18.  
**maritimus, -a, -um, adj.**, belong-  
ing to the sea, maritime (mare),  
50.  
**māter, -tris, f.**, mother, 22.  
**māteria, -ae, f.**, stuff, timber,  
§ 461.  
**mātūrus, -a, -um, adj.**, early,  
ripe, § 461.  
**māximē, superl. adv.**, most, 25.  
**medius, -a, -um, adj.**, middle, in  
the middle of, 37.  
**membrum, -ī, n.**, limb, of the  
body, § 461.  
**memoria, -ae, f.**, memory, 29.  
**mercātor, -ōris, m.**, trader, mer-  
chant, 45.  
**metō, -ere, messuī, messus, to**  
reap, cut, § 461.  
**meus, -a, -um, poss. pron.**, mine,  
3.  
**mīles, -itis, m.**, soldier, private,  
15.  
**militāris, -e, adj.**, relating to a  
soldier; military; **rēs militā-**  
**ris, the science of war (mīles),**  
44.  
**mille, adj. indeclin.**, a thousand;  
plur. **mīlia, -ium**; the plural  
is used as a substantive, while  
the singular is an adjective,  
30.  
**Miltiadēs, -is, m.**, *Miltiades*, the  
Greek commander at Marathon,  
480 B. C., 28.  
**minimē, adv.**, superl. of minus,  
least (compared § 472), 25.

**minor, minus, adj., comp. of**  
**parvus, less, smaller** (compared  
§ 471), 24.  
**minus, comp. adv.**, less, 25.  
**miser, -era, -erum, adj.**, wretched,  
unfortunate, 7.  
**mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, to**  
send, throw (weapons), 31.  
**mōbilitās, -ātis, f.**, quickness,  
speed, § 461.  
**moderor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to**  
control, manage, § 461.  
**modo, adv.**, only, but, even; **nōn**  
**modo, not only**, 40.  
**modus, -ī, m.**, manner, measure,  
31.  
**moenia, -lum, n. plur.**, walls of  
a city, fortifications, 18.  
**mōns, montis, m.**, mountain, hill;  
**summus mōns, top of the hill**, 19.  
**mora, -ae, f.**, delay, 14.  
**Morinī, -ōrum, m. plur.**, the  
*Morini*, a people living in Bel-  
gic Gaul, § 461.  
**morior, morī, mortuus, dep. v.**  
to die (mors), 39.  
**moror, -ārī, morātūs, to delay**  
(mora), 38.  
**mors, mortis, f.**, death (morior),  
19.  
**mōs, mōris, m.**, habit, customs,  
35.  
**mōtus, -ūs, m.**, movement, dis-  
turbance, uprising (moveō),  
§ 461.  
**moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, to**  
move; **castra movēre, to break**  
**camp; signa movēre, to ad-**  
**vance**, 29.  
**muller, -eris, f.**, woman, 22.  
**multitūdō, -inis, f.**, crowd, mul-  
titude, 30.

**multō**, adv., (*by*) *much*, *by far* (*multus*), 23.

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much*; plur., *many* (compared § 471), 2 ff.

**mūniō**, -ire, -ivī (II), -itus, *to fortify*, 36.

**mūnitīō**, -ōnis, f., *fortification, defenses* (*mūniō*), 48.

**mūrus**, -ī, m., *wall*, 9.

**Mūsa**, -ae, f., *a muse*, 5.

## N

**nam**, conj., *for* (*compare enim*), 14.

**namque**, conj., *for*, § 461.

**nancīscor**, -ī, *nactus*, dep. v., *to find*, 39.

**narrō**, -āre, *to tell, narrate*, 2 ff.

**nāscor**, -ī, *nātus*, dep. v., *to be born*, 48.

**nātiō**, -ōnis, f., *race, nation* (*nāscor*), 27.

**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature* (*nāscor*), 13.

**nauta**, -ae, m., *sailor* (*nāvigō*), 3.

**nāvigātīō**, -ōnis, f., *sailing, voyage, navigation* (*nāvigō*), § 461.

**nāvigium**, -ī, n., *a boat*, § 461.

**nāvigō**, -āre, *to sail* (*nāvis*), 4 ff.

**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship*; *nāvis longa*, *man-of-war*, 19.

**-ne**, interrogative enclitic, 1.

**nē**, adv. and conj., *not, that not, in order that not, lest*; *nē . . . quidem, not even*, 29, 40.

**nec**, see *neque*.

**necessāriō**, adv., *necessarily, of necessity* (*necessārius*), § 461.

**necessārius**, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, needful* (*necesse*), 28.

**necesse**, adj. indeclin., *necessary*; *necesse est, one must*, 39.

**necō**, -āre, *to kill*, 26.

**nēmō**, *neminis*, m., *no one, no body*, 23.

**nēquāquam**, adv., *not at all, by no means*, § 461.

**neque**, conj., *and not*; *neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*, 17.

**Nerviī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Nerviī*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul, 12.

**neuter, neutra, neutrum** (*nē + uter*), *neither* (declined § 469), 52.

**niger, nigra, nigrum**, adj., *black*, 7.

**nihil**, n. indeclin., *nothing*, 23.

**nisi**, conj. (*nē + sī*), *if not, unless*, 39.

**noceō**, -ēre, *nocuī, nocitūrus, to harm, injure*; *nocēns, hurtful, guilty*, 46.

**noctū**, adv., *by night* (*nox*), 46.

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, adj., *by night, in the night* (*nox*), 48.

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** (*ne + volō*), *to be unwilling, not to wish* (conjugated § 487), 44.

**nōmen, -inis**, n., *name*, 17.

**nōn**, adv., *not*; *nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also*, 2, 40.

**nōndum**, adv. (*nōn + dum*), *not yet*, 46.

**nōnnūllus, -a, -um**, adj. (*nōn + nūllus*), *some*, 36.

**nōnus, -a, -um**, adj., *ninth* (*novem*), § 461.

**noster, nostra, nostrum**, poss. pron., *our* (*nōs*), 14.

**nōtus, -a, -um**, adj., *known, familiar*, § 461.

**novitās, -ātis, f.,** *newness, novelty, strangeness* (novus), § 461.  
**novus, -a, -um, adj.,** *new*, 2 ff.  
**nox, noctis, f.,** *night*, 20.  
**nūbēs, -is, f.,** *cloud*, 18.  
**nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (nē + ūl-  
 lus),** *none* (declined § 469), 42.  
**Nūma, -ae, f.,** *Numa*, the second king of Rome, 30.  
**numerus, -ī, m.,** *number*, 12.  
**numquam, adv.,** *never*, 37.  
**nunc, adv.,** *now* (compare iam), 12.  
**nūntiō, -āre, to** announce, report (nūntius), 12.  
**nūntius, -ī, m.,** a messenger, 27.  
**nūtus, -ūs, m.,** *nod, sign*, § 461.

## O

**ob, prep. w. accu.,** *on account of*, 36; *adverbial prefix, towards, against*.  
**oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, dep. v.,** *to forget*, used with an objective genitive, 38.  
**obses, -idis, m. and f.,** *hostage*, 16.  
**obtemperō, -āre, to** obey, § 461.  
**obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v.,** *to implore*, § 461.  
**obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (ob + teneō),** *to hold, keep, possess*, 55.  
**occāsus, -ūs, m.,** *falling, setting, the west*, § 461.  
**occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, to** cut down, kill, 35.  
**occultō, -āre, to** hide, 17.  
**occupō, -āre, to** seize, 16.  
**occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, to** go to meet, resist, 43.  
**ōceanus, -ī, m.,** *the ocean*, 4.

**octōdecim, indeclin. num.,** *eighteen*, § 461.  
**odium, -ī, n.,** *hatred*, 11.  
**offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus (ob + ferō),** *to bring to, offer*, 55.  
**officium, -ī, n.,** *duty, office*, 56.  
**ōlim, adv.,** *once, formerly*, 10.  
**omnīnō, adv.,** *altogether, at all*, 44.  
**omnis, -e, adj.,** *every, all*, 21.  
**onerārius, -a, -um, adj.,** *of burden*; *nāvēs onerāriae, transports* (onus), § 461.  
**onus, oneris, n.,** *load, burden, weight*, § 461.  
**opera, -ae, f.,** *work, attention*; *operam dare, to take pains*, 34.  
**opiniō, -ōnis, f.,** *belief, expectation, reputation*, 53.  
**opertet, -ēre, oportuit, impers. v.,** *it is proper, one ought*, 50.  
**oppidānus, -a, -um, adj.,** *belonging to a town*; as subst., *a townsman, inhabitant* (oppidum), 9.  
**oppidum, -ī, n.,** *town*, 6.  
**opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.,** *opportune, advantageous*, § 461.  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus (ob + premō),** *to overwhelm*, 46.  
**oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f.,** *siege, attack* (oppūgnō), 42.  
**oppūgnō, -āre (ob + pūgnō),** *to besiege, attack*, 10.  
**opus, operis, n.,** *work*, 45.  
**ōra, -ae, f.,** *shore, coast*, § 461.  
**ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.,** *speech* (ōrō), 43.  
**ōrātor, -ōris, m.,** *speaker, pleader, envoy* (ōrō), § 461.  
**ōrdō, -inis, m.,** *order, rank*, 23.  
**ōrō, -āre, to** speak, beg, 30.

**ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus,**  
to show, 42.

## P

**pācō, -āre, to pacify, subdue**  
(pāx), 12.

**paene, adv., almost** (compare fere), 38.

**palam, adv., openly, publicly**  
(compare clam), 53.

**pār, parīs, adj., like, equal,** 51.

**parātus, -a, -um, perf. partic. of**  
**parō, ready, prepared,** 13.

**parō, -āre, to make ready, pre-**  
**pare,** 12.

**pars, partis, f., part, share,** 21.

**parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little**  
(compared § 471), 1 ff.

**passus, -ūs, m., step, pace;** as a  
measure of length about five  
feet; **mille passūs, 5,000 (Ro-**  
**man) feet, a (Roman) mile,** 30.

**pater, patris, m., father,** 22.

**patior, -ī, passus, dep. v., suffer,**  
**bear, allow,** 44.

**patria, -ae, f., native land** (com-  
pare pater), 2.

**paucī, -ae, -a, adj. plur., few,**  
28.

**paucitās, -ātis, f., small number**  
(paucī), § 461.

**paulatim, adv., little by little,**  
**gradually,** 51.

**paulō, adv., by a little, slightly,**  
23.

**paulum, adv., a little, a short**  
**distance,** 41.

**pāx, pācis, f., peace** (pācō), 15.

**pecūnia, -ae, f., money** (pecus),  
38.

**pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd, a**  
**flock,** 17.

**pedes, -itis, m., a foot-soldier;**  
**plur., infantry** (pēs), 36.

**pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., belong-**  
**ing to the infantry, foot** (pedes),  
39.

**peditātus, -ūs, m., infantry, foot**  
**(pedes),** 43.

**pēlor, pēlus, adj., comp. of ma-**  
**lus, worse** (§ 471), 24.

**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, to**  
**drive,** 34.

**per, adverbial prefix and prep. w.**  
**accu., through, over, across, by**  
**means of,** 16.

**percurrō, -ere, -cucurrī or -cur-**  
**rī, -cursūrus, to run through,**  
**run along,** § 461.

**perequītō, -āre, to ride over, ride**  
**through,** § 461.

**perfacilis, -e** (per + facilis);  
**adj., very easy,** 56.

**perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** (per  
+ ferō), **to bear through, en-**  
**duce,** § 461.

**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (per  
+ faciō), **to accomplish, finish,**  
48.

**periculōsus, -a, -um, adj., full of**  
**danger, dangerous** (periculum),  
37.

**periculum, -ī, n., danger,** 5.

**perītus, -a, -um, adj., skilled,**  
32.

**permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mān-**  
**sūrus** (per + maneō), **to re-**  
**main, stay,** § 461.

**permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus**  
(per + mittō), **to let go, allow,**  
**permit,** 46.

**permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**  
(per + moveō), **to move deeply,**  
**excite, arouse,** 50.

- perpetuus**, -a, -um, adj., *constant, uninterrupted, perpetual*, 54.  
**Persa**, -ae, m., *a Persian*, 35.  
**Persicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Persian* (Persa), 28.  
**perspicio**, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *to see through, examine, learn*, § 461.  
**persuadeo**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, *to persuade*, 31.  
**perterreo**, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, *to frighten thoroughly, terrify*, 38.  
**pertineo**, -ēre, -tinuī, —, *to pertain to, to reach*, 50.  
**perturbatio**, -ōnis, f., *confusion, disorder, alarm* (perturbō), § 461.  
**perturbō**, -āre, *to throw into confusion, alarm*, § 461.  
**pervenio**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventūrus (per + veniō), *to come through, arrive*, 35.  
**pēs**, pedis, m., *foot*; **pedem referre**, *to retreat*, 22.  
**pessimus**, -a, -um, superl. of **malus**, *worst* (compared § 471), 24.  
**petō**, -ere, **petivī** (-ī), **petitus**, *to seek, ask*, 31.  
**Pharnabāzus**, -ī, m., *Pharnabāzus, a Persian satrap*, 35.  
**pīlum**, -ī, n., *javelin, a heavy spear*, 42.  
**plānus**, -a, -um, adj., *flat, level*, § 461.  
**plēnus**, -a, -um, adj., *full*, § 461.  
**plērique**, **plēraeque**, **plēraque**, adj. plur., *many, very many, the most*, 35.  
**plērumque**, adv., *for the most part, generally*, 54.  
**plūrimus**, -a, -um, superl. of **multus**, *most, very many* (compared § 471), 24.  
**plūs**, **plūris**, compar. of **multus**, *more* (compared § 471; declined § 470), 24.  
**poena**, -ae, f., *punishment*, 36.  
**poēta**, -ae, m., *poet*, 3.  
**polliceor**, -ēri, **pollicitus**, dep. v., *to promise*, 43.  
**pōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positus**, *to place, put, put aside*, 39.  
**pōns**, **pontis**, m., *bridge*, 19.  
**populus**, -ī, m., *people*, 5.  
**porta**, -ae, f., *gate*, 30.  
**portō**, -āre, *to carry*, 11.  
**portus**, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*, 30.  
**poscō**, -ere, **poposci**, —, *to demand, ask*, 47.  
**possum**, **posse**, **potuī** (potis + sum), *to be able, can* (conjugated § 486), 43.  
**post**, prep. w. accu., *after, behind*, 18.  
**postea**, adv., *afterwards* (post), 25.  
**posterior**, -ius, comp. of **posterus**, *later* (compared, § 471), 24.  
**posterus**, -a, -um, adj., *the following, next*; plur., **posterī**, *descendants*, 25.  
**postquam** (post + quam), conj., *after*, 30.  
**postrēmus**, -a, -um, superl. of **posterus**, *last, latest*, 24.  
**postrīdiē** (posterus + diēs), adv., *the next day*, 49.  
**postulō**, -āre, *to demand, ask*, 14.  
**potestās**, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity*, 35.  
**potior**, -īri, **potitus**, dep. v., *to get possession of*, 37.

**potius**, adv., *rather*, 56.  
**praecēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prae + cēdō), *to go before, excel, surpass*, 54.  
**praeceps**, **praecipitis**, adj., *headlong, in haste, steep*, § 461.  
**praeda**, -ae, f., *booty*, 13.  
**praedīcō**, -āre, *to make known, announce*, § 461.  
**praeficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae + faciō), *to set over, put in command of*, 35.  
**praemittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus (prae + mittō), *to send forward*, 35.  
**praemium**, -ī, n., *reward*, 6.  
**praesertim**, adv., *especially*, 55.  
**praesidium**, -ī, n., *guard, protection, assistance*, 9.  
**praestō**, -stāre, -stitī, —, *to excel, exhibit, perform*, 56.  
**praesum**, -esse, -fuī (prae + sum), *to be over, in command of*, 43.  
**praeter**, prep. w. acc., *besides, except, beyond*, 53.  
**praetereā**, adv., *besides, more-over* (praeter), 56.  
**premō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *to press, attack, oppress*, 36.  
**pridī**, adv., *on the day before*, 49.  
**primō**, adv., *at first* (prīmus), 54.  
**prīmum**, adv., *first* (prīmus), 31.  
**prīmus**, -a, -um, superl. of prior, *first* (compared § 471), 20.  
**prīnceps**, **prīncipis**, m., *leader, chief*, 15.  
**prior**, **prīus**, comparative, *positive wanting, former* (compared § 471), 24.  
**prīstinus**, -a, -um, adj., *old, former*, § 461.

**prīusquam** (prīus + quam), conj., *before*, 47.  
**prīvō**, -āre, *to deprive*, 24.  
**prō**, prep. w. abl., *for, for the sake of, in the place of*, 16.  
**prō**, adverbial prefix, *forward, before*.  
**probō**, -āre, *to approve*, 37.  
**prōcēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prō + cēdō), *to go forward, advance*, 46.  
**procul**, adv., *far, far off*, 41.  
**prōdō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus (prō + dō), *to betray*, § 461.  
**prōducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (prō + dūcō), *to lead forward, advance*, 48.  
**proellor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to fight* (proellum), § 461.  
**proellum**, -ī, n., *battle*, 10.  
**profectiō**, -ōnis, f., *departure, setting out* (proficīscor), 43.  
**proficīscor**, -ī, **profectus**, dep. v., *to set out, depart*, 37.  
**progredior**, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., *to go forward, advance*, 41.  
**prohibeō**, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (prō + habeō), *to prevent, hinder*, 29.  
**prōiciō**, -ere, -lēcī, -lectus (prō + iaciō), *to throw forward*, § 461.  
**prope**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *near*, 44.  
**prōpellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (prō + pellō), *to drive away, dislodge*, § 461.  
**properō**, -āre, *to hurry, hasten*, 13.  
**propinquus**, -a, -um, *near, neighboring*; **propinquī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *relatives* (prope), 48.

**propior**, -ius, comparative, positive wanting, *nearer* (compared § 471; **prope**), 24.

**prōpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus (prō + pōnō), *to set forth, tell, offer*, 43.

**propter**, prep. w. accu., *on account of*, 39.

**prōsequor**, -ī, -secūtus (prō + sequor), dep. v., *to pursue, follow*, § 461.

**prōsum**, -esse, -fuī (prō + sum), *to be useful, be of advantage to, to profit* (conjugated § 486), 43.

**prōvehō**, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *to carry forward*, § 461.

**prōvideō**, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus (prō + videō), *to provide*, 47.

**prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province*, 25.

**proximus**, -a, -um, superl. of **propior**, *nearest, next* (compared § 471), 10.

**puella**, -ae, f., *girl* (**puer**), 1.

**puer**, **puerī**, m., *boy*, 6.

**pūgna**, -ae, f., *battle*, 31.

**pūgnō**, -āre, *to fight* (**pūgna**), 9.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, pretty*, 2 ff.

**pulvis**, -eris, m., *dust*, § 461.

**putō**, -āre, *to think*, 41.

**Pyrrhus**, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus, 31.

## Q

**quā**, rel. adv., *where*, 53.

**quaerō**, -ere, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, *to ask, seek*, 42.

**quālis**, -e, interrog. and rel. adj., *of what sort?* *as*, 55.

**quam**, conj., *than*; with superlatives, *as possible*, 22.

**quamquam**, conj., *although*, 45.

**quantus**, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great?* *as great, as*, 44.

**quārē**, interrog. and rel. phrase (**quā** + **rē**), *why?* *wherefore*, 52.

**quartus**, -a, -um, *fourth* (**quatuor**), 21.

-que, enclitic conj., *and*, 18.

**queror**, -ī, **questus**, dep. v., *to complain*, 50.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (declined § 476), 13.

**quia**, conj., *because*, 49.

**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever* (declined § 476), 52.

**quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, one, a* (declined § 478), 37.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed, in fact; nō . . . quidem, not even*, 45.

**quīes**, -ētis, f., *rest, sleep*, 19.

**quīn**, conj., *but that, from, without* (used chiefly after negative expressions of doubting and hindering, §§ 270, 271), 33.

**Quīntus**, -ī, m., *Quintus*.

**quis** (**quī**), (**quae**), **quid** (**quod**), interrog. pron., *who?* (for use of forms see § 136 a, b), 14.

**quisquam**, —, **quidquam** (**quodquam**), indef. pron., *any one, anything* (used chiefly in sentences in which a negative is expressed or implied; declined § 478), 41.

**quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), indef. pron., *each, every* (declined § 478), 44.



**quisquis**, —, **quidquid**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever* (declined § 476), 52.

**quō**, interrog. and rel. adv., *whither? to what place? into which place, where*, 43.

**quō**, conj., *in order that* (used to introduce a purpose clause which contains a comparative, § 280 b), 35.

**quoniam**, conj., *since, because*, 49.

**quoque**, conj., *also, too*; following the word to which it belongs, 5.

**quot**, indeclin. interrog. adj., *how many? relative, as many as*, 36.

## R

**ratio**, -ōnis, f., *reason, plan, method*, 33.

**re**, **red**-, adverbial prefix, *back, again*.

**rebelliō**, -ōnis, f. (re + bellum), *renewal of war, revolt*, § 461.

**receptus**, -ūs, m., *a retreat, refuge*, § 461.

**recipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (re + capiō), *to take back, recover; sē recipere, to betake one's self*, 35.

**reddō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus (re + dō), *to return, give back*, 32.

**redeō**, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (re + eō), *to go back, retire, return*, 52.

**reditus**, -ūs, m., *return (redeō)*, § 461.

**redūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (re + dūcō), *to bring back, lead back*, 35.

**referō**, -ferre, rettulī, relātus (re + ferō), *to carry back, re-*

*port; pedem referre, to retire, retreat*, 51.

**reficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (re + faciō), *to make over, repair, rebuild*, § 461.

**rēgīna**, -ae, f., *queen (rēx)*, 2.

**regiō**, -ōnis, f., *region, direction*, 27.

**rēgius**, -a, -um, adj., *royal (rēx)*, 39.

**rēgnum**, -ī, n., *kingdom (rēgnō)*, 55.

**Rēgulus**, -ī, m., *Regulus, a famous Roman*, 32.

**relinquō**, -ere, reliquī, relictus, *to leave, abandon*, 34.

**reliquus**, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, left*, 14.

**remaneō**, -ēre, -mansī, -mānsūrus (re + maneō), *to stay behind, remain*, § 461.

**Rēmī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi, a people of Belgic Gaul*, 13.

**remigrō**, -āre, *to return, move back*, § 461.

**remittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (re + mittō), *to send back*, § 461.

**removeō**, -ēre, -movī, -mōtus, *to move back, remove*, § 461.

**rēmus**, -ī, m., *oar*, § 461.

**renūntiō**, -āre (re + nūntiō), *to take back word, report*, 31.

**reperiō**, -īre, repperī, reperlus, *to find out, learn*, 49.

**reportō**, -āre (re + portō), *to carry back*, § 461.

**rēs**, rei, f., *matter, affair, business, thing; rēs militāris, the art of war, military science; rēs pūblica, the state*, 26.

**respondeō**, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *to answer, reply*, 39.

**revertor, reverti, reversus**, dep. v., *to return*; in the perfect system the active forms **reverti, reverteram**, etc., are used, 42.  
**revocō, -āre** (re + vocō), *to call back, recall*, 35.  
**rēx, rēgis**, m., *king* (rēgnō), 15.  
**Rhēnus, -i**, m., *the Rhine*, 27.  
**rīpa, -ae, f.**, *bank*, 19.  
**rogō, -āre**, *to ask, request*, 18.  
**Rōma, -ae, f.**, *Rome*, 6.  
**Rōmānus, -a, -um**, adj., *Roman* (Rōma), 5.  
**rosa, -ae, f.**, *a rose*, 1.  
**rota, -ae, f.**, *wheel*, § 461.  
**rūrsus**, adv., *back, again*, 32.

## S

**sacer, sacra, sacrum**, adj., *sacred, holy*, 7.  
**sacerdōs, -ōtis**, m., *priest* (sacer), 16.  
**saepe**, adv., *often*, 28.  
**sagitta, -ae, f.**, *arrow*, § 461.  
**Saguntum, -i**, n., *Saguntum*, a city in Spain, 33.  
**salūs, -ūtis, f.**, *safety*, 42.  
**sapienter**, adv., *wisely*, 25.  
**satis**, adv., *enough*, 35.  
**scapha, -ae, f.**, *skiff, boat*, § 461.  
**sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itus**, *to know*, a fact (compare cōgnōscō), 34.  
**Scīpiō, -ōnis**, m., *Scipio*, the name of a famous Roman family, 39.  
**scūtum, -i**, n., *shield*, 5.  
**secundus, -a, -um**, adj., *following, favorable* (sequor), 24.  
**sed**, conj., *but*, 2.  
**semper**, adv., *always*, 6.  
**senātus, -ūs**, m., *senate* (senex), 32.

**senex, senis**, m., *old man* (declined p. 91, n. 1), 26.  
**sententia, -ae, f.**, *opinion, view, purpose* (sentīō), 32.  
**sentīō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, *to feel, perceive, think*, 35.  
**septem**, indeclin. adj., *seven*, 20.  
**septentrionēs, -um**, n. plur., *the seven plow-oxen* (the stars in the constellation of the Great Bear), *the north*, § 461.  
**septimus, -a, -um**, adj., *seventh* (septem), 20.  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus**, dep. v., *to follow*, 37.  
**servitūs, -ūtis, f.**, *slavery, servitude* (servus), 55.  
**servō, -āre**, *to save, preserve*, 5.  
**servus, -i**, m., *slave*, 4.  
**sī, conj.**, *if*, 29.  
**sic, adv.**, *so*, 38.  
**Sicilia, -ae, f.**, *Sicily*, 35.  
**signum, -i**, n., *sign, standard*; **signa** inferre, *to advance, charge*, 29.  
**silentium, -i**, n., *silence*, 40.  
**silva, -ae, f.**, *wood, forest*, 2.  
**similis, -e**, adj., *like, similar to* (compared § 471), 23.  
**simul**, adv., *at the same time*; **simul ac** (atque), *at the same time as, as soon as*, 34.  
**sine**, prep. w. abl., *without*, 10.  
**singulāris, -e**, adj., *single*, § 461.  
**singulī, -ae, -a**, adj., *one by one, singly*, 53.  
**sinister, -tra, -trum**, adj., *left, on the left hand*, 28.  
**socius, -i**, m., *ally*, 14.  
**sōl, sōlis**, m., *sun*, 41.  
**soleō, -ēre, solitus**, semi-dep. v., *to be accustomed, be wont*, 37.

- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., *alone, only* (declined § 469), 52.
- solvō**, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *to unbind, loose, weigh anchor*, § 461.
- spatium**, -ī, n., *space*, § 461.
- speciēs**, -ēī, f., *sight, appearance*, § 461.
- speculātōrius**, -a, -um, adj., *scouting*, § 461.
- spērō**, -āre, *to hope* (spēs), 41.
- spēs**, speī, f., *hope*, 20.
- spoliō**, -āre, *to strip, despoil*, 24.
- stabilitās**, -ātis, f., *firmness, steadiness*, § 461.
- statim**, adv., *at once, immediately*, 30.
- statiō**, -ōnis, f., *post, guard, duty*, § 461.
- strepitus**, -ūs, m., *noise, din, uproar*, § 461.
- studeō**, -ēre, studuī, —, *to be eager for, desire* (studium), 55.
- studium**, -ī, n., *eagerness, devotion, zeal*, 21.
- sub**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu. and abl., *under, to the foot of, at the foot of*, 34.
- subducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (sub + dūcō), *to lead up, draw up*, § 461.
- subiciō**, -ere, -lēcī, -lectus (sub + iaciō), *to throw under, place under*, § 461.
- subitō**, adv., *suddenly* (subitus), 25.
- subitus** -a -um, adj., *sudden, unexpectedly*, 54.
- subministrō**, -āre, *to supply, furnish*, § 461.
- submitto**, -ere, -misi, -missus (sub + mittō), *to send up, send to one's assistance*, § 461.
- submoveō**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus (sub + moveō), *to drive off, dislodge*, § 461.
- subsequor**, -ī, -secutus (sub + sequor), dep. v., *to follow closely*, § 461.
- subsidium**, -ī, n., *reserve, support, resource*, 44.
- succēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessurus (sub + cēdō), *to come up, approach, take the place of*, 51.
- Suēbī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebians, a powerful German people*, 41.
- suī**, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē, reflexive pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it* (declined § 474), 40.
- summus**, -a, -um, superl. of **superus**, *highest, the top of* (compared § 471), 24.
- Superbus**, -ī, m., *the Proud*, the name given King Tarquin, 27.
- superior**, -ius, compar. of **superus**, *upper, higher* (compared § 471), 24.
- superō**, -āre, *to surpass, excel, conquer*, 11.
- supplicium**, -ī, n., *punishment*, 36.
- suprā**, adv. and prep. w. accu., *above, beyond*, 41.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, f., *suspicion*, 53.
- suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to suspect*, § 461.
- sustineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (sub + teneō), *support, hold out against, withstand*, 27.
- sustulī**, perf. indic. of **tollō**.

**suus, -a, -um**, poss. pron., *his own, her own, its own* (suī), 28.

**Syria, -ae, f.**, *Syria*, 34.

## T

**tālis, -e, adj.**, *such, of such a kind*, 41.

**tam, adv.**, *so*, 38.

**tamen, adv.**, *nevertheless, yet, still*, 29.

**tandem, adv.**, *at last*, 43.

**tantus, -a, -um, adj.**, *so great*, 30.

**tardē, adv.**, *slowly, late*; **paulō tardius, rather slowly**, § 461.

**Tarentinus, -a, -um, adj.**, *Tarentine*, relating to Tarentum, a city of southern Italy, 31.

**Tarquinius, -ī, m.**, *Tarquin*, the last king of Rome, 27.

**tēlum, -ī, n.**, *weapon, spear*, 29.

**temerē, adv.**, *recklessly, rashly*, § 461.

**tēmō, -ōnis, m.**, *pole* (of a chariot or wagon), § 461.

**tempestās, -ātis, f.**, *weather, storm* (tempus), § 461.

**templum, -ī, n.**, *temple*, 10.

**tempus, -oris, n.**, *time*, 21.

**teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, to hold**, 27.

**tener, -era, -erum, adj.**, *tender, young*, 7.

**tergum, -ī, n.**, *back*, 33.

**terra, -ae, f.**, *earth, land*, 4.

**terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, to frighten**, 30.

**terror, -ōris, m.**, *fright, alarm*, § 461.

**tertius, -a, -um, adj.**, *third* (trēs), 20.

**Tiberis, -is, m.**, *the Tiber*, 27.

**timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, to be afraid, fear**, 28.

**timidus, -a, -um, adj.**, *timid, frightened* (timeō), 22.

**timor, -ōris, m.**, *fear* (timeō), 17.

**tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, to lift up, raise, destroy**, 41.

**tormentum, -ī, n.**, *engine* (for throwing missiles), § 461.

**tot, indeclin. adj.**, *so many*, 32.

**tōtus, -a, -um, adj.**, *whole, entire* (declined § 469), 20.

**trā, = trāns-**.

**trādō, -ere, didī, -ditus** (trāns + dō), *to hand over, yield up, surrender*, 33.

**trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (trāns + dūcō), *to lead over, lead across*, 32.

**trāiectus, -ūs, m.**, *a crossing over, passage*, § 461.

**trāns, adverbial prefix and prep.** w. accu., *over, across*, 20.

**trānseō, -ire, -īī, -itūrus** (trāns + eō), *to go over, cross*, 47.

**trānsportō, -āre** (trāns + portō), *to carry across*, § 461.

**tribūnus, -ī, m.**, *a tribune*, a military officer, six of whom were attached to each legion, 26.

**trīgintā, indeclin. num.**, *thirty*, § 461.

**tristis, -e, adj.**, *sad*, 22.

**tū, tuī, second pers. pron.**, *thou, you* (declined § 474), 40.

**Tullia, -ae, f.**, *Tullia*, 1.

**tum, adv.**, *then*, 29.

**turma, -ae, f.**, *troop, squadron of cavalry*, § 461.

**turris, -is, f.**, *tower*, 18.

**tūtō, adv.**, *safely* (tūtus), 25.

**tūtus**, -a, -um, adj., *safe*, 22.

**tuus**, -a, -um, pass. pron., *thy*,  
*your* (tū), 3.

## U

**ubi**, rel. adv., *where, when*; **ubi**  
**primum**, *as soon as*, 3.

**ūllus**, -a, -um, adj., *any* (de-  
clined § 469), 52.

**ulterior**, -ius, comparative adj.,  
positive wanting, *farther, be-*  
*yond* (compared § 471; **ultrā**),  
24.

**ultimus**, -a, -um, superlative of  
**ulterior**, *farthest, most remote*  
(compared § 471), 24.

**ultrā**, adv. and prep. w. accu.,  
*beyond, on the farther side*,  
54.

**ultrō**, adv., *to the farther side*,  
*voluntarily*, § 461.

**ūnā**, adv., *along with, in company*  
*with*, 54.

**unde**, rel. adv., *whence, from*  
*which*, 52.

**undique**, adv., *from every side*,  
*everywhere*, 43.

**ūniversus**, -a, -um, adj., *all to-*  
*gether, all*, § 461.

**umquam**, adv., *ever, with a nega-*  
*tive*, 37.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *one, sole*,  
*alone* (declined § 469), 32.

**urbs**, **urbis**, f., *city*, 19.

**ūsus**, -ūs, m., *use, experience*,  
*profit* (**ūtor**), 50.

**ut** (**utī**), conj., *that, in order that*,  
*so that*; after expression of  
fear, *that not*, 30.

**uter**, **utra**, **utrum**, interrog. and  
rel. pron., *which (of two)*† (de-  
clined § 469), 33.

**uterque**, **utraq̃ue**, **utrumque**,  
pron., *each (of two), both (uter)*,  
50.

**utī**, = **ut**.

**utinam**, adv., used to introduce  
wishes, 29.

**ūtor**, **ūtī**, **ūsus**, dep. v., *to use*,  
*enjoy, profit by*; used with an  
abl. of means instead of direct  
object, 37.

**utrimque**, adv., *on both sides*,  
*from both sides*, 55.

## V

**vacuus**, -a, -um, adj., *empty of*,  
*without*, 24.

**vadum**, -ī, n., *a ford*; plur.,  
*shoals*, § 461.

**valeō**, -ēre, **valuī**, —, *to be*  
*strong*, 52.

**validus**, -a, -um, adj., *strong*,  
6.

**Varrō**, -ōnis, m., *Varro*, 37.

**vāsto**, -āre, *to destroy, devastate*,  
11.

**vehementer**, adv., *violently, im-*  
*petuously*, 36.

**vel**, conj. and adv., *or*; **vel . . .**  
**vel**, *either, or (as you please)*;  
as adv., *even*, 56.

**vēlōciter**, adv., *swiftly* (**vēlōx**),  
43.

**vēlōx**, -ōcis, adj., *swift, quick*,  
21.

**Veneticus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the*  
*Veneti*, a tribe in northwestern  
Gaul, § 461.

**veniō**, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, *to*  
*come*, 34.

**ventitō**, -āre, *to come often, keep*  
*coming, come and go*, § 461.

**ventus**, -ī, m., *wind*, 27.

- vēr**, **vēris**, *n.*, *spring*; **prīmō**  
**vēre**, *at the beginning of spring*,  
24.
- vereor**, -**ērī**, **veritus**, *dep. v.*, *to*  
*fear, dread*, 36.
- vergō**, -**ere**, —, —, *to slope, look*  
*towards*, § 461.
- vērō**, *adv.*, *in truth, certainly*,  
§ 461.
- Vertiscus**, -**ī**, *m.*, *Vertiscus*, a chief  
of the Remi, 17.
- vertō**, -**ere**, **vertī**, *versus*, *to turn*,  
§ 461.
- Vesta**, -**ae**, *f.*, *Vesta*, a Roman god-  
dess, 4.
- vester**, -**tra**, -**trum**, *poss. pron.*,  
*your* (**vōs**), 16.
- via**, -**ae**, *f.*, *road, way*, 1.
- vīctor**, -**ōris**, *m.*, *victor* (**vincō**),  
17.
- vīctōria**, -**ae**, *f.*, *victory* (**vincō**)  
10.
- videō**, -**ēre**, **vidī**, **vīsus**, *to see*;  
*pass.*, *to seem*, 27.
- vīgilia**, -**ae**, *f.*, *watch, guard*, 20.
- vīgintī**, *indeclin. num.*, *twenty*, 23.
- vīlicus**, -**ī**, *m.*, *steward*, 4.
- vīlla**, -**ae**, *f.*, *country house*, 4.
- vincō**, -**ere**, **vīcī**, **vīctus**, *to con-*  
*quer*, 35.
- vinculum**, -**ī**, *n.*, *chain*, § 461.
- vir**, **virī**, *m.*, *man*, 6.
- virtūs**, -**ūtis**, *f.*, *manliness, cour-*  
*age, virtue* (**vir**), 16.
- vīs**, **vīs**, *f.*, *force, violence*; *plur.*  
**vīrēs**, -**ium**, *strength, power*,  
§ 461.
- vīta**, -**ae**, *f.*, *life*, 3.
- vix**, *adv.*, *hardly, scarcely*, 29.
- vocō**, -**āre**, *to call* (**vōx**), 7.
- volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, *to wish, will*  
(conjugated § 487), 44.
- voluntās**, -**ātis**, *f.*, *wish, desire,*  
*consent* (**volō**), 45.
- Volusēnus**, -**ī**, *m.*, *Volusenius*, one  
of Caesar's military tribunes,  
§ 461.
- vōx**, **vōcis**, *f.*, *voice*, 16.
- vulnerō**, -**āre**, *to wound* (**vul-**  
**nus**), 15.
- vulnus**, -**eris**, *n.*, *a wound*, 21.

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

THE principal parts of verbs and peculiarities of syntax must be learned from the preceding vocabulary and the body of the book. The numbers after verbs indicate the conjugation to which they belong.

### A

**a**, art., usually not translated ;  
sometimes *quidam*, *quaedam*,  
*quoddam*.

**about**, *dē* w. abl. ; *circum* w.  
accu.

**abundance**, *cōpia*, -ae, f.

**acceptable**, *grātus*, -a, -um.

**accustomed (to be)**, *soleō*, 2  
(§ 295) ; **to grow accustomed**,  
*cōsuēscō*, 3.

**acquainted with (to become)**,  
*cōgnōscō*, 3.

**across**, *trāns* w. accu.

**act (to)**, *agō*, 3 ; *faciō*, 3.

**advance (to)**, *signa movēre*, *prō-*  
*gredior*, 3.

**advantage of (to take)**, *ūtor*, 3.

**advice**, *cōsiliū*, -i, n.

**affairs**, *rēs*, rei, f.

**afraid (to be)**, *timeō*, 2 ; *vereor*, 2.

**after**, prep., post w. accu. ; conj.,  
postquam, ubi, cum ; sometimes  
abl. abs. ; adv., inde, deinde.

**afterwards**, *postea*, deinde.

**again**, *iterum*, *rūrsus*.

**against**, *contrā* w. accu.

**agreed (to be)**, *cōnstāre* used  
impersonally.

**aid**, *auxilium*, -i, n.

**aid (to)**, *iuvō*, 1.

**all**, *omnis*, -e ; *tōtus*, -a, -um ; **all**  
**other**, *cēteri*, -ae, -a ; **all sides**  
(on), *undique*.

**allow (to)**, *permittō*, 3 ; *pati-*  
*or*, 3 ; *licet* used impersonal-  
ly, 2.

**ally**, *socius*, -i, m.

**almost**, *ferē*, *paene*.

**alone**, *sōlus*, -a, -um.

**already**, *iam*.

**also**, *quoque*.

**altar**, *āra*, -ae, f.

**although**, cum w. subj. ; *quam-*  
*quam* w. indic.

**altogether**, *omniñō*.

**always**, *semper*.

**ambassador**, *lēgātus*, -i, m.

**among**, inter, apud w. accu.

**ancestors**, *māiorēs*, m. and f.

**ancient**, *antiquus*.

**and**, et, atque.

**animal**, *animal*, -ālis, n.

**announce (to)**, *nūntiō*, 1.

**another**, *alius*, -a, -um.

**any**, *ūllus*, -a, -um ; *aliquis*, *ali-*  
*qua*, *aliquid* (*aliquid*) ; *quis-*  
*quam*, —, *quidquam*.

**appearance of (to have the),** = to be like.

**approach,** iter, itineris, n.; adi-  
tus, -ūs, m.; adventus, -ūs, m.

**approach (to),** adpropinquō, 1;  
adeō (§ 488).

**approve (to),** probō, 1.

**arms,** arma, -ōrum, n. plur.

**army,** exercitus, -ūs, m.

**arouse (to),** excitō, 1; incitō, 1.

**arrest (to),** comprehendō, 3.

**arrival,** adventus, -ūs, m.

**arrive (to),** perveniō, 4.

**as,** = appositive; prō w. abl.;  
quam; quālis; **as long as,**  
dum (§ 370); **as soon as,** cum  
primum; simul atque (āc).

**ask (to),** rogō, 1; petō, 3; pos-  
tulō, 1.

**assemble (to),** convocō, 1.

**assembly,** concilium, -i, n.

**assist (to),** iuvō, 1.

**at once,** statim.

**attack (to),** oppugnō, 1.

**attack,** impetus, -ūs; oppugnā-  
tiō, -ōnis, f.

**attempt (to),** conor, 1.

**attendant,** comes, -itis, m. and f.

**auxiliary troops,** auxilia, -ōrum,  
n. plur.

**avail (to be of),** prōsum w. dat.  
(§ 486).

**await (to),** exspectō, 1.

**aware of (to be),** sentiō, 4;  
sciō, 4.

## B

**bad,** malus, -a, -um.

**baggage,** impedimenta, -ōrum,  
n. plur.

**band,** manus, -ūs, f.

**barbarian,** barbarus, -a, -um.

**battle,** pūgna, -ae, f.; proelium,  
-i, n.

**be (to),** sum (§ 485).

**beautiful,** pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

**because,** quod; cum; **because  
of,** = abl. of cause.

**before,** conj., antequam; prep.,  
ante w. accu.

**beg (to),** rogō, 1; petō, 3.

**beginning (at the b. of),** =  
the proper case of primus, -a,  
-um.

**behind,** post w. accu.

**Belgians,** Belgae, -ārum, m.

**believe (to),** putō, 1.

**belong (to),** = dat. of possessor  
or possessive gen.

**below,** infā w. accu.

**besiege (to),** oppugnō, 1.

**best,** optimus, -a, -um.

**betake one's self (to),** sē reci-  
pere.

**between,** inter w. accu.

**body,** corpus, -oris, n.

**bold,** audāx.

**boldness,** audācia, -ae, f.

**bondage,** servitus, -ūtis, f.

**book,** liber, librī, m.

**both . . . and,** et . . . et.

**booty,** praeda, -ae, f.

**boy,** puer, puerī, m.

**brave,** fortis, -e.

**bravely,** fortiter.

**bravery,** fortitūdō, -inis, f.

**break camp (to),** castra movēre.

**bridge,** pōns, pontis, m.

**bring (to),** portō, 1; ferō (§ 489);

inferō; **bring together,** cōgō,

3; **bring upon,** inferō.

**Briton,** Britannus, -i, m.

**broad,** lātus, -a, -um.

**brother,** frāter, -tris, m.



**build**, aedificō, 1.  
**but**, sed.

## C

**call (to)**, appellō, 1; vocō, 1;  
**call together**, convocō, 1.  
**camp**, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.  
**camp (to pitch)**, castra ponere.  
**can, be able (to)**, possum (§ 486).  
**capture (to)**, expugnō, 1.  
**care for (to)**, cūrō, 1; cōsulō w.  
 dat., 3.  
**carry (to)**, portō, 1; **carry on**  
**war**, bellum gerere; **carry out**  
**of**, dēferre.  
**Carthaginians**, Carthāginiēnsēs,  
 -ium, m. plur.  
**cavalry**, equites, -um, m. plur.;  
 equitātus, -ūs, m.; adj., eque-  
 ster, -tris, -tre.  
**centurion**, centuriō, -ōnis, m.  
**challenge (to)**, laccessō, 3.  
**chance**, potestās, -ātis, f.; **chances**,  
 cāsus, ūs, m.  
**charge of (to be in)**, praesum w.  
 dat.; **to put in c. of**, praeficiō  
 w. dat., 3.  
**chase away (to)**, fugō, 1.  
**chief**, princeps, -ipis, m.  
**children**, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.  
**citadel**, arx, arcis, f.  
**citizenship**, civitās, -ātis, f.  
**city**, urbs, urbis, f.; oppidum,  
 -ī, n.  
**client**, cliēns, clientis, m.  
**cloud**, nūbēs, -is, f.  
**cohort**, cohors, -tis, f.  
**come (to)**, veniō, 4; **come near**,  
 adpropinquō, 1; **come up**, suc-  
 cēdō, 3.  
**command**, imperium, -ī, n.  
**companion**, comes, -itis, m. and f.

**compel (to)**, cōgō, 3.  
**complain (to)**, queror, 3.  
**conceal (to)**, occultō, 1.  
**condition**, condiciō, -ōnis, f.  
**confident (to be)**, cōfidō (§ 305).  
**conquer (to)**, superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**consecutive**, continuus, -a, -um.  
**conspire (to)**, coniūrō, 1.  
**consul**, cōsul, -lis, m.  
**contend in battle (to)**, dēcertō, 1.  
**country**, patria, -ae, f.; finēs,  
 -ium, m. plur.  
**country-house**, villa, -ae, f.  
**courage**, animus, -ī, m.; virtus,  
 -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō, -inis, f.  
**cover (to)**, compleō, 2.  
**cut down (to)**, occidō, 3.

## D

**danger**, periculum, -ī, n.  
**dangerous**, periculōsus, -a, -um.  
**daughter**, filia, -ae, f.  
**dawn**, lūx, lūcis, f.  
**day**, diēs, diēī, m.  
**daybreak (at)**, primā lūce.  
**daylight**, lūx, lūcis, f.  
**dear**, cārus, -a, -um.  
**death**, mors, mortis, f.  
**decide (to)**, cōstituō, 3.  
**defeat (to)**, superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**defend (to)**, dēfendō, 3.  
**delay (to)**, moror, 1.  
**delay**, mora, -ae, f.  
**deliver a speech (to)**, orātiōnem  
 habēre.  
**demand (to)**, postulō, 1.  
**departure**, profectiō, -ōnis, f.;  
 discessus, -ūs, m.  
**deprive (to)**, privō, 1.  
**design of (with the)**, = a pur-  
 pose clause.

**desire (to)**, cupiō, 3; volō (§ 487).  
**desist from (to)**, desistō, 3; intermittō, 3.  
**despair (to)**, dēspērō, 1.  
**destroy (to)**, tollō, 3.  
**deter (to)**, dēterreō, 2.  
**determine (to)**, cōstituō, 3.  
**devastate (to)**, vastō, 1.  
**die (to)**, morior, 3.  
**different**, dissimilis, -e.  
**difficult**, difficilis, -e.  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -ātis, f.  
**diligence**, industria, -ae, f.; diligentia, -ae, f.  
**diligently**, cum industriā; diligenter.  
**disaster**, clādēs, -is, f.  
**dislodge**, pellō, 3.  
**dispatch (to)**, mittō, 3.  
**disperse (to)**, abeō.  
**distant (to be)**, absum.  
**district**, ager, agrī, m.; regiō, -ōnis, f.  
**ditch**, fossa, -ae, f.  
**doubt (to)**, dubitō, 1.  
**doubtful**, dubius, -a, -um; **there is no doubt**, nōn est dubium.  
**draw up (to)**, cōstituō, 3.  
**drive (to)**, fugō, 1; agō, 3; pellō, 3; **drive away, out, from**, fugō, 1; expellō, 3.  
**during**, accu. or abl. of time; in; per.  
**dwell (to)**, incolō, 3.

E

**each (one)**, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§ 478);  
**each of two**, uterque, utraque, utrumque (§ 469).  
**eager**, avidus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris, ācre.

**eager for (to be)**, studeō, 2; cupiō, 3.  
**early (in the morning)**, māne.  
**easy**, facilis, -e.  
**eighth**, octāvus, -a, -um.  
**embassy**, legatiō, -ōnis, f.  
**employ (to)**, ūtor, 3.  
**end**, finis, -is, m.  
**endure (to)**, patior, 3; ferō (§ 489).  
**enemy**, inimicus, -i, m.; hostis, -is, m.  
**engage with (to)**, pūgnō 1, proelium committere.  
**England**, Britannia, -ae, f.  
**enjoy (to)**, fruor, 3.  
**enlarge (to)**, augeō, 2.  
**enough**, satis.  
**enter (to)**, intrō, 1; **enter upon**, ineō, incipiō, 3.  
**entire**, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 469).  
**equal**, aequus, -a, -um; similis, -e.  
**erect (to)**, aedificō, 1.  
**especially**, praesertim.  
**establish (to)**, cōfirmō, 1.  
**Europe**, Eurōpa, -ae, f.  
**even if**, etiam si.  
**exchange (to)**, dāre et accipere.  
**exhausted**, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
**experience (to)**, experior, 4; patior, 3.  
**experienced**, peritus, -a, -um.

F

**fact**, rēs, rei, f.; often simply the neuter of hic.  
**fall (to)**, dēficiō, 3; dēsum.  
**fall (to)**, accidō, 3; pass. of iaciō, 3; **fall back**, pedem referre; cēdō, 3; revertor, 3.  
**fame**, fāma, -ae, f.  
**famous**, clārus, -a, -um; sometimes ille.

**far**, procul, longē.  
**far away (to be)**, absum.  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, m.  
**farther**, adj., ulterior, -ius; adv.,  
 ultrā.  
**father**, pater, patris, m.  
**fear (to)**, timeō, 2; vereor, 2.  
**fear**, timor, -ōris, m.  
**fear that (for)**, nē.  
**fearlessly**, sine timōre.  
**feel grateful (to)**, grātiā habēre.  
**few**, nōnnulli, -ae, -a; pauci,  
 -ae, -a.  
**field**, ager, agrī, m.; campus, -i,  
 m.  
**fiercely**, ātrōciter.  
**fifth**, quintus, -a, -um.  
**fight (to)**, pugnō, 1.  
**fill up (to)**, complēō, 2.  
**finally**, denique.  
**find (to)**, nanciscor, 3.  
**find out (to)**, cōgnōscō, 3.  
**fine**, bonus, -a, -um; pulcher,  
 -chra, -chrum.  
**finish (to)**, cōficiō, 3.  
**fire**, ignis, -is, m.  
**first**, adj., primus, -a, -um; **first**  
**of all**, adv., primum; **at first**,  
 primō.  
**five**, quinque.  
**flank**, latus, -eris, n.; cornu,  
 -ūs, n.  
**flee (to)**, fugiō, 3.  
**fleet**, classis, -is, f.  
**flock**, grex, gregis, m.  
**foe**, hostis, -is, m.  
**follow (to)**, sequor, 3.  
**following**, proximus, -a, -um;  
 secundus, -a, -um; hīc, haec,  
 hōc.  
**foot**, pes, pedis, m.; **foot-sol-**

**diers**, peditēs, -um, m. pl.;  
 peditātūs, -ūs, m.  
**foot of**, infimus, -a, -um; **to the**  
**foot of**, sub w. accu.  
**for**, nam; enim; quod.  
**for the sake of**, prō w. abl.;  
 causā w. gen.  
**force (with great)**, graviter.  
**forced marches**, māgna itinera.  
**forces**, cōpiae, -ārum, f.  
**foresight**, cōsiliū, -i, n.  
**forest**, silva, -ae, f.  
**forget (to)**, obliviscor, 3.  
**former (the)**, ille, illa, illud;  
 prior, prius.  
**formerly**, olim.  
**fortification**, mūnitiō, ōnis, f.  
**fortify**, mūniō, 4.  
**fortune**, fortuna, -ae, f.  
**free (to)**, liberō, 1.  
**free**, liber, -era, -erum.  
**freedom**, libertās, -ātis, f.  
**fresh**, novus, -a, -um; integer,  
 -gra, -grum.  
**friend**, amicus, -i, m.  
**friendship**, amicitia, -ae, f.  
**frighten (to)**, terreō, 2.  
**from**, ā, ab; dē; ē, ex.

## G

**Gallic**, Gallus, -a, -um; Gallicus,  
 -a, um.  
**garden**, hortus, -i, m.  
**garrison**, praesidium, -i, n.  
**gate**, porta, -ae, f.  
**gather (to)**, conveniō, 4.  
**Gaul**, Gallia, -ae, f.  
**Gauls**, Galli, -ōrum, m.  
**general**, imperātor, -ōris, m.;  
 dux, ducis, m.  
**German**, Germānus, -a, -um.  
**Germany**, Germania, -ae, f.

**get ready (to)**, parō, 1; aedificō, 1.  
**gift**, donum, -ī, n.  
**girl**, puella, -ae, f.  
**give (to)**, dō, 1; **give an opinion**,  
 sententiam dicere.  
**give up (to)**, reddō, 3; trādō, 3;  
 desistō, 3.  
**gladly**, laetē.  
**glory**, laus, laudis, f.  
**go (to)**, eō (§ 488); exeō; profi-  
 ciscor, 3; **go against, to meet**,  
 occurrō, 3.  
**goddess**, dea, -ae, f.  
**good**, bonus, -a, -um.  
**goods**, bona, -ōrum, n. plur.  
**gradually**, paulātīm.  
**grain**, frūmentum, -ī, n.  
**grant (to)**, dō, 1.  
**grass**, herba, -ae, f.  
**great**, māgnus, -a, -um; clārus,  
 -a, -um.  
**greatly**, māgnoperē; vehementer.  
**Greece**, Graecia, -ae, f.  
**ground**, terra, -ae, f.  
**guard**, custōs, -ōdis, m.

H

**Haeduan**, Haeduī, -ōrum, m.  
 plur.  
**halt (to)**, cōnsistō, 3.  
**hand**, manus, -ūs, f.  
**hand over (to)**, trādō, 3.  
**handsome**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
**happen (to)**, fiō (§ 488).  
**happy**, beātus, -a, -um.  
**harbor**, portus, -ūs, m.  
**hard**, dūrus, -a, -um; gravis, -e;  
 atrōx.  
**hardly**, vix; fere.  
**haste**, celeritās, -ātis, f.  
**hasten (to)**, properō, 1.

**hatred**, odium, -ī, n.  
**have (to)**, habēō, 2.  
**height**, altitūdō, -inis, f.  
**help**, auxilium, -ī, n.  
**here**, hic.  
**hide (to)**, occultō, 1.  
**hill**, collis, -is, m.  
**hinder (to)**, prohibeō, 2; impe-  
 diō, 4.  
**hither**, adj., citerior, -ius.  
**hold (to)**, habēō, 2.  
**home**, domus, -ūs, m.  
**honor**, laus, laudis, f.  
**hope**, spēs, speī, f.  
**Horace**, Horatius, -ī, m.  
**horn**, cornū, -ūs, n.  
**horse**, equus, -ī, m.  
**horseman**, eques, -itis, m.  
**hostage**, obses, -idis, m.  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, f.  
**house**, domus, -ūs, m.  
**how many**, quot.  
**hurry (to)**, properō, 1; contēn-  
 dō, 3.

I

**I**, egō (§ 474).  
**immediately**, statim.  
**in**, in w. abl.  
**inasmuch as**, cum w. subj.; quod.  
**increase (to)**, augeō, 2.  
**induce (to)**, adducō, 3.  
**influence**, auctōritās, -ātis, f.  
**inform (to)**, nūntiō, 1; aliquem  
 certiōrem facere.  
**inhabit (to)**, incolō, 3.  
**inhabitant**, incola, -ae, m.; **in-**  
**habitant of a town**, oppidā-  
 nus.  
**injure (to)**, noceō, 2.  
**injury**, iniūria, -ae, f.  
**inner**, interior, -ius.

**in order that**, ut.  
**in regard to**, dē w. abl.  
**intend (to)**, in animō habēre;  
 volō.  
**interior**, interior, -ius.  
**into**, in w. accu.  
**Italy, Italia**, -ae, f.

## J

**javelin**, pīlum, -ī, n.  
**judge**, iūdex, -icis, m.

## K

**keeper**, custōs, -ōdis, m.  
**keep from (to)**, prohibeō, 2.  
**keep in check (to)**, contineō, 2.  
**kill (to)**, necō, 1; interficio, 3;  
 occidō, 3.  
**king**, rēx, rēgis, m.  
**know (to)**, sciō, 4; cōgnōvī, 3;  
 intellegō, 3; **know how**, sciō  
 w. inf.

## L

**labor**, labor, -ōris, m.  
**lack**, inopia, -ae, f.  
**lacking (to be)**, dēsum.  
**land**, terra, -ae, f.; ager, agrī, m.  
**large**, māgnus, -a, -um.  
**latter**, hīc, haec, hōc.  
**lay waste (to)**, vastō, 1.  
**lead (to)**, dūcō, 3; **lead across**,  
 trādūcō, 3; **lead forth**, prō-  
 dūcō, 3; **lead off**, dēdūcō, 3.  
**leader**, dux, ducis, m.  
**leading man**, princeps, -ipis, m.  
**learn (to)**, audiō, 4; cōgnōscō, 3;  
 certior fieri.  
**leave (to)**, relinqūō, 3.  
**left**, reliquus, -a, -um; **on the**  
**left hand**, sinister, -tra, -trum.  
**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, f.

**letter**, epistula, -ae, f.; litterae,  
 -ārum, f. plur.  
**level**, aequus, -a, -um.  
**liberate (to)**, liberō, 1.  
**liberty**, libertās, -ātis, f.  
**lieutenant**, lēgātus, -ī, m.  
**life**, vita, -ae, f.; salūs, -ūtis, f.  
**light**, levis, -e.  
**like (to)**, amō, 1.  
**like**, similis, -e.  
**line-of-battle**, aciēs, -ēī, f.  
**little**, parvus, -a, -um; **a little**,  
 paulum; paulō; **a little after**,  
 paulō post.  
**live (to)**, habitō, 1.  
**long**, adj., longus, -a, -um.  
**long, for a long time**, adv., diū.  
**look out for one's interests (to)**,  
 alicui cōsultare.  
**lose (to)**, amittō, 3.  
**loud**, māgnus, -a, -um.  
**love (to)**, amō, 1.  
**love**, amor, -ōris, m.  
**low**, humilis, -e.

## M .

**magistrate**, magistrātus, -ūs, m.  
**maid-servant**, ancilla, -ae, f.  
**make (to)**, faciō, 3; efficiō, 3;  
**make an effort**, conor, 1; ope-  
 ram dāre; **make peace**, pācem  
 cōfirmāre; **make war**, bellum  
 inferre, agere.  
**man**, vir, virī, m.; homō, -inis, m.  
**manage (to)**, administrō, 1; agō,  
 3; faciō, 3.  
**manner**, modus, -ī, m.; ratiō,  
 -ōnis, f.; **in what manner**,  
 quō modō.  
**many**, multī, -ae, -a.  
**march (to)**, iter facere; **march**  
**out**, exeō.

**march**, iter, itineris, n.  
**master**, dominus, -i, m.; magister, -tri, m.  
**meantime (in the)**, interim; intereā.  
**meet (to go to)**, occurrō, 3.  
**meet death (to)**, morior, 3; pass. of neco, 1; interficiō, 3; occidō, 3.  
**messenger**, nūntius, -i, m.  
**method**, ratiō, -ōnis, f.  
**midnight**, media nox.  
**mille**, mille passūs.  
**military matters**, rēs militāris.  
**money**, pecūnia, -ae, f.; argentum, -i, n.  
**mother**, māter, -tris, f.  
**mountain**, mōns, montis, m.  
**much**, adv., multō.  
**muse**, mūsa, -ae, f.  
**my**, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

**name**, nōmen, -inis, n.  
**nation**, natiō, -ōnis, f.  
**naturally**, abl. nātūrā.  
**near**, prope w. accu.; nearer, propior, -ius; nearest, proximus, -a, -um.  
**nearly**, ferō; paene.  
**needful**, necessārius, -a, -um.  
**neighbors**, finitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.  
**neither . . . nor**, neque . . . neque.  
**neither**, pron., neuter, -tra, -trum (§ 469).  
**Nervians**, Nervii, -ōrum, m. plur.  
**new**, novus, -a, -um.  
**next**, proximus, -a, -um; posterus, -a, -um.

**night**, nox, noctis, f.; **by night**, noctū.  
**nobility of spirit**, māgnitūdō animī.  
**no longer**, nōn diūtius.  
**not**, nōn, neque; **not only . . . but also**, nōn modo . . . sed etiam; **not yet**, nondum.  
**nothing**, nihil.  
**notice**, sentiō, 4.  
**now**, nunc, iam.  
**number**, numerus, -i, m.

O

**obliged (to be)**, often expressed by the pass. periphras. conjugation.  
**ocean**, oceanus, -i, m.  
**offer**, dō, 1; offerō, 3.  
**often**, saepe.  
**old man**, senex, senis, m.  
**on**, in w. abl.; **on account of**, abl.  
**once**, ōlim; **at once**, statim.  
**one . . . another**, alius . . . alius.  
**on land and sea**, terrā marique.  
**onrush**, impetus, -ūs, m.  
**openly**, palam.  
**opinion**, sententia, -ae, f.  
**opportunity**, facultās, -atis, f.; potestās, -ātis, f.  
**opposite**, adversus, -a, -um.  
**oppress**, premō, 3; opprimō, 3.  
**order (to)**, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2;  
**order to furnish**, imperō w. dat. of person and accu. of thing.  
**other**, alius, alia, aliud (§ 469); **other of two**, alter, -tera, -terum (§ 469).

**others (the)**, cēteri, -ae, -a; re-  
liqui, -ae, -a.  
**our**, noster, -tra, -trum.  
**overcome (to)**, superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**overtake (to)**, cōsequor, 3.  
**owe, ought (to)**, debeō, 2.  
**owing (to)**, abl. of cause.  
**own (one's)**, suus, -a, -um.  
**owner**, dominus, -i, m.

## P

**pacify (to)**, pācō, 1.  
**part**, pars, partis, f.; **for the  
most part**, plērumque.  
**pass (to let)**, intermittō, 3.  
**pass the winter (to)**, hiemō, 1.  
**patriotism**, amor patriae.  
**peace**, pāx, pācis, f.  
**people**, populus, -i, m.  
**perpetual**, perpetuus, -a, -um.  
**Persian**, Persa, -ae, m.  
**persuade (to)**, persuādeō, 2.  
**pitch camp (to)**, castra pōnere.  
**place (to)**, conlocō, 1.  
**place**, locus, -i, m.; **to the same  
place**, eōdem.  
**plain**, campus, -i, m.  
**plan**, cōsiliū, -i, n.  
**pleasing**, grātus, -a, -um.  
**pledge**, fidēs, -ei, f.  
**plunder**, praeda, -ae, f.  
**poet**, poēta, -ae, m.  
**Pompey**, Pompēius, -i, m.  
**position**, locus, -i, m.  
**possession of (to get)**, potior, 4;  
occupō, 1.  
**possessions**, rēs, rērum, f. plur.;  
bona, n. plur.  
**power**, imperium, -i, n.; potestās,  
-ātis, f.  
**praise (to)**, laudō, 1.

**prefer (to)**, mālō (§ 487).  
**prepare (to)**, parō, 1; comparō, 1.  
**present (to be)**, adsum.  
**prevent (to)**, prohibeō, 2; im-  
pediō, 4.  
**previous**, prior, prius.  
**priest**, sacerdos, -ōtis, m.  
**principal man**, princeps, -ipis, m.  
**prisoner**, captivus, -i, m.  
**proceed (to)**, prōgredior, 3; =  
**to begin**, instituō, 3.  
**promise (to)**, polliceor, 2.  
**protect (to)**, muniō, 4.  
**protection**, praesidium, -i, n.  
**provision (to make)**, subsidia  
parāre; provideō, 2.  
**provoke (to)**, lacescō, 3.  
**punishment**, poena, -ae, f.  
**purpose (to no)**, frūstrā.  
**pursue (to)**, sequor, 3.  
**put in command (to)**, prae-  
ficiō, 3.  
**put to flight (to)**, fugō, 1.

## Q

**quantity**, cōpia, -ae, f.; multus,  
-a, -um.  
**queen**, regīna, -ae, f.  
**quickly**, celeriter.  
**quiet**, quies, -ētis, f.

## R

**rain**, aqua dē caelō.  
**rather than**, potius quam.  
**reach (to)**, perveniō, 4.  
**read (to)**, legō, 3.  
**ready**, parātus, -a, -um.  
**ready (to get)**, parō, 1.  
**reason**, causa, -ae, f.  
**recall (to)**, revocō, 1.  
**receive (to)**, accipiō, 3.

**recognise (to)**, cōgnōscō, 3.  
**regard to (with)**, dē w. abl.  
**region**, regiō, -ōnis, f.  
**relieve (to)**, succēdō, 3.  
**remain (to)**, maneo, 2.  
**remember (to)**, in memoriā tenēre, habēre.  
**remove (to)**, tollō, 3.  
**reply (to)**, respondeō, 2.  
**report (to)**, nūntiō, renūntiō, 1.  
**reputation**, fāma, -ae, f.  
**rest (the)**, cēteri, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a.  
**retreat (to)**, dēcēdō, 3; pedem referre.  
**return (to)**, reddō, 3; = come back, revertor, 3; redeō.  
**revolution**, novae rēs, f. plur.  
**reward**, praemium, -ī, n.  
**Rhine**, Rhēnus, -ī, m.  
**ridge**, iugum, -ī, n.  
**right**, iūs, iūris, n.  
**right hand (on the)**, dexter, -tra, -trum.  
**rise (to)**, orior, 4.  
**river**, flūmen, -inis, n.  
**road**, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.; **by the shortest road**, quā proximum iter est.  
**Roman**, Rōmānus, -a, -um.  
**rose**, rōsa, -ae, f.  
**royal power**, rēgnum, -ī, n.  
**rule (as a)**, plērumque.  
**run together (to)**, concurrō, 3;  
**run away**, fugiō, 3.

S

**sacred**, sacer, -cra, -crum.  
**sad**, tristis, -e.  
**safety (in)**, incolumis, -e.  
**sail (to)**, nāvigō, 1.

**sailor**, nauta, -ae, m.  
**sake of (for the)**, causā w. gen.  
**sally**, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.  
**same**, idem, eadem, idem (§ 475).  
**savage**, atrōx.  
**save (to)**, servō, 1.  
**say (to)**, dicō, 3; **said he**, inquit.  
**scarcity**, inopia, -ae, f.  
**sea**, mare, maris, n.  
**secretly**, clam.  
**see (to)**, videō, 2.  
**seek (to)**, petō, 3; quærō, 3.  
**seem (to)**, videor, 2.  
**seize (to)**, occupō, 1.  
**senate**, senātus, -ūs, m.  
**send (to)**, mittō, 3; **send forward**, praemittō, 3.  
**set fire to (to)**, incendō, 3.  
**set forth (to)**, proficiscor, 3.  
**set free (to)**, liberō, 1.  
**set to work (to)**, incipiō, 3; coepī.  
**set out (to)**, proficiscor, 3.  
**seven**, septem.  
**several**, singulī, -ae, -a; nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.  
**severe**, gravis, -e.  
**severely**, graviter.  
**shield**, scūtum, -ī, n.  
**ship**, nāvis, -is, f.  
**short**, brevis, -e; **in a short time**, celeriter; **by the shortest road**, quā proximum iter est.  
**shout**, clāmor, -ōris, m.  
**show (to)**, dēmōnstrō, 1; ostendō, 3.  
**Sicily**, Sicilia, -ae, f.  
**sick**, aeger, -gra, -grum.  
**side**, latus, -eris, n.; **on all sides**, undique.  
**signal**, signum, -ī, n.



**silence**, silentium, -i, n.; **in silence**, silentiō.  
**since**, cum; quod.  
**slaughter**, caedēs, -is, f.  
**slave**, servus, -i, m.  
**slay (to)**, occidō, 3; interficiō, 3.  
**small**, parvus, -a, -um.  
**so**, tam, ita; = **therefore**, itaque;  
**so many**, tot; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.  
**soldier**, miles, -itis, m.  
**some (one)**, aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod); quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam); **some . . . others**; alii . . . alii.  
**son**, filius, -i, m.  
**soon**, mox.  
**sort**, modus, -i, m.; **of this sort**, talis, -e; eiusmodi.  
**Spaniards**, Hispani, -ōrum, m. plur.  
**spear**, hasta, -ae, f.  
**speech**, orātiō, -ōnis, f.; **to make a speech**, orationem habere.  
**speed**, celeritās, -ātis, f.  
**spirit**, animus, -i, m.  
**spirited**, ācer, ācris, ācre.  
**spring (at the beginning of)**, primō vere.  
**state**, civitās, -ātis, f.  
**station (to)**, conlocō, 1; cōstitui, 3.  
**stay (to)**, maneo, 2.  
**steward**, villicus, -i, m.  
**still**, sed, tamen.  
**stir up (to)**, incitō, 1; excitō, 1.  
**stop (to)**, intermittō, 3.  
**storm (to)**, oppugnō, 1.  
**storming**, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f.  
**story**, fabula, -ae, f.  
**strange**, novus, -a, -um.  
**strengthen (to)**, cōfirmō, 1.

**strong**, validus, -a, -um; **to be strong**, valeō, 2.  
**subdue (to)**, pascō, 1; superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**succeed (to)**, efficere ut.  
**successfully**, feliciter.  
**such**, talis, -e; is, ea, id.  
**suddenly**, subitō, imprōvisō.  
**sue for (to)**, petō, 3.  
**suitable**, suited, idoneus, -a, -um.  
**summer**, aestās, -ātis, f.  
**sun**, sōl, sōlis, m.  
**superior (to be)**, praecōdō, 3.  
**supply**, cōpia, -ae, f.; **supplies**, cōpia; frumentum, -i, n.  
**support**, subsidium, -i, n.  
**surrender**, se dēdere.  
**surround (to)**, circumveniō, 4; circumdō, 3.  
**suspicion**, suspiciō, -ōnis, f.  
**sustain (to)**, sustineō, 2.  
**swift**, vëlōx.  
**swiftly**, celeriter.  
**sword**, gladius, -i, m.

## T

**take by storm (to)**, expugnō, 1.  
**take place (to)**, fiō (§ 488).  
**take possession of (to)**, occupō, 1.  
**teacher**, magister, -tri, m.  
**tell (to)**, narrō, 1; dicō, 3.  
**temple**, templum, -i, n.  
**ten**, decem.  
**tender**, tener, -era, -erum.  
**terrify (to)**, terreo, 2.  
**territory**, finēs, -ium, m. plur.  
**than**, quam; abl. case.  
**thank (to)**, grātiās agere.  
**that**, in purpose or result clauses, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē;

after verbs of doubting, etc.,  
quā; **that not**, nē, ut nōn;  
after verbs of fearing, ut.  
**that (one)**, ille, illa, illud; is, ea,  
id (§ 475); **that (of yours)**, iste,  
ista, istud (§ 475).  
**their**, gen. plur. of is; reflexive  
suus, -a, -um.  
**then**, deinde; inde; tum.  
**there**, ibi.  
**therefore**, itaque.  
**think (to)**, putō, 1.  
**third**, tertius, -a, -um.  
**thirty**, trigintā.  
**this**, hīc, haec, hōc (§ 475).  
**though**, cum w. subj.; quam-  
quam.  
**thousand**, mille.  
**three**, trēs, tria.  
**throughout**, per w. accu.  
**thus**, ita, sic, hōc modō.  
**time**, tempus, -oris, n.  
**tired**, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
**to**, dat. case; ad, in w. accu.; ex-  
pressing purpose, ut w. subj.,  
ad w. gerundive, causā w. gen.  
of gerund or gerundive, supine.  
**today**, hodiē.  
**together with**, cum w. abl.;  
ūnā cum w. abl.  
**top of**, summus, -a, -um.  
**toward**, ad w. accu.  
**tower**, turris, -is, f.  
**town**, oppidum, -i, n.; urbs, ur-  
bis f.  
**townsman**, oppidānus, -i, m.  
**trader**, mercātor, -ōris, m.  
**tree**, arbor, -oris, f.  
**tribe**, gēns, gentis, f.  
**tribune**, tribūnus, -i, m.  
**trust (to)**, cōnfidō, 3.  
**try (to)**, conor, 1.

**turn one's back (to)**, terga ver-  
tere, dare.  
**twelve**, duodecim.  
**twenty**, vigintī.  
**twenty-five**, quinque et vigintī.  
**two**, duo, duae, duo (§ 478);  
**which of two**, uter, utra,  
utrum (§ 469); **each of two**.  
uterque, utraque, utrumque.

U

**uncertain**, incertus, -a, -um.  
**undergo (to)**, sustineō, 2.  
**undeserved**, indignus, -a, -um.  
**unhappy**, miser, -era, -erum.  
**unharmcd**, incolumis, -e.  
**unless**, nisi.  
**unlike**, dissimilis, -e.  
**until**, dum.  
**unwilling (to be)**, nōlō (§ 487).  
**use**, ūsus, -ūs, m.  
**used to**, etc., imperfect tense;  
soleō, 2.  
**useful**, predicate dat. of ūsus.

V

**valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō,  
-inis, f.  
**very**, = superlative degree; ipse,  
ipsa, ipsum (§ 475).  
**victor**, victor, -ōris, m.  
**victory**, victōria, -ae, f.  
**voice**, vox, vocis, f.

W

**wait for (to)**, exspectō, 1.  
**wall**, mūrus, -i, m.; moenia,  
-ium, n. plur.  
**wander (to)**, errō, 1.  
**war**, warfare, bellum, -i, n.  
**watch**, vigilia, -ae, f.

**way**, via, -ae, f.; **iter**, itineris, n.  
**weapon**, telum, -i, n.  
**well**, bene.  
**what?** quid.  
**when**, ubi; cum.  
**whence**, unde.  
**where**, ubi.  
**which** (of two), uter, utra, utrum (§ 469).  
**while**, dum.  
**who, which, what**, rel., quī, quae, quod (§ 476); interrog., quis, quid (§ 477).  
**whosoever**, quicumque, quaecumque, quodecunque.  
**wide**, lātus, -a, -um.  
**wife**, coniūnx, -iugis, f.  
**will**, voluntās, -ātis, f.; **against one's will**, contrā voluntātem; invitus, -a, -um.  
**wind**, ventus, -i, m.  
**wing**, cornū, -ūs, n.  
**winter**, hiems, hiemis, f.  
**winter-quarters**, hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur.  
**wisely**, sapienter.  
**wish**, volō (§ 487); cupiō, 3.  
**with**, cum w. abl.

**withdraw** (to), cēdō, 3; discēdō, 3; pedem referre.  
**within**, in w. abl.; of time, abl. case.  
**without**, sine w. abl.  
**withstand**, sustineō, 2.  
**wolf**, lupus, -i, m.; **she-wolf**, lupa, -ae, f.  
**woman**, mulier, -eris, f.  
**wood**, silva, -ae, f.  
**word**, verbum, -i, n.  
**work** (to), labōrō, 1; faciō, 3.  
**work**, opus, operis, n.  
**would that**, = optative subj. with or without utinam (§ 242).  
**wound** (to), vulnerō, 1; **wounded**, vulnerātus, -a, -um.  
**wrong**, iniūria, -ae, f.

## Y

**year**, annus, -i, m.  
**you**, tū; plur. vōs (§ 474).  
**young man**, iuvenis, -is, m.; adulescēns, -entis, m.  
**your**, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.  
**youth**, iuvenis, -is, m.

(1)

THE END

---

---

## TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

---

---

### THE CLASSICAL SERIES

*A New Series of Latin and Greek Texts for  
Secondary Schools, under the editorial charge of*

**John Henry Wright, A. M., LL. D.,** Harvard University

**Bernadotte Perrin, Ph. D., LL. D.,** Yale University

**Andrew Fleming West, Ph. D., LL. D.,** Princeton University

These names guarantee the highest standard of scholarship and pedagogic fitness.

The whole series throughout is based on the lines laid down in the Report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association to the National Educational Association.

These lines are now universally accepted as defining the ideal classical course for secondary schools. The Twentieth Century Classical Texts satisfy at every point this universal requirement.

The methods of teaching Latin and Greek as revised and now adopted by American educators call for a less pedantic, more humanistic style, dominantly literary in spirit, giving a clear, forceful impression of ancient life and thought. The modern secondary text-book is not merely grammatical, but also historical; fitted to arouse living enthusiasm for the great masterpieces of ancient thought and for their exquisite literary dress.

All this, recently focused in the action of the National Educational Association, is now embodied for the first time in this Series, edited by representative scholars of the universities that have had most to do with classical culture in America.

The general editors and their colleagues are all practical teachers, originators, and leaders in the courses now pursued in our secondary-school system.

**Hence, the Twentieth Century Classical Series offers the simplest, most practical, and up-to-date Latin and Greek books ever prepared for American schools.**

---

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

---

---

---

## TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

---

---

### THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

---

#### A School Grammar of Attic Greek.

By THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This is the only Greek Grammar that contains the modern knowledge of the subject, and sets forth the modern methods of teaching it.

Goodell's Greek Grammar does this thoroughly, accurately, and simply. It is written by a distinguished Greek scholar—a successor of Woolsey, Hadley, and Packard—who has had years of experience in secondary schools and is to-day in closest touch with them.

Intended primarily for such schools, this book is made as plain as possible. Rarer forms and principles of syntax, such as are naturally explained in lexicon or notes, are here omitted; classification and terminology have been much simplified.

Yet this Grammar supplies all that is needed for reading the drama and Attic prose commonly studied in freshman and sophomore years.

Sentences are classified by form instead of by function. In like manner, subordinate clauses are classified first by the introductory word, then by mode and tense. Not only is this better scientifically, but the result is a more concrete and intelligible system for young students.

Larger and plainer type is used, especially for the Greek, than in any other Greek Grammar. Of this larger print the book contains about three hundred pages.

---

---

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

---

---





YB 00420

M250121

760  
M821

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY



